

HdO

The Arabic
Manuscript Tradition

*A Glossary of
Technical Terms
& Bibliography*

by
Adam Gacek

Brill

THE ARABIC MANUSCRIPT TRADITION

HANDBOOK OF ORIENTAL STUDIES HANDBUCH DER ORIENTALISTIK

SECTION ONE THE NEAR AND MIDDLE EAST

EDITED BY

H. ALTENMÜLLER · B. HROUDA · B.A. LEVINE · R.S. O'FAHEY
K.R. VEENHOF · C.H.M. VERSTEEGH

VOLUME FIFTY-EIGHT

THE ARABIC MANUSCRIPT TRADITION



THE ARABIC MANUSCRIPT TRADITION

A Glossary of Technical Terms and Bibliography

BY

ADAM GACEK



BRILL
LEIDEN · BOSTON · KÖLN
2001

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Gacek, Adam.

The Arabic manuscript tradition : a glossary of technical terms and bibliography / by Adam Gacek.

p. cm. — (Handbuch der Orientalistik. = Handbook of Oriental studies. Section one, the Near and Middle East, ISSN 0169-9423 ; v. 58)

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 9004120610 (alk. paper)

1. Manuscripts, Arabic—History—Bibliography. 2. Codicology—Dictionaries. 3. Paleography, Arabic—Bibliography. I. Title.
II. Handbuch der Orientalistik. Erste Abteilung, Nahe und der Mittlere Osten ; 58. Bd.

Z6605.A6 G33 2001

[Z106.5]

011'.31—dc21

2001018082
CIP

Die Deutsche Bibliothek – CIP-Einheitsaufnahme

Gacek, Adam:

The Arabic manuscript tradition : a glossary of technical terms and bibliography / by Adam Gacek.. – Leiden ; Boston ; Köln : Brill, 2001 (Handbuch der Orientalistik : Abt. 1, Der Nahe und Mittlere Osten ; Bd. 58)
ISBN 90-04-12061-0

ISSN 0169-9423
ISBN 90 04 12061 0

© Copyright 2001 by Koninklijke Brill NV, Leiden, The Netherlands

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, translated, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior written permission from the publisher.

*Authorization to photocopy items for internal or personal use is granted by Brill provided that the appropriate fees are paid directly to
The Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Suite 910
Danvers MA 01923, USA.
Fees are subject to change.*

PRINTED IN THE NETHERLANDS

To

Joanna,

Julian and Helenka

This page intentionally left blank

CONTENTS

Acknowledgements	XI
Preface	XIII
Part One: GLOSSARY (١ - ٥)	1
Abbreviations	156
1. Sources/References	156
2. Technical terms in the glossary	174
Part Two: BIBLIOGRAPHY	177
I. GENERAL AND INTRODUCTORY STUDIES	181
1. Bibliographies	181
2. Periodicals	182
3. Conference proceedings and composite works	182
4. General studies and surveys	184
5. Selected studies of one or more manuscripts	187
6. Manuscript production and culture (wirāqah)	190
7. Libraries (selected bibliographies and studies)	191
8. History of manuscripts (ownership statements, seal impressions, waqf-statements, etc.)	193
9. Popular culture in manuscripts	194
10. Forgeries	194
11. Terminology	195
II. WRITING SURFACES, MATERIALS AND IMPLEMENTS	195
1. General studies	195
2. Papyrus	197
3. Parchment	198
4. Paper	198

a) Non-watermarked paper and paper in the Islamic world....	198
– Bibliography	198
– Papermaking recipes and ethics	198
– Studies	199
b) Watermarked paper and filigranology	203
5. Inks, inkwells, pens and other writing accessories	204
III. TEXTBLOCK (QUIRES, SIGNATURES, ETC.)	206
IV. THE TEXT, ITS COMPOSITION AND ARRANGEMENT	207
1. Types of compositions, their parts, etc.	207
2. Page lay-out (mise en page)	208
3. Colophon and scribal verses	208
4. Dates, dating and numerals	209
a) Bibliography, chronology	209
b) Alpha-numerical and numerical systems.....	209
c) Abjad, ḥisāb al-jummāl, chronograms.....	210
d) Greek (Coptic) numerals	210
e) Rūmī (Fāsī) numerals	210
f) Dating by fractions	211
g) Calendars, conversion tables, dynasties	211
5. Abbreviations	212
6. Arabic nomenclature.....	213
7. Transcription, corrections and etiquette	213
V. TRANSMISSION OF KNOWLEDGE	215
1. General studies	215
2. Transmission of individual works	216
3. Ijāzāt and samā'āt	216
VI. ARABIC ALPHABET, SCRIPTS AND PALAEOGRAPHY	219
1. Albums and exhibition catalogues	219
2. Library catalogues with reproductions of specimens.....	220
3. Studies.....	221
a) General.....	221

b) Maghribi and African scripts	223
VII. THE ARTS OF THE BOOK	224
1. General	224
a) Bibliographies	224
b) General studies and exhibition catalogues	224
c) Albums (muraqqa'āt)	226
2. Calligraphy	227
a) Bibliographies and dictionaries	227
b) Exhibition catalogues	227
c) Pre-20th century texts on calligraphy and penmanship	228
d) Calligraphers and calligraphers' diplomas	229
e) Studies and albums (by modern calligraphers)	232
3. Ornament and painted decoration	236
4. Painted illustration	238
a) Drawing	238
b) Other studies	238
c) Descriptions of individual works	239
5. Lacquer	240
6. Papercuts	241
7. Decorated paper (marbled paper, etc.)	241
8. Bookbinding	242
a) Bibliography	242
b) Pre-18 th century texts	242
c) Other studies	243
VIII. QUR'ANIC MANUSCRIPTS	247
1. Exhibition catalogues	247
2. Early Qur'ans and fragments	247
3. Later Qur'ans	251
4. Facsimile editions	255
IX. TEXTUAL CRITICISM AND EDITING	256
1. General studies	256
2. Some specific cases	259

X. CATALOGUING.....	261
XI. PRESERVATION AND CONSERVATION.....	263
XII. CATALOGUES OF MANUSCRIPTS, COLLECTIONS, ETC.	266
1. Bibliographies and bio-bibliographies of the Arabic heritage	266
2. Lists of dated manuscripts	266
3. Catalogues of catalogues	267
4. Descriptions of collections and catalogues	267
5. Catalogues of edited manuscripts	268

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I am very grateful to Prof. David Pingree for recommending this work for publication and my colleague Prof. François Déroche for his comments and suggestions. My gratitude also goes to Steve Millier and Khaleel Mohammed for having kindly proof-read this text. Last but not least, I am thankful to McGill University for granting me a sabbatic leave, without which this work would most probably not have seen the light of day.

This page intentionally left blank

PREFACE

One of the principal characteristics of Arab Islamic civilization is undoubtedly the cult of books. This central position of the book in Arabic culture has its roots in Islam itself, more specifically in the Qur'ān, the Arabic book par excellence. From the early 1st / mid 7th century until the end of the 13/19th century, Islamic civilization produced several tens of thousands of works in Arabic on a variety of subjects, both religious and scientific in nature, and most probably several millions of manuscript copies. This very rich heritage has survived in the hundreds of thousands of manuscripts found in almost all major university libraries and in numerous public and private collections throughout the world.

Along with this manuscript output, Arab authors, scholars, calligraphers and craftsmen produced a rich literature dealing with the actual making and decoration of books. This literature is gradually being discovered and edited. Apart from numerous compositions on calligraphy and penmanship, most notably from the Mamluk period (see 'Bibliography', VII. 2), we have now at our disposal three manuals dealing with a wealth of information on writing implements, the preparation of inks, papermaking and bookbinding. They are: *Umdat al-kuttāb* (UK) by al-Mu'izz ibn Bādīs (d.454/1062), *al-Mukhtara' fī funūn min al-ṣuna'* (MB) attributed to al-Malik al-Muẓaffar Yūsuf al-Ghassānī (d.694/1294), and *al-Nujūm al-shāriqāt* (NW) by Muḥammad ibn Abī al-Khayr al-Ḥasanī al-Dimashqī (fl.10/16th cent.).

To these should be added the *Taysīr* (TS) of al-Ishbīlī (d.628/1231), the *Tadbīr al-safīr* (HT) of Ibn Abī Ḥamīdah (fl.9/15th) and the *Ṣinā'at tasfīr al-kutub* (ST) of al-Sufyānī (fl.1029/1619), all of which deal with bookbinding techniques and materials. Furthermore, the *Tuḥaf al-khawāṣṣ* (TK) of Abū Bakr Muḥammad al-Qalālūsī (d.707/1307), which deals with the preparation of inks, also contains a chapter on *miṣṭarah* (ruling, lineation). Finally, mention should be made of Badr al-Dīn al-Ghazzī (d.984/1577), who in his work on education, *al-Durr al-naḍīd* (TP), included the most comprehensive chapter to be found in Arabic literature on scribal etiquette, as well as on the collation and correction of books.

The present work consists of two major parts: a glossary of

technical terms and a bibliography arranged by subject.* Although there are a few good general monographs on Arabic manuscripts, there is as yet no comprehensive introduction in English to various Arabic codicological phenomena, and Arabic palaeography is only in its initial stages of development. For this reason the bibliography is envisaged as an indispensable aid for the student of Arabic manuscripts. It brings together, for the first time, some of the most important research in this field published to date.

The technical terms contained in the glossary have been collected and selected from a variety of sources: classical, medieval and post-medieval texts, contemporary studies and catalogues, as well as extant specimens. The glossary is a by-product, as it were, of my research on Arabic manuscripts and therefore should not be taken as comprehensive. Nevertheless, even in its present form, it does reveal a very rich picture of Muslim book culture in the manuscript age, which spans almost 14 centuries. It includes terms encountered in the literature produced by or for government officials and secretaries (*kuttāb*), traditionists (*muḥaddithūn*), calligraphers (*khaṭṭāṭūn*), lexicographers (*luḡhawīyūn*) and other scholars (*ʿulamāʾ*), as well as craftsmen (*ṣunnāʾ*), book lovers and cataloguers. The exploration of this rich written tradition is necessary for a better understanding of the various scripts, writing surfaces and implements used, as well as the way Arabic manuscript books were transcribed, corrected, bound and decorated.

Although there may be some doubt as to the exact form or meaning of a given term, due to the obscure context or the fact that the word is used in only a single surviving manuscript, nevertheless it was deemed important to include at this stage all terms encountered, unless their exact meanings could not be verified. Some terms, especially those relating to book formats, are recorded the way they appear in various sources, without the specific corresponding equivalents in English. This is due to the fact that we do not as yet know their exact meanings. To translate, e.g. *qaṭʿ al-rubʿ* and *qaṭʿ al-thumn* as ‘quarto’ and ‘octavo’, respectively, could be very misleading.

A glossary of terms used in the production of manuscripts would

* This work was originally to appear under the title “Glossary of the Arabic manuscript book” and to contain an edited chapter on bookbinding taken from “al-Mukhtaraʾ fī funūn min al-ṣūnaʾ” by al-Malik al-Muzaʿfar. Since an edition of this work has recently been published, this chapter has been omitted.

not be complete without including the names of at least some of the most important scripts in use during the manuscript age. Here, however, great caution is in order. The art of calligraphy is a living art and scripts (and often their labels) were subject to changes and modifications depending on the 'school' (tradition), period and/or region in which they were employed. Thus, for example, the *naskh* or *riqāʿ* scripts in the Mamluk period were very different from the *naskh* or *riqāʿ* of a later period. We do not, as yet, have a clear picture of these variations in formal scripts and there is besides quite a lot of confusion in the modern literature on calligraphy as to the labels themselves. Therefore, the definitions as given in the glossary are very general and sometimes linked only to the use of a given script in a given period or region. These descriptions should not be taken as definitive.

Most of the terms included here concern the Arabic manuscript book. Some, however, having been drawn from sources relating to public administration (diplomatic), may have been used exclusively in those circles. The technical vocabulary relating to the mixing of inks and the use of pigments has, on the other hand, been largely omitted here. This terminology constitutes a well-defined field of study and has been exposed and dealt with in a number of publications but principally in Martin Levey's "Medieval Arabic book-making" (MP).

In view of the fact that the terms contained in the glossary were collected from sources which originated in various parts and historical periods of the Arab world, the list contains a considerable number of synonyms. Thus, for example, for the characteristic envelope flap we find *udhn* (Andalusia, North Africa), *marjiʿ* (Morocco), *lisān* (central Arab lands), *miqlab* (Levant, Iraq), *raddah* (Levant), and *sāqiṭah* (Yemen). The same applies to such terms as endband (headband), case (box), medallion, serif, catchword, inkwell and the like.

It is interesting to note also the association of a number of terms with the human body and its various parts. This is particularly apparent in the physical description of the codex. Here we find, for example, *udhn* ('ear'; flap), *lisān* ('tongue'; envelope flap), *raʾs* ('head'; upper margin, fore-edge, flap), *wajh* ('face'; recto, upper cover), *ʿaqb*, *ʿaqib* ('heel'; lower margin, catchword), *ṣadr* ('chest'; incipit, recto, fore-edge), *khadd* ('cheek'; outer or inner margin), *shidq* and *fakk* ('jawbone'; book cover), and *raqqāṣ* ('dancer'; catch-

word). Undoubtedly some of the words in the glossary are newly coined terms but the majority can be traced to a medieval usage.

Due to the limitations of the computer program used, an Arabic font was used only where absolutely necessary. The glossary is thus arranged alphabetically according to the root of the word which is given in Arabic script. Arabic script has also been used for abbreviations of some technical terms found in the glossary. Most words are traced to a source, either contemporary or earlier. This is done either in order to document the usage of a given word or to provide a reference for topical study or both. On the whole, the terms without references are either commonly encountered in the existing literature or are easily found in standard dictionaries. Apart from English technical terminology the glossary contains also a number of Greek, Greek/Latin and Latin terms still encountered in the English technical literature. As far as transliteration is concerned, the Library of Congress romanization tables have been used.

PART ONE
GLOSSARY

This page intentionally left blank

ا

al-alif al-muḥarrafah see taḥrīf.

al-alif al-murawwasah – the letter alif provided with a serif, tarwīs (q.v.).

al-alif al-musha‘‘arah see musha‘‘ar.

al-alif al-muṭlaqah see muṭlaq.

ا ب ج د

abjad, abjadīyah, al-ḥurūf al-abjadīyah 1. the first of the eight mnemotechnical terms (voces memoriales) into which the twenty-eight consonants of the Arabic alphabet were divided; the letters of the alphabet arranged according to this mnemonic system (EI, I, 97; GA, 176-178) 2. also **ḥisāb abjad, ḥisāb al-jummal (al-jumal)** – alpha-numerical notation used, among other things, for the creation of chronograms and chronosticons (EI, I, 97-98; SA, III, 18-19; RN, 60; GA, 182).

ا ب ر

ibrah (pl. ibar) – needle (UK, 154; TS, 11: ‘inda ḥabkih lil-maṣāḥif al-mulawwanah; AG, 107; MB, 103, 104; IA, 59; ST, index, 8).

ibarī, abbār – needle maker (QS, II, 215; DB, I, 8).

mi’bar 1. needle case (DM) 2. syn. of **minfadh** (q.v.) (DD, I, 392).

mu’abbar – sewn (KC, 33: bi-ghishā’ mu’abbar).

ا ب ر ج مة

ibrijmah – paste (used for work with parchment) (TS, 12, 13; AG, 107; SD, I, 2: **ibrishmah**).

ا ب ر د ي

abardī see bardī.

ا ب ر و

abrū (Turk. ebrû, from Pers. abrī – ‘cloud’) – marbled paper (MN, 9, 161: ūbrū, waraq al-ūbrū !).

ا بریسیم

ibrīsam, ibrīsim, ibrīshim – silk, comp. burshmān.

اخر

ākhir (pl. awākhir) – closing matter of the text (composition); explicit (TP, 62, n.14).

ilā ākhiriḥ – et cetera, abbrev. الخ (DB, I, 53).

awākhir al-shahr – the last 10 days of the month (DM).

ta'khīr, mu'akhkhar see taqdīm.

ا د ب

adab (pl. ādāb) – etiquette (EI, I, 175-176).

adab ma'a al-kutub 1. scribal etiquette 2. primitive critical apparatus (apparatus criticus) in manuscripts (TP, 52).

ا د م

adam(ah), adīm (pl. udum) 1. leather (UK, passim; AE, 106-108) 2. tanned red leather (DB, I, 63; IW, 71-72; MF, 201: fa-lam yazal Rasūl Allāh (ṣ) yumlī wa-ʿAlī yaktub ḥattā mala'a baṭn al-adīm wa-ṣāhrah wa-akārī'ah; MU, XIV, 84: mujallad bi-adam mubaṭṭan bi-dībāj), comp. jild.

addām – tanner (DM).

ا د و

adāh (pl. adawāt) – syn. ālah (EI, I, 345), tool, implement, instrument, e.g. **adawāt (ālāt) al-tajlīd** = bookbinding tools (UK, 153-156, MB, 103-105) or **adawāt (ālāt) al-khaṭṭ (al-kitābah)** = writing implements, accessories (SA, II, 440-468; AE, 117-127).

ا ذ ن

udhn, udhun (pl. ādhān) – flap, envelope flap (TS, 25: idh al-ḥukm fī al-udhn an takūn maṭbū'ah 'alā al-sifr ḥattā lā taḥtāj ilā 'urwā wa-lā zirr tazurr bi-hi, ammā al-udhn fa-al-aṣl fīhi an yakūn aqall min niṣf al-sifr bi-miqdār ra's al-zirr; AG, 109; BA, III, 372).

ارخ

urkhah – date (LL, I, 46).

ta'riḵh (pl. tawāriḵh), **tawriḵh** (KK, 55; IK, 102-103; SK, 137: wa-yuqāl al-tawriḵh li-annah yuqāl warrakhtu al-kitāb wa-arrakhtuh) – date, dating; chronology (SA, VI, 243-251; TP, 53-54; EI, X, 257-302; ER, IV, 668-677); chronogram, chronosticon (also **qiṭ'at al-ta'riḵh**, AM, nos.10, 26, 141; ER, V, 550-551).

al-ta'riḵh al-ʿArabī (**al-ta'riḵh al-Islāmī**, **al-sanah al-hijrīyah**, **al-sanah al-qamarīyah**, **al-sanah al-hilālīyah**) – Muslim calendar beginning July 16th 622 A.D. (SA, VI, 240, 243; EI, X, 258-261).

al-ta'riḵh al-Fārisī (**al-sanah al-Yazdijirdīyah**) – Persian calendar beginning June 16th 632 A.D. (SA, VI, 242, 254, 256; EI, X, 262).

al-ta'riḵh al-Hindī – Vikrama era (Vikrama samvat) beginning in 58 B.C.

al-ta'riḵh al-Ilāhī – Mughal calendar with the starting point March 21st 1584 A.D. (EI, X, 263).

al-ta'riḵh al-mudhayyal, also known as **al-ta'miyah bi-al-ziyādah** – cryptographic dating, chronosticon, in which more than the second hemistich (miṣraʿ) of a verse (bayt) is counted in calculating the date (TI, 47-48; TP, 54; EI, IV, 468).

al-ta'riḵh al-mustathnā, also known as **al-ta'miyah bi-al-naqṣ** – chronosticon, in which the value of one letter or word from the first hemistich is subtracted from the cumulative value of the second hemistich in calculating the date (TI, 47-48; TP, 54; AM, nos.109, 213).

al-ta'riḵh al-mutawwaj – chronosticon, in which only the numerical values of the first letters of each verse are counted in calculating the date (KB, 10-12).

al-ta'riḵh al-Qibtī or **al-Qubṭī** (**ta'riḵh al-shuhadā'**, **sanat Diqlī-ṭyānūs al-Malik**) – Coptic calendar beginning August 29th 284 A.D. (SA, VI, 242, 253, 255; EI, X, 261).

al-ta'riḵh al-Rūmī (**al-ta'riḵh al-Suryānī**, **ta'riḵh Dhī al-Qarnayn**, **ta'riḵh ghalabat al-Iskandar**, **al-sanah al-Yūnānīyah**) – Seleucid era (era of Alexander) beginning Oct.1st 312 B.C. (SA, VI, 242, 253-254; EI, X, 261).

ta'riḵh al-ṣufr – Spanish era beginning Jan. 1st 38 B.C. (EI, X, 261).

al-ta'riḵh bi-ajza' al-yawm aw al-laylah – dating by the hours of day or night, e.g. **shurūq** – the first hour of day, **shafaq** – the first

hour of night, **ghurūb** – the last hour of day, **ṣabāḥ** – the last hour of night (SA, VI, 250).

al-ta'rīkh bi-al-ʿashr min al-shahr – dating by the ten-day segments (decades) of the month, e.g. fī al-ʿashr al-ūlā (al-uwal) (1-10), al-ʿashr al-wusṭā (al-wusaṭ) (11-20), al-ʿashr al-ukhrā (al-ākhirah, al-ukhar, al-awākhir) (21-30) (SA, VI, 248-249).

al-ta'rīkh bi-al-bāqī – dating by the nights of the month using the verb 'baqiya' to indicate how many nights are remaining until the end of the month, e.g. li-arba' ʿashrata laylah (in) baqiyat min shahr kadhā (SA, VI, 244-248).

al-ta'rīkh bi-al-julūs – dating by a ruler's accession to the throne (CM, nos. 106, 235).

al-ta'rīkh bi-al-kusūr (ta'rīkh Ibn Kamāl Pāshā, al-ta'rīkh al-kināʾī) – dating by fractions attributed to Ibn Kamāl Pāshā (TP, 54; CI, II, 178).

al-ta'rīkh bi-layālī al-shahr – dating by the nights of the month (SA, VI, 244-249).

al-ta'rīkh bi-al-mādī – dating by the nights of the month using the verb 'maḍā' or 'khalā' to indicate how many nights have elapsed from the beginning of the month, e.g. lil-laylatayn khalatā (maḍatā) min shahr kadhā (SA, VI, 244-248).

al-ta'rīkh bi-al-mawāsīm – dating by feasts and festivals, e.g. fī yawm ʿīd al-fiṭr (1st Shawwāl), fī yawm ʿarafah (9th Dhū al-Ḥijjah), fī yawm ʿīd al-naḥr or ʿīd al-aḍḥā (10th Dhū al-Ḥijjah), fī yawm al-qarr (11th Dhū al-Ḥijjah), fī yawm al-nafr al-awwal (12th Dhū al-Ḥijjah), fī yawm al-nafr al-thānī (13th Dhū al-Ḥijjah) (SA, VI, 249; CM, 66/2: fī laylat al-Mi'rāj = 27th Rajab).

al-ta'rīkh al-Jalālī (ta'rīkh-i Jalālī, ta'rīkh-i malakī, ta'rīkh-i sulṭānī) – Jalālī calendar beginning March 15th 1079 A.D. (EI, X, 262; ER, IV, 670).

ta'rīkh kawn al-ʿālam (ta'rīkh al-khilqah) – era of creation (era of Adam) beginning Sept. 1st 5509 B.C.

ارض

arḍīyah – background (LC, 22; FZ, 218: arḍīyat al-matn; JL, 88: arḍīyah mulawwanah).

اسكرجة

uskurrujah – inkwell (KD, II, 713: wa-uskurrujah al-dawāh Fā-risīyah mu‘arrabah wa-lā yuqāl sukurrujah wa-taṣghīruhā usay ki-rah).

اشر

ushārah, ta’shīr see nushārah.

اشفى

ishfā (pl. ashāfin) – awl, punch (TS, 11, 15; AG, 107; ST, 10: **ishfah**; MB, 103; IA, 59; IB, 43: **shafā**; IK, 90; KM, I, sifr 4, 115).

اصل

aṣl (pl. uṣūl) 1. author’s original, holograph (MU, VIII, 39) 2. copy, transcript (from which another copy is made); exemplar, also referred to as **al-nuskhah al-aṣl** (LC, 26; MH, 92: yajib ‘alā man kataba nuskhah min aṣl ba’d al-shuyūkh an yu’arīḍ nuskhatahu bi-al-aṣl; MU, VIII, 39: wa-al-aṣl yashtamil ‘alā sittat ajzā’ bi-khaṭṭih kulluh; SD, II, 27) 3. original (main) text, as opposed to a commentary (sharḥ) or gloss (ḥāshiyah); usually abbreviated as **ص** or **صل** (VA, no.1845, 1858, 2024; MI, 136), but also **ل** (MZ, II, 412); text commented upon (LC, 23) 4. main (principal) script such as thuluth or muḥaqqaq (from which other scripts are derived) (NC, 126; SM, 269: aṣlān; AS, 145: al-uṣūl al-khamsah, al-uṣūl al-sab‘ah) 5. major work (TM, 174: al-uṣūl al-qadīmah) 6. spine (of a quire or book) (ST, index, 8; ST, 8, 9, 11: ‘alā uṣūl al-karārīs a’nī qafā al-kitāb) 7. root of a verb or noun (EI, X, 928).

al-aqlām al-uṣūl see qalam.

اظر

iṭār (pl. iṭārāt, uṭur) 1. rules, rule-border, i.e. textual surround (LC, 24; FT, 402) 2. border (of a book cover) (LC, 24; KR, 80) 3. frame (within a border) (TF, 141: ḥawāshīhā muta‘additat al-uṭur) 4. rectangular panel (LC, 24; UI, 29) 5. tabula ansata (UI, 27) 6. headpiece (LC, 24).

ma’tūr, mu’aṭṭar – ruled (LC, 25; DB, I, 145).

إفريقي

(al-khaṭṭ) al-Ifriqī – properly ‘a general term for the style of the Arabic script current in Ifriqiyyah (modern Tunisia and eastern Algeria) in the early Middle Ages, (...) used by the historian Ibn Khaldun, writing circa 1375’ (DW, 32); according to other sources al-Ifriqī is identified with al-Sūdānī, a script which originated from the Maghrebi family of scripts and came to be associated with sub-Saharan Africa (AO, 46).

افشان

afshān (Pers.) – decoration of paper with flecks of gold and silver (MN, 6; ER, I, 581-582).

الف

ta’līf(ah) (pl. ta’ālīf, tawālīf, ta’līfāt), **mu’allaf** (pl. mu’allafāt) – composition, compilation, work (of prose or poetry) (SD, I, 33; EI, X, 360), comp. taṣnīf.

mu’allif – author, writer, comp. muṣannif.

ام

umm, ummah (IN, I, 246) (pl. ummahāt) 1. also **al-nuskhah al-umm** – holograph (LC, 26); copy, transcript (from which another copy is made), exemplar; archetype (LC, 26; SD, I, 35; TM, 180: qif ‘alā al-iltizām li-muqābalat al-kitāb ‘alā al-shaykh aw mu’araḍatih ‘alā al-umm) 2. original (main) text, as opposed to a commentary, sharḥ (IN, I, 246) 3. model codex of the Qur’ān, usually of a large format and without vocalization, used in mosques (KN, 130) 4. fundamental (essential) work (composition) (LC, 29).

umm al-kitāb 1. heavenly prototype (aṣl) of the Qur’ān (EI, X, 854) 2. the first sūrah of the Qur’ān (DM).

Umm al-qurá, Umm al-buldān, Umm al-bilād – Mecca.

imām – exemplar; archetype, textus receptus (NT, II, 137 : wa-huwa al-imām alladhī lam yakhtalif fī mukhtalaf).

al-muṣḥaf al-imām – ‘Uthmanic canon, codex (**al-muṣḥaf al-‘Uthmānī**) (MD, 99; KF, II, 294).

al-Musnad al-imām – the *Musnad* of Ibn Ḥanbal (SL, II, 37, 39).

امل

ta'ammulāt (sg. ta'ammul – 'consideration') – notabilia, comp. tadabbur.

fa-ta'ammal(hu) – nota bene, abbrev. فآ (CI, II, xiv; LL, I, 99).

fīhi ta'ammul – a phrase (syn. **fīhi naẓar**) implying doubt and insinuating 'politely that the words to which it relates are false or wrong' (LL, II, 2812).

امن

ta'mīn – saying (writing) **āmīn** (**amīn**); one of the standard closing formulae in manuscripts, usually abbreviated as لم (alif joined to mīm) or ام (LD, 89, 140, 149; AD, 6; EI, I, 436), comp. tatmīm, tafqīt.

انبوبة

unbūb(ah) (pl. anābīb) – unpared, unnibbed reed (FN, 31; KU, 153: wa-lā yusammā al-unbūb qalaman ḥattā yuqṭa'; BA, III, 370; LM, 31).

انس

insī see sinn.

انف

anfah – nib (of the calamus) (BA, III, 370).

ta'nīf – nibbing (of the calamus) (KD, II, 701: annaftuhu ta'nīfan idhā ḥaddadtu ʔarafahu al-mabrī wa-qaṭaṭtuhu qaṭṭan).

انق

(qalam) **al-mu'annaq** see **al-ash'ār**.

اول

ālah – implement, instrument, syn. adāh (q.v.).

awwal (pl. awā'il) – introductory matter of the text (composition); incipit; initia, (TP, 52, n.14; JA, I, 264: rasm al-tasmiyah fī awwal kitāb al-shī'r; AA, 40: wa-al-ṭaṣḍīr fī awwal al-kitāb wa-al-du'ā' fī ākhirih).

awā'il al-shahr – the first 10 days of the month (DM).

ta'wīl (pl. ta'āwīl) – interpretation, explanation (e.g. ta'wīl al-Qur'ān).

ب

بتر

mabtūr 1. acephalous, imperfect, incomplete (of text) (KC, passim)
2. truncated letter (especially of a descender) (KH, 34).

بحر

baḥr (pl. buḥūr) – panel on a book cover; cartouche (TS, 33; AG, 110; JL, 103: iṭār fīhi manāṭiq wa-buḥūr mustaṭīlah dhāt fuṣūṣ fī nihāyatihā; SD, I, 53).

tabḥīr – creating panels on book covers (NH, 355).

بخر

tabkhīr – fumigation (TS, 40: wa-yubakḥkhīr bi-a'ḍā' al-hud'hud wa-rīshih fa-innahu yaqtul al-araḍah).

بدل

badal, bidl (DB, I, 452) (pl. abdāl) 1. variant reading (*varia lectio*), usually abbreviated as ل (CI, II, xiii) or خ ل or د خ for nuskah and badal respectively (KG, 473: see the quotation under *ẓāhir*; MI, 119, 120, 166: ay fī nuskah ukhrā badalan 'an al-nuskah al-madhkūrah fī al-matn, comp. خ ل for nuskah-aṣl, MZ, II, 412) 2. also **tabdīl** – substitution, alteration (CL, fasc.3, 296); conjectural substitution, conjecture.

بدوح

budūḥ – artificial talismanic word (seal) formed from the simple threefold magic square, wifq (US, 49; EI, suppl. fasc.3-4, 153-154; SD, I, 59-60; DT, 100-103).

برد

bardī, abardī (waraq al-bardī), bardīyah – papyrus, papyrus sheet or roll (DB, I, 521-522; EI, VIII, 407; WS, 64-66), comp. qirṭās.

mibrad – file, rasp (HT, lin.84; QS, II, 417; IA, 60; DD, I, 390: for trimming).

برز

ibrāz – bringing out (a book), publishing (KM, IV, sifr 13, 6: abraztu al-kitāb nashartuhu wa-huwa mabrūz).

ibrāz bi-al-ḥumrah see ḥumrah.

برشم

barshamah – decorating a text with multi-coloured dots (DB, I, 545).

burshmān (or **barshmān**, pl. barāshim, DC, I, 189) – endband (headband) (ST, index, 8; ST, 17-18; IB, 81, n.148); **barshīm, barīshim**, pl. barshimān (LA, pt.5, 386: barshimān jam' barshīm aw barīshim ay ibrišhim aw ibrišim wa-huwa al-ḥarīr wa-al-barshīm Fārisīyah wa-al-burshmān jam'uhā).

برك

al-mubārak(ah) – epithet of the months of Ṣafar, Sha'bān, Ramaḍān, Shawwāl, and Rabī' al-Thānī (q.v.), as well as such words as kitāb, jāmi', nuskhah, etc.

بركار

birkār (pl. barākīr) – compass; (pair of) dividers (SA, III, 41: used for measuring letters; MU, XVI, 60; DM), see also bīkār and tabkīr.

بركان

burkān (pl. barākīn), **ḥajar al-burkān** – pumice (TS, 12, 18).

برنامج

barnāmaj (pl. barāmiḡ) 1. table of contents (LC, 23) 2. work containing a record of attested study similar to **fihris** and **fahrasah** (q.v.).

بری

bary, **birāyah** – paring, trimming (of a reed) (IR, 232; SA, III, 455-464; SK, 105; UD, 9: arkān al-bary arbaʿah: fath wa-naḥt wa-shaqq wa-qattʿ).

burāyah – a shaving (from a reed) (KU, 154: IK, 85; KK, 49).

barrāyah, **mibrāh** (pl. mabārin) – pen knife (AA, 88; IK, 90; DB, I, 591).

بزق

mibzaq – lancet-like knife, **mibzaq al-faṣādah** (ST, index, 8; MP, 64; DA: **mibzagh**; SD, I, 81).

بسط

bast – spreading out, flattening (of a letter), as opposed to rounding it, taqwīr (SA, III, 11, 50; AS, 144).

mabsūt 1. horizontal stroke, line (KU, 120) 2. (**qalam**) **mabsūt** – reed pen, having its nib cut (evenly) straight (not obliquely), syn. jazm (IK, 87) 3. rectilinear (of a script, **al-qalam al-mabsūt**) (SA, III, 11: wa-huwa mā lā inkhisāf wa-lā inḥiṭāt fīhi ka-al-muḥaqqaq; KH, 34; AS, 144) 4. original (comprehensive), unabridged work, comp. mukhtaṣar.

al-aqlām al-mabsūṭah (**al-yābisah**) – rectilinear scripts such as muḥaqqaq, maṣāḥif, rayḥān and naskh (AS, 144).

(**al-khatt**) **al-mabsūt** – clear, well-spaced Maghrebi script used predominantly for the copying of the Qurʾān and prayer books (LT, 365; TW, 13, 47, 322).

بسمل

basmalah (pl. basāmil) – the propitiatory formula ‘Bism Allāh (al-Raḥmān al-Raḥīm)’, written usually on its own, a number of lines

down from the head of the page, and opening a composition (TP, 52; JM, 12: qāla al-nabī ṣallā Allāh ‘alayhi wa-sallam kull amr dhī bāl lā yubda’u fīhi bi-Bism Allāh fa-huwa abtar ay maqṭū‘ al-barakah; EI, I, 1084-1085).

بشر

bashr 1. paring, dressing (of leather) (UK, 161; MP, 58; TS, 23-24; AG, 109; ST, index, 9; IA, 63; LF, 78: ‘racler, ratisser des peaux’; HT, lin.111) 2. erasure with a pen knife or scraper (TP, 58; LF, 78; ‘effacer des mots avec un grattoir’) 3. cancellation by means of drawing lines above a word or words to be erased (LF, 79-81: ‘en passant quelques traits de plume par dessus’).

mabshūr – pared; erased.

بشرط

bashraṭ 1. silk thread used for endbanding (headbanding) 2. silk endband (headband) (HT, lin.97, 155).

بطاقة

biṭāqah (pl. baṭā’iq) 1. piece, slip (of paper) 2. catalogue, register (AD, 12).

(**qalam**) **al-baṭā’iq** – the smallest of the curvilinear scripts, also known as **al-ghubār** (q.v.) (AS, 145).

بطن

baṭn (pl. buṭūn), **bāṭin** (pl. bawāṭin) – inner side; flesh side (of parchment); inner cover.

baṭn al-ghilāf (al-sifr, al-kitāb) – inner cover; doublure (LC, 23; AG, 112).

biṭānah (pl. baṭā’in) 1. lining (FT, 408) 2. doublure (TS, 22-23; MB, 117; IA, 60; HT, lin.73-79) 3. endpaper; paste-down endpaper; endleaf (ST, passim; IB, 47, 49; UK, 157: waraq al-baṭā’in wa-hiya waraqatān fa-waraqah takūn fī al-jild wa-ukhrā takūn bāqiyatan ‘alā al-karārīs li-taṣūn al-kitāb min al-adhā wa-al-wasakh) 4. pasteboard (UK, 159; HD, 102; MA, IV, 89, 90: wa-lā ba’s an yubaṭṭin al-jild bi-al-awrāq allatī fīhā al-ḥisāb) 5. basan, sheep skin (AG, 110; SD, I, 92).

tabṭīn 1. lining of the insides of book covers with paper, leather or silk (ST, index, 9; MU, XIV, 84: mujallad bi-adam mubaṭṭan bi-dībāj) 2. removal of shaḥmah (q.v.) from the reed (IK, 87); paring (of the calamus) (KD, II, 701: baṭṭantu al-qalam tabṭīnan idhā raqqaqtu baryah; MB, 61; BA, III, 370), comp. bary.

بعد

baʿdu – after; used for a transposed word, abbrev. ب (LE, 134).

baʿdīyah – the epistolary and textual formula ‘ammā (or wa-) baʿdu’, also known as **faṣl al-khiṭāb**, separating doxological statements from the preface proper (TP, 53, n.20).

بعض

tabʿīd – word division, separation (MM, 135: wa-karihū tabʿīd al-kalimah al-murakkabah).

بكر

bīkār (pl. bayākīr, bawākīr; comp. birkār) – compass, (pair of) dividers (UK, 153, 156; MP, 58; IB, 44; MB, 101, 103; IA, 59, 60; TU, 105), comp. birkār.

tabkīr, also **bīkārīyah** – working with a compass by drawing circles, measuring distances, etc. (MB, 103, 104, 105: fa-al-bīkārīyah isti-khrāj al-shumūs wa-al-dawāʾir al-manqūshah allatī taqaʿu fī wasaṭ al-kitāb); geometrical figure, design.

al-dawāʾir al-bīkārīyah see dāʾirah.

miṣṭarat al-tabkīr see miṣṭarah.

mibkar(ah) – case (for a compass) (NH, 380; DD, I, 391).

بلط

balāṭah – marble slab (UK, 153; IB, 42; MB, 103; IA, 59), comp. rukhām.

بلغ

balāgh (pl. balāghāt), **tablīgh** (pl. tablīghāt), also known as **ʿalāmat al-balāgh (al-tablīgh)** – collation statement or mark indicating the

place where collation was interrupted (MF, 81: *balaghtu qirā'atan min al-balāgh bi-khaṭṭī ilā hunā*; MF, 85: *fa-samī'a mā fī hāmish al-nuskahah 'inda al-tablīgh*; CD, IV, pl.119; TP, 56; JA, I, 268; CT, 45: **bulūgh**), comp. *mu'āraḍah*, *muqābalah*.

muballigh see *mustamlin*.

بلو / بلى

balī, bālīn – worn, damaged (TS, 28: *al-asfār al-bawālī*).

بنق

tabnīq – elegant writing, copying (TE, 15), comp. *tanmīq*.

بهاري

(**al-khaṭṭ**) **al-bihārī** or **al-Bihārī** (also known as **bāhar** (thus), **khaṭṭ-i bāhar**, EI, IV, 1127) – script used in India mostly but not exclusively for the copying of the Qur'ān from the late 8/14th century to the end of the 10/16th century (CA, 36).

بوب

bāb (pl. *abwāb*) – chapter, abbrev. ب (MI, 103).

tabwīb – arrangement (division) of the text into chapters (MF, 609; TP, 53, n.20).

mubawwib – compiler (DF, IV, 376), comp. *murattib*.

بيت

bayt (pl. *buyūt*) 1. wooden box (for housing a multi-volume copy of the Qur'ān) (SJ, nos.2 and 5: *fī bayt 'ūd laṭīf mubaṭṭan bi-al-ḥarīr*, *fī bayt 'ūd rab'ah mughashshā bi-al-jild* 2. compartment (in such a box) 3. compartment (in a book cover design) (TS, 31, 32; AG, 110) 4. frame (as part of the border, *ṭurrah*) (TS, 33).

bayt al-ghurāb – hexagonal element in a Mamluk book cover design (JL, 95, 97; KR, 82).

Bayt al-Maqdis, al-Bayt al-Muqaddas – Jerusalem.

tabyīt – creation of compartments and frames (on book covers) (TS, 31-33; AG, 110).

بيض

bayād (pl. bayādāt) 1. blank space, gap; space, spacing (e.g. TM, 169: bayād al-fawātiḥ wa-al-khawātīm; AK, 351: fa-inna al-bayād min jumlat ‘alā’im al-faṣl; SA, III, 146: wa-kuttāb al-rasā’il yaj’alūn lil-fawāṣil bayādan yakūn bayna al-kalāmāyīn; SA, VI, 195: miqdār al-bayād qabla al-basmalah; SA, III, 50: an yakūn al-bayād bayna al-aḥruf ka-mithlih bayna al-suṭūr) 2. lacuna, abbrev. ض (TN, 51; LC, 23; MI, 138) 3. also **mubayyaḍah**, **tabyīḍah** – fair copy (as opposed to a draft, musawwadah (q.v.) (MU, VI, 157: wa-baqiya baqīyat al-kitāb musawwadatan ghayr munaqqāḥah wa-lā mubayyaḍah fa-bayyaḍahu Abū Ishāq; MU, XV, 23: al-sawād wa-al-bayād; FK, I, 978; KF, II, 333) 4. counter (‘eye’) of a letter (KH, 36) 5. white colour, ink or paint.

bayād ṣaḥīḥ – expression used for a blank space or page created by mistake or left deliberately blank in order to indicate a lacuna in the exemplar (hic nullus est defectus).

tabyīḍ 1. creating adequate space (bayād) between letters and lines; spacing (TE, 15) 2. execution (of the fair copy) (TE, 15; KF, II, 333, 346) 3. copying, transcription (TE, 15).

mubayyīḍ – author; fair copyist.

بين

bayān (pl. bayānāt) – marginal correction or explanatory note (usually for a smudged or clumsily written word, i.e. cacographical error), abbrev. ب or ن (TP, 58; CI, I, xiv; MI, 182; MM, 136).

ت

تابوت

tābūt (pl. tawābīt) 1. wooden box, chest (for housing a multi-volume copy of the Qur’ān) (SJ, no.47: fī tābūt ‘ūd murakkan bi-al-nuḥās; TS, 39: tawābīt al-raba’āt; TS, 33: al-tawābīt al-jāfiyah al-ajrām; ME, 568-569) 2. pentagonal figure or panel (TS, 29: thumma tarsum fī al-

udhn tābūtan ‘alā wasaṭ al-khātim aw al-dā’irah; also TS, 30-31; AG, 110).

تاسومة

tāsūmah – octagonal element in a Mamluk book cover design (JL, 95, 97; KR, 82).

تبر

tibr – gold, gold dust (AQ, 246: kataba wa-dhahhaba wa-zayyana arkānah bi-al-tibr wa-al-lawn wa-al-taḥrīr; LL, I, 293).

تخت

takht (pl. tukhūt) 1. wooden board (UK, 149; KT, 135: used for book covers) 2. wooden pressing board (TS, 22, 24; AG, 107) 3. also **takht al-ziyār** (**al-ziyyār**) bookbinder’s press (ST, index, 9; IB, 42; HT, lin. 82, 120).

takhtīt – pressing (ST, index, 9).

ترب

turāb – dust, earth, sand.

tatrīb – sprinkling a freshly written text with sand (IK, 94; KM, IV, sifr 13, 6; KU, 156; TD, I, 127-136), comp.tarmīl.

mitrabah – sandbox; compartment for sand in the dawāh (q.v.) (SA, II, 478-480).

ترجم

tarjamah (pl. tarājim) 1. designation of the sender in the ‘unwān (ML, 32: makān al-tarjamah qabla al-basmalah) 2. title (of a book) (LC, 28; AH, 165); detailed title of a book, indicating its contents (DB, II, 122) 3. key word (LC, 28) 4. chapter heading (IN, 252: wa-al-murād bi-al-tarājim al-abwāb wa-al-fuṣūl wa-naḥwuhā) 5. decorative panel around a chapter heading (LC, 27) 6. paragraph (LC, 27) 7. headpiece or tailpiece (LC, 27) 8. decorative figure of any shape or size used in the text (e.g. disc) or margins (e.g. medallion)

(MS, 20: tarājim mudhahhabah mulawwanah mutanawwi‘at al-ashkāl, also MS, 28, 29, 30) 9. biographical note, biography (EI, X, 224) 10. table of contents (tarjamat al-abwāb, LC, 28) 11. interpretation; translation (EI, X, 224) 12. explanation, exegesis (DB, II, 1021) 13. also **mutarjam** (e.g. ‘Qaṣīdat Ibn al-Durayhim fī al-mutarjam’) – cypher, cryptography (AA, 186; IT, 29-31; DB, II, 1021). **mutarjim** 1. translator; biographer 2. illuminator (TW, 260, 270).

تِرس

tirs, turs (pl. turūs) – principal (often central) element in a Mamluk book cover design in the shape of a pointed star (JL, 95, 97; KR, 82).

ترنج

turunj(ah) 1. oval, citrus-shaped stamp (mandorla) for center-medallions (IB, 69; LC, 28) 2. center-medallion in the shape of a mandorla (ST, index, 9; IB, 44) 3. illuminated oval medallion, rosette (HD, 103; IP, 145; PA, 116), comp. shamsah.

rub^c al-turunjah – quarter-medallion, corner-piece (ST, 15).

تفتر

taftar see daftar.

تم

tatmīm – completion, execution; writing **tamma** (lit. ‘it is finished’) at the end of the colophon, abbrev. م or م م (any number) (CI, I, xiii; CM, 46), comp. ta‘mīn, tafqīt.

tamām – end, finish; used in manuscripts of Persian/Indian provenance in the expression **tamām shud** (‘it is finished’), often abbreviated as ١٢, ٢٢ or ١٤ at the end of marginal quotations or glosses (CI, II, xiii), comp. ḥadd.

tatimmah – supplementation; supplement; continuation and end (of a composition) (DM).

tamīmah (pl. tamā‘im) – amulet, talisman (EI, X, 177-178).

ث

ثَبَّتْ

thabt, ithbāt – writing, copying (MH, 100, 101; FK, II, no.1202-3: *hādhā ākhir mā athbatnāhu fī hādhā al-kitāb*), used very often in the formula of attestation ‘*ṣaḥḥa wa-thabata*’.

thabat (pl. *athbāt*) 1. certificate or document attesting a didactic transmission of a text; document, written testimony (SD, I, 157) 2. record of attested study (HB, 234; GA, 288: syn. *mu‘jam, mashyakha*, in the East, and *barnāmaj* or *fahrasah*, in the West) 3. table of contents.

thabāt – signature (SD, I, 157).

ithbāt 1. vocalization (AD, 18) 2. also **tathbīt** – attestation, authentication (formula), usually expressed by: *ṣaḥḥa* (or *ṣaḥīḥ*) (*dhālika*) *wa-thabata* (or *kataba*) or *hādhā ṣaḥīḥ wa-katabahu* (TP, 53, n.25; CT, 45; GA, 289).

muthabbīt, muthbit – writer, recorder (syn. *kātib*), particularly in the expression *muthbit al-samā‘*, i.e. *kātib al-samā‘*, writer of the audition note (MH, 101; CT, 45).

ثَبَّجَ

thabaj(ah) – obscurity or indistinctiveness of handwriting (LL, I, 330).

ثَقَبَ

mithqab (pl. *mathāqib*) – drill for making holes in boards when endbanding (headbanding) (TS, 11; AG, 107).

ثَقُلَ

thaqīl (lit. ‘heavy’) – larger variety (version) of a script (SA, III, 58: *al-thuluth al-thaqīl, thaqīl al-thuluth*; AS, 147).

ثُلُث

(**qalam**) **al-thuluth** (**al-thulth**) – the principal curvilinear script used in codices mostly for book titles and chapter headings (SA, III, 50: *ṭarīqat al-thuluth fa-tajrī al-ḥāl fīhi ‘alá al-mīl ilá al-taqwīr*; AS, 147; JM, 32-38: **al-thuluth al-mu‘tād**; JM, 46-53: **jalīl al-thuluth**; TU, 106: *li-anna alif al-thuluth fī ṣadrihā taḥdīb mā wa-fī ‘ajzihā ka-dhālika*; LM, 47: *wa-al-thuluth lil-ta‘līm*; LM, 53: *wa-in kunta taktub thuluthan aw tawāqī‘ aw riqā‘an fa-amil ākhirahu (ay ḥarf al-alif) muratṭiban ilá naḥw al-yasrah qalīlan*; EI, IV, 1123- in Persia, 1125- in Turkey).

al-thuluth al-Maghribī see Mashriqī.

(**qaṭ‘**) **al-thulth** see **qaṭ‘**.

tathlīth – providing a letter with three diacritical points, abbrev. ث (TN, 51), hence **muthallathah** – having three diacritical dots; epithet added to *thā’* to prevent its being mistaken for *bā’* or *tā’* or *yā’* (LL, I, 349).

al-ḥibr al-muthallath see **ḥibr**.

ثَمْن

(**qālib**) **al-thumn**, **al-thumānī** see **qālib**.

muthamman – octagonal, octagon (EI, VII, 795-796), comp. *khātim muthamman*.

ثَنَى

tathniyah – providing a letter with two diacritical points (DM), hence **muthannāh** – having two diacritical dots (points).

muthannāh fawqīyah – marked with two points above; epithet added to *tā’* to prevent it from being read as *bā’*, or *thā’* or *yā’* (LL, I, 361).

muthannāh taḥtīyah – marked with two points below; epithet added to *yā’* to prevent its being mistaken for *bā’* or *tā’* or *thā’* (LL, I, 361).

al-ta’rīkh al-mustathná see **ta’rīkh**.

istithnā’ – the formula of submission to the will of God ‘in *shā’a Allāh*’ (SA, VI, 232-234), abbrev. انش , انشه , شا (CI, II, xiv; FM, 167; MZ, Taf. 12, no.13; SA, VI, 232-234; MI, 102), see also *mash’alah*.

ج

جامة

jāmah 1. decorative medallion or panel; either illuminated or stamped (KI, 258: al-manāṭiq wa-al-buḥūr; LC, 25) 2. center-piece (on a book cover) (FI, 87, 88; JL, 83: **jāmah wusṭá**; KR, 87: ashkāl lawzīyah) 3. palmette, roundel (ZM, 44, 45).

rub^c al-jāmah – quarter-medallion, corner-piece (JL, 83, 99).

dhayl al-jāmah – pendant (JL, 99, 100).

جير

jabr – repairing, mending, restoring manuscripts; repair (SJ, nos.41, 43).

جد

tajdīd – repair, restoration (KR, 87).

جدل

jadīlah (pl. jadā'il) – plait, braid; interlace (TF, 141).

majdūl (pl. majādīl) – leather strap, thong (KC, 33; KC, 42).

جدول

jadwal(ah) (pl. jadāwil) 1. also **tajdawīl** – ruling (of borders), creating rule-borders (WB, 50, 56; TW, 148, 160) 2. rules, rule-border (LC, 24: jadāwil al-ṣafaḥāt, jadāwil al-hawāmish; HD, 105; PA, 63) 3. diagram, chart, table (LC, 24) 4. column (of text) (SD, I, 175) 5. table of contents (CM, no.6/2) 6. magic square, talismanic seal (EI, II, 370; DT, 108).

mujadwal – ruled (LC, 26).

mujadwil – ruler (maker of rule-borders) (TC, 32).

جذ

judhādhah – slip (of paper); inset (DM), comp. juzāzah.

جر

jarrah, jurrah – horizontal stroke, line, as in the median kāf, isolated ḥā' or sīn 'without teeth' (SA, III, 61, 72, 81), comp. shaqq.

mijarr – wooden part of the clasp (KC, 33: fī sifr bi-mijarr min khashab).

جرد

jard al-matn see matn.

jarīdah – list, register, inventory (SD, I, 184; DG, 27).

tajrīd 1. edition or composition involving collection or selection of material from an original work; collection (gathering) of glosses from the margins of a manuscript (TT, 107; KF, II, 331: wa-lam yujarridhu 'an al-musawwadah) 2. extract, abridgement (SD, I, 183).

mijrad(ah) – file; scraper (MB, 112; DD, I, 390: instrument for cleaning a dawāh; UA, 393).

جرم

jirm (pl. ajrām) – format (of a book), e.g. jirm kabīr or kabīr al-jirm, jirm wasaṭ, jirm laṭīf or laṭīf al-jirm (SJ, passim).

جری

majran (pl. majārin) – compartment for reed pens in the dawāh (KU, 154).

جز

jazz – trimming, shaving (MB, passim: ḥazz; IA, 62).

juzāzah (pl. juzāzāt) 1. loose sheet of paper used for notes, quotations or drafts, rough copies 2. also **jizzah** – slip of paper used for glosses and tipped into a volume; inset (UI, 19; MU, VII, 132, n.2: wurayqāt tu'allaq fīhā al-fawā'id; KF, I, 103).

جزء

juz' (pl. ajzā') 1. booklet; single-quire codex; volume (in the sense of mujallad) (MK, 79; AI, 117: wa-yuwassī'u al-ṭālib kummah li-yaḍa' fīhi al-kutub wa-al-ajzā') 2. the 30th part of the Qur'ān (= 3 ḥizbs); one of the 30 volumes of the Qur'ān 3. quire (gathering), abbrev. ج or ➤ (CI, I, xii) 4. chapter or section of a text (composition) 5. independent, small piece of writing, usually not more than a quire (IJ, 128) 6. small collection of ḥadīth without any structured arrangement (EI, VII, 705).

mujazza' – volume consisting of bound quires, ajzā' (IJ, 128).

juz'ah – handle (of a knife) (KD, II, 711).

mijza'ah – pen knife (IK, 90).

tajzi'ah – set of a number of volumes (Fr. tomaisson) (SJ, passim: tajzi'at sab'ah; WR, 83, 86, 92: e.g. khumāsīyat al-tajzi'ah, tajzi'ah 'ushārīyah, tajzi'ah thumānīyah).

جزع

jaz' – onyx (for burnishing gold) (UK, 143; MB, 99; MP, 38).

al-waraq al-mujazza' see waraq.

جزم

jazm – reed pen, having the nib cut (evenly) straight (not obliquely) (IK, 87: qalam jazm; LL, I, 421).

(**khaṭṭ** or **qalam**) **al-jazm** – ancient script of al-Ḥīrah used for the copying of the Qur'ān (khaṭṭ al-maṣāḥif) and having 'a stiff and angular appearance' (RN, 7-9; IK, 89, 90).

majzūm – well-balanced (of writing) (IK, 94: fa-idhā sawwā ḥurūf kitābatih wa-lam yukhālīf ba'ḍuhā ba'ḍan qīla jazama yajzimu jazman wa-khaṭṭ majzūm).

jazm(ah) – diacritical mark (◌ or ➤) indicating an unvowelled final consonant (DS, 196: wa-ḥudhdhāq al-kitāb yaj'alūn al-jazmah jīman laṭīfatan bi-ghayr 'arāqah ishāratān lil-jazm; for other signs representing jazmah see GL, 13).

جسد

jasad (pl. ajsād) – background (UK, 149: šifat kitābah bayḍā’ ‘alā jasad aswad).

tajsīd – tinting in red (AD, 23).

جف

mujaffif – dryer (for sand), comp. tarmīl (UA, 393).

جل

(**qalam**) **al-jalīl** – according to Ibn al-Nadīm, the ‘father of all scripts’ (abū al-aqlām) (FN, 11, 12; IK, 89: wa-khaṭṭ ahl al-Shām al-jalīl yaktubūna bi-hi al-maṣāḥif wa-al-sijillāt; SA, III, 12).

al-khaṭṭ al-jalīl (also **jalī**) – name given to a larger variety of the script, e.g. jalīl al-muḥaqqaq (q.v.), jalīl al-thuluth (q.v.), dīwānī jalī (SA, III, 50: wa-al-ma’nā fīhi anna al-ṭams lā yalīq bi-al-khaṭṭ al-jalīl; EI, IV, 1123).

tajlīl – the formula of glorification ‘jalla jalāluh’ or ‘jalla sha’nuh’ (abbrev. جش), placed after the word Allāh (TP, 54).

(**ism**) **al-jalālāh** – the name of God (the word Allāh) (LC, 25).

majallah (pl. majāll) 1. writing surface (like ṣaḥīfah) (BA, III, 371: al-majallah ṣaḥīfah kānū yaktubūna fīhā al-ḥikmah); parchment roll (ND, 57, n.67) 2. booklet (SL, I, 48; SL, II, 5) 3. composition, work (e.g. Majallat Luqmān; FK, I, no.892: wa-ba’dū fa-hādhihi majallah mushtamilah ‘alā sharḥ...).

جلد

jild (pl. julūd) 1. leather (EI, II, 540-541; KM, I, sifr 4,100-111; WS, 56-60; AE, 106-109); parchment (AE, 108; EP, 17) 2. volume.

jild (raqq) al-ghazāl – gazelle skin (hide) (EI, VIII, 408); fine (good quality, vellum-like) parchment, not necessarily made of gazelle skin (EP, 19-21).

jild(ah) – book cover; binding (JL, 81: jildat muṣṣhaf; LC, 25).

jildah yumnā – upper cover (LC, 25).

jalādah, mijlad, tajlīdah – book cover (LC, 25; SD, I, 206).

tajlīd – covering with leather; bookbinding (SD, I, 206).

mujallad(ah) – volume (MU, VIII, 123 and IX, 47; LC, 26).

mujallid – bookbinder (QS, II, 416-417).

جلس

majlis (pl. majālis) – session, sitting.

majlis al-samāʿ – audition/reading session (EI, VIII, 1020).

majlis al-muqābalah – collation session (CI, II, 60: balagha qibālan ... fī majālis).

julūs – accession to the throne (DM).

al-taʾrīkh bi-al-julūs see taʾrīkh.

جلف

jilfah, julfah – nib (of the calamus; the whole part of the reed which is cut away) (SA, II, 459-460; KU, 154: wa-julfat al-qalam min mubtadaʾ sinnayh ilā ḥaythu intahā al-bary).

جلم

jalam (pl. ajlām) – (pair of) scissors (DS, 181: wa-yaḥtāj ilayhi al-kātib fī qaṣṣ al-waraq lil-taswīyah wa-naḥwih; IK, 91-92; IR, 230).

جمادى

Jumādā al-Ūlá, Jumād al-Awwal – the fifth month of the Muslim calendar, abbrev. ج ١ / ج ١ / ج ١ (OS, 89; CI, II, 203: **Jamīd al-Awwal**; CM, no.190: **Jamīdah al-Thānī**!).

Jumādā al-Ākhirah (al-Ākhir), Jumādā al-Thānīyah, Jumād al-Thānī – the sixth month of the Muslim calendar, abbrev. ج ٢ / ج ٢ (OS, 89).

جمع

jamʿ (pl. jumūʿ) 1. contraction (of letters) (KU, 126; SA, III, 146: al-jamʿ wa-al-mashq) 2. rounding (of the descender to resemble a semi-circle) (KH, 34) 3. composition, compilation.

jāmiʿ 1. compiler, author (DF, IV, 376) 2. (pl. jawāmiʿ) – comprehensive work, major original compilation, e.g. the Qurʾān (UI, colophon: kataba ḥādḥā al-jāmiʿ ʿAlī ibn Hilāl bi-Madīnat al-Salām; SL, I, 21; FN, 352).

majmūʿ(ah) (pl. majāmīʿ, majmūʿāt) 1. compendium; work, book (MU, III, 98: wa-lahu fī kull fann taṣānīf wa-majāmīʿ wa-tawālīf; FK, II, 359: tamma al-majmūʿ al-musammá bi-Fawāt al-wafayāt) 2. composite volume, codex compositus (LC, 25).

majmaʿ (pl. majāmiʿ), **mujammaʿ** (UA, 393) 1. tool box, case with compartments (TS, 12, 37; AG, 106; SD, I, 217; DG, 32) 2. inkwell (SD, I, 217; DD, I, 389: dawāh murabbaʿah dhāt baṭn wasī min nuḥās aw ghayrih); inkwell for coloured ink (TC, 13) 3. case, box (NM, 683) 4. writing case, escriptoire (TW, 52, 233; TM, 52; NH, 380).

جمل

jumal, jummal see ḥisāb.

جنب

janb (pl. junūb, ajnāb) – book cover (ST, index, 10).

جنح

janāḥ (pl. ajniḥah) – hinge (guard) (MB, 109, 110; IA, 61; ST, index, 10).

(qalam) al-janāḥ – the smallest of the curvilinear scripts, better known as **al-ghubār** (q.v.) (AS, 145).

جوب

jawāb (pl. ajwibah) – responsum, abbrev. ج (CI, II, xiv; MI, 111).

jūbah see jūnah.

mijwab – cutter, knife (TS, 11; AG, 107: for cutting gold leaf ; IA, 61: mijwab al-takhrīm).

جوز

ijāzah (pl. ijāzāt) – authorization, licence; certificate of transmission; statement of authorization to transmit one or more than one text; diploma in the form of a note appended to a manuscript or existing independently and often containing autobibliographical data (LC, 24; EI, III, 27, 1020-1021; LB, 126-130; ER, VIII, 273-275; IJ).

ijāzat al-munāwalah see munāwalah

ijāzat al-qirā'ah see qirā'ah.

ijāzat al-riwāyah see riwāyah

ijāzat al-samā' see samā'.

ijāzah bi-al-kitbah – certificate granted to a calligrapher allowing him/her to sign his/her calligraphy with the expression 'katabahu' (NI, 181).

(khaṭṭ) al-ijāzah – Ottoman variety of riqā' script having a long tarwīs which often wraps round the shaft of the alif (EI, IV, 1125).

mujāz, mustajāz 1. licensee (recipient of an ijāzah) 2. (pl. mujāzāt, mustajāzāt) licensed work.

mujīz – licensor (person who has the authority to grant an ijāzah; signer of a license).

جون

jūnah – compartment (place) for an inkwell (in the dawāh); inkwell (HI, 73: wa-ammā al-jūnah allatī fīhā ḥuqq al-midād fa-yanbaghī an yakūn shaklan mudawwar al-ra's; SA, II, 468; al-jūnah wa-hiya al-ẓarf alladhī fīhi al-līqah wa-al-ḥibr; DS, 179; AT, 133; NH, 381: **jawn**; KU, 154: wa-al-jūbah (!) allatī tuj'al fīhā al-ḥuqq, also known as **waqabah**; see also the quotation under miqlamah).

جوهر

(al-khaṭṭ) al-mujawhar – Maghrebi script used most commonly in official correspondence and as a book hand for the copying of non-Qur'ānic texts (LT, 365: TW, 13, 47, 322).

ح

حبر

ḥibr (pl. aḥbār) 1. gallnut or tannin ink; ink (in general) (UK, 91-100 and MB, 71-75: **al-aḥbār al-sūd** – black inks; UK, 101-110 and MB, 75-78: **al-aḥbār al-mulawwanah** – coloured inks; MJ, 212-213: **ḥibr al-kāghad, ḥibr al-raqq**; IR, 236-237: **al-aḥbār al-murakkabah** – compound inks; MP, 13, n.53; MP, 18-21; KM, IV, sifr 13, 6: wa-al-

ḥibr al-midād wa-al-zāj min akhlāṭ al-ḥibr; MR, 93: wa-al-kitābah bi-al-ḥibr awlā min al-midād li-annahu athbat; MA, IV, 84: wa-yataʿayyan ʿalayhi an lā yansakh bi-al-ḥibr alladhī yaḥriq al-waraq; SA, II, 471-477: wa-ammā al-ḥibr fa-aṣluhu al-lawṇ; AT, 134-135; AE, 127-131; IK, 68: **al-ḥibr al-muthallath** – ink produced by cooking the ingredients until two thirds of the substance evaporates, see LL, I, 349; IK, 68: **al-ḥibr al-maṭbūkh** – ‘cooked’ ink; LM, 72-73: **al-ḥibr al-dukhānī**, comp. midād 2. also **ḥabr** – flourish, embellishment (DB, III, 2016).

ḥarq ḥibr – ink burns (SJ, 354).

miḥbarah (pl. maḥābir) 1. also **ḥibrīyah** – inkwell (BA, III, 372; SA, II, 443: al-miḥbarah al-mufradah ʿan al-dawāh; SA, II, 468: wa-hiya al-maqṣūd min al-dawāh; TW, 57) 2. compartment for ink in the dawāh (AT, 132-133; SA, II, 443, 468-469), comp. dawāh.

ḥabbār, ḥibrī – ink maker (QS, I, 89).

taḥbīr 1. inking, inscribing in ink (SM, 264: al-taḥbīr al-naqsh min al-ḥibrah) 2. elegant, embellished writing (composition) or copying, transcription (TE, 15; SA, II, 472: ḥabbartu al-shayʿ taḥbīran idhā ḥassantuhu; WR, 87; SK, 119).

miṣṭarat al-taḥbīr see miṣṭarah.

muḥabbir – author, compiler (SS, 73: qaraʿtu jamīʿ hādhā al-kitāb ʿalā muʿallifih wa-muḥarririh wa-muhadhdhibih wa-muḥabbirih).

حبس

ḥubs (pl. aḥbās), **taḥbīs** (pl. taḥbīsāt) 1. endowment, bequest 2. certificate or statement of endowment; bequest note (LC, 28), comp. waqf.

حباك

ḥabk 1. also **taḥbīk** – endbanding (headbanding), endbanding with silk 2. also **ḥabkah** – endband (headband), decorative endband (UK, 154, 157; TS, 18-20; AG, 109; MB, 104 ff.; IA, 62, n.15: **al-kutub al-maḥbūkah**; MM, 132) 3. sewing, stitching (of a book) (TM, 170: shadd awrāqih; DB, III, 2044) 4. spine (TQ, 23).

al-ḥabk al-Rūmī – Graeco-Coptic (Byzantine) endband (headband) (TS, 19; AG, 109).

al-ḥabk al-dālī – trellis-like endband (headband) (TS, 19; AG, 109; PA, 120: of the letter dāl).

al-ḥabk al-shaṭranjī – chessboard-like endband (headband) (TS, 19; AG, 109).

al-ḥabk al-muḍallaʿ – chevron-like endband (headband) (TS, 19; AG, 109).

ḥabakah – bookbinding (IB, 19, n. 478).

ḥabbāk – ornamental sewer; bookbinder (IB, 11; AD, 28).

ḥibākat al-kitāb – raised band (on the spine) (SD, I, 246).

حج

Dhū al-Hijjah (al-sharīfah, al-ḥarām) – the twelfth month of the Muslim calendar, abbrev. ذ (OS, 89).

حجاب

ḥijāb (pl. ḥujub) – talisman, amulet (DT, 69).

حجر

ḥajar baḥrī lil-ḥakk – polishing stone (IA, 60).

ḥajar al-burkān, ḥajar al-qawṣarī, ḥajar al-qushūr – pumice (TS, 12; AG, 107; ST, index, 10; MB, 112: ḥajar al-qayshūr (!); IA, 62).

ḥajar al-jumāhun – burnisher (for gold) (MB, 99; MP, 38; UK, 142: ḥajar al-ḥumāḥim).

ḥajar al-misann – whetstone, hone (TS, 10).

ḥajar al-ṭiḥn – mill stone (OM).

ḥajar al-ʿuṣṣār – stone slab for pressing (OM).

miḥjar, maḥjar (pl. maḥājir) 1. **maḥājir** – letters such as wāw, mīm, fāʾ and ʿayn (TU, 36) 2. counter (‘eye’ of a letter) (KH, 36).

حجازي

(al-khatt) al-Hijāzī – generic name given to a number of very early scripts (1st and early 2nd centuries A.H.) used in the region of Mecca and Medina (hence originally referred to as **al-Makkī** and **al-Madanī**) characterized by elongated ascenders and a slant to the right (AV, 27-33; FN, 8: fa-ammā al-Makkī wa-al-Madanī fa-fī alifātih taʿwīj ilā yamnāt al-yad wa-aʿlā al-aṣābīʿ wa-fī shaklih inḍijāʿ yasīr), comp. Kūfī.

ح

ḥadd, taḥdīd – whetting, honing (of a knife) (KD, II, 711).

ḥadd (pl. ḥudūd) – limit, end; used in the form of its numerical value (١٢) at the end of marginal glosses (RA, 20, 45, 248), comp. tamām.

ḥadd al-qalam – place where the cutting of the nib begins (KU, 154: mabda' maqaṭṭih).

ḥadīd(ah) (pl. ḥadā'id) – iron tool or stamp (for leather work) (ST, 10; MP, 59; TS, 29, 31; AG, 109; MB, 105; IA, 59).

taḥdīd – tooling (of leather) (TF, 138).

mustaḥadd – knife (UA, 393; MJ, 188).

حدر

ḥadr (pl. ḥudūr) – descender (down-stroke, terminal of a letter) (AA, 50), comp. ṣa'd.

حر

ḥarīr – silk (ST, index, 10; AG, 109; DB, IV, 2408; EI, III, 215-227).

taḥrīr 1. elegant writing, copying, transcription (TE, 15; SK, 119) 2. fair copying (TE, 15) 3. composition (GA, 286); revised version (edition); redaction (CM, 13; TE, 15) 4. writing (of a vocalized text) (TE, 16) 5. secretarial style of **shikastah** script, known in Persian as **khaṭṭ-i taḥrīr**, **taḥrīrī** (EI, IV, 1124; ER, IV, 701; TE, 16) 6. outlining of figures and/or letters executed in gold, with black ink (TE, 16; IP, 145; AF, 50, 52; AQ, 246) 7. ornamental surround, frame; outline, contour of letters or illuminated pieces (AF, 38, 48; PA, 58, 64, 214) 8. editing (of a manuscript text).

muḥarrir – 1. author, compiler (SS, 73) 2. penman, calligrapher, e.g. al-Aḥwal al-Muḥarrir al-Babartī (AC, 42; TE, 15-16; MU, XVII, 280: wa-kāna fī awwal amriḥ mu'alliman fa-lammā jāda khaṭṭuh ṣāra muḥarriran; IK, 67: warrāqan kāna aw muḥarriran) 3. editor.

muḥarrar (pl. muḥarrarāt) – piece of calligraphy, calligraph (DP, 53).

حرد

ḥard al-matn see matn.

حرز

ḥirz (pl. aḥrāz, ḥurūz) – talisman, amulet (DT, 69).

حرس

maḥrūsah (‘protected by God’) – epithet of major cities in the Islamic world, e.g. Miṣr al-maḥrūsah, maḥrūsāt Ḥalab and the like (DB, IV, 2430: aw Ḥalab ḥarasahā Allāh).

حرض

miḥraḍah, muḥruḍah – vessel for making potash from ḥurḍ (kali or glasswort) (IR, 230; LL, I, 549).

حرف

ḥarf (pl. ḥiraf) – edge, border; sharp edge (of a knife, cutter).

ḥarf (pl. ḥurūf, aḥruf) 1. letter; word 2. variant reading (varia lectio) in the Qur’ān (DB, IV, 2457), comp. qirā’ah.

ḥarf al-qalam – right-side (of the) half-nib (SA, II, 464: ḥarf al-qalam huwa al-sinn al-‘ulyā wa-hiya al-yumnā; DS, 177: huwa al-sinn al-yumnā al-murtafi’ah).

ḥurūf al-ghubār see al-arqām al-ghubārīyah.

ḥurūf al-hijā’ – letters of the alphabet (EI, III, 596-560).

ḥurūf al-jummal see ḥisāb al-jummal.

al-ḥurūf al-muhmalah see al-muhmalāt.

ḥurūf al-mu’jam see mu’jam.

al-ḥurūf al-mu’jamah see al-mu’jamāt.

al-ḥurūf al-muqaṭṭa’ah see muqaṭṭa’āt.

al-ḥurūf al-murakkabah see tarkīb.

ḥurūf al-zimām see zimām.

tiḥrāf – shaving, trimming (HT, lin.80-86).

taḥrīf 1. oblique nibbing (cutting of the point of the nib) (SA, II, 463; KK, 50: wa-lil-qalam sinnān sinn ayman wa-sinn aysar fa-idhā kāna al-ayman a’lā min al-aysar qīla qalam muḥarraf wa-qad ḥarraf-tuhu taḥrīfan; SK, 50; KD, II, 702: muḥarraf al-sinnayn; LM, 39-42)

2. distortion, error, usually involving either transposition of letters within a word, e.g. شقر / شرق or عمل / علم, or mispronunciation, e.g.

طرة / طغرا (MU, X, 57; MQ, 641: al-taḥrīf bi-al-ziyādah aw bi-al-naqṣ); falsification (of a text), comp. al-qalb al-makānī, taṣḥīf.

al-alif al-muḥarrafah – the letter alif with its tail (foot) tapered slightly to the left (SA, III, 59; MJ, 224).

al-qatṭ al-muḥarraf see qatṭ.

حرق

ḥarq ḥibr see ḥibr.

حرك

ḥarakah (pl. ḥarakāt) – vowel (GL, 8), comp. shakl.

taḥrīk – vocalization, vowelization (DM).

miḥrāk – spatula, stirrer (for an inkwell) (AA, 112-113; KD, II, 704; MB, 65; UA, 393).

حرم

al-Ḥaramān – the two Holy Places, Mecca and Medina.

Muḥarram (al-ḥarām), **al-shahr al-ḥarām** – the first month of the Muslim calendar, abbrev. م (OS, 89).

al-ḥarām – also an epithet of Rajab, Dhū al-Qa'dah and Dhū al-Ḥijjah (q.v.).

حزب

ḥizb (pl. aḥzāb) – the 60th part of the Qur'ān (DM).

حزم

ḥazm, **taḥzīm** – sewing (of quires) (TS, 28; ST, index, 11; ST, 8: ḥazm al-karārīs; MB, 107: khazm).

ḥazzām – sewer of paper into bundles (IB, 11).

حسب

ḥisāb – calculation, computation.

ḥisāb al-jummal (or **ḥurūf al-jummal**) – chronogram, chronosticon (TP, 54; EI, III, 468).

ḥisāb al-ghubār see al-arqām al-ghubārīyah.

al-ḥisāb al-Hindī see al-arqām al-Hindīyah.

حسب

ḥasbalaḥ – the formula ‘ḥasbunā Allāh wa-ni‘ma al-Wakīl’ or ‘ḥasbī Allāh’ (placed usually at the end of a document, composition and/or colophon, abbrev. **ح** with a reversed tail of the descender (?) or what looks like **ح**, see SA, VI, 269-270; EI, II, 302).

حشو

ḥāshiyah (pl. ḥawāshin) 1. edge, turn-in (HT, lin.112; MB, 119; IA, 63) 2. border (on a book cover) (MB, 118; IA, 63; FZ, 217-219; MD, 109) 3. margin (of a page) 4. also **taḥshiyah** – marginal gloss, scholium, apostil; marginalia, often abbreviated as **ح** or **حش**; collection of glosses; supergloss (ḥāshiyat al-ḥāshiyah) (TP, 59; MM, 139; EI, III, 268-269; DB, IV, 1820).

al-ḥāshiyah al-yumná – outer margin.

al-ḥāshiyah al-yusrá – inner margin, gutter.

(qalam) al-ḥawāshī – the smaller version of al-naskh script (NA, IX, 222; AS, 145; JM, 89-90).

ḥashw(ah) 1. decorative panel or geometrical figure (in illumination or book cover decoration) (TS, 30; AG, 110; FT, 412; FI, pl.54, 60, 63, 65, 71) 2. interpolation, parenthesis.

al-ḥashw al-baladī – Mamluk-type decorative panel (DE, 977).

ḥāshin (pl. ḥawāshin), **muḥashshin** – glossator, abbrev. **المح** (MI, 26; CI, II, xi; AD, 34).

taḥshiyah – glossing, gloss (AM, nos.74, 296, 322, 332).

muḥashshá – provided with glosses, glossed.

حصرم

ḥaṣramah – paring, trimming (of a reed) (BA, III, 372: wa-ḥaṣrama al-qalam barāhu; LL, I, 584).

حصل

taḥṣīl – copying, transcription (FK, I, no.89, 546).

حط

ḥaṭṭ – rubbing, smoothing leather (ST, 6; TS, 29, 34), comp. tamḥīṭ.

miḥaṭṭ – wooden tool used for smoothing leather and tooling; burnisher, polisher (KM, I, sifr 4, 110: al-ḥaṭṭ dalk al-adīm bi-al-miḥaṭṭ wa-huwa khashabah yuṣaqqal bi-hā al-adīm wa-yunqash; AG, 107; MB, 118: mikhaṭṭ (!); IA, 60, 63: **al-miḥaṭṭ al-khashab**, often confused with **mikhaṭṭ** (q.v.); IB, 5, n.31).

inḥiṭāṭ – syn. inkhisāf, downward curvature (of a letter, especially of descenders, ‘arāqāt) (see the quotation under mabsūt; KH, 34, 35; RN, 22: **makhsūf** – deeply curved).

حظر

ḥazīrah (pl. ḥazā’ir) 1. surround, frame (SD, I, 302) 2. headpiece (LC, 24).

حفظ

ḥifẓ – learning by heart, memorization (TP, 51).

ḥifāẓ (pl. aḥfīẓah), **miḥfazah** – case, box (KC, 55; NT, II, 142: wa-mimmā ṣuni‘a lil-muṣḥaf al-‘aẓīm al-aṣwinah al-gharībah wa-al-aḥfīẓah al-‘ajībah; ME, 559, 575), comp. ṣiḥwān.

muḥāfazah – conservation, preservation.

حق

ḥuqq(ah) 1. small box (DG, 44) 2. the main part of the inkwell in the dawāh; inkwell (KU, 154: wa-al-ḥuqq mā yuj‘al fīhi al-midād min al-ṣufr aw al-ḥadīd), comp. jūnah.

taḥqīq – establishing the correctness and authenticity of a text; text editing; critical edition (of a text) (MH, 89; MR, 103: idhā waqa‘a fī al-kitāb khaṭa’ wa-ḥaqqaqahu kataba ‘alayhi kadhā).

muḥaqqiq – corrector; editor.

(al-khaṭṭ or qalam) al-muḥaqqaq – 1. ancient bookhand used by the scribes (warrāqūn) of Baghdad, hence also known as **al-‘Irāqī** and **al-warrāqī** (FN, 12, 13) 2. family of scripts characterized by a clear execution of letters (SA, III, 22: fa-ammā al-muḥaqqaq fa-mā ṣaḥḥat ashkālūh wa-ḥurūfuh ‘alā i’tibārihā mufradatan; AS, 144) 3. the principal rectilinear script (used mostly for the copying of the Qur’ān)

characterized by tapered descenders (SA, III, 50: *ṭarīqat al-muḥaqqaq fa-tajrī al-ḥāl fīhi ‘alā al-mīl ilā al-baṣṭ dūna al-taqwīr*; AS, 146; JM, 67-72: **jalīl al-muḥaqqaq**; TU, 106: *wa-alif al-muḥaqqaq laysa fīhā taḥdīb*; LM, 47: *fa-al-muḥaqqaq wa-al-rayḥān lil-maṣāḥif wa-al-ad‘iyah*; LM, 53: *fa-in kunta taktub muḥaqqaqan aw rayḥānan fa-lā ta‘awwij ākhirahu (ay ḥarf al-alif) al-battah*; EI, IV, 1123- in Persia, 1125- in Turkey), comp. *rayḥān*.

al-lām alif al-muḥaqqaqah see *lām alif*.

حك

ḥakk – rubbing out, effacement (TP, 58; MM, 137); erasure, syn. of *bashr* (LF, 78; IR, 237: *wa-al-ḥakk bi-al-rāsakhth (?) wa-al-nushādir wa-al-qily wa-al-kibrīt ‘inda al-māhir*).

miḥakk(ah), miḥakk al-rijl 1. pumice (MB, 112; IA, 62) 2. syn. *mibrad* (q.v.) (DD, I, 392; NH, 381: *wa-al-miḥakkah li-iṣlāḥ ru‘ūs al-jarā’id wa-al-dafātir ka-mibrad*).

حل

al-dhahab al-maḥlūl see *dhahab*.

حلب

qalam al-ḥalbah see *ghubār*.

Ḥalab al-Shahbā’ – Aleppo.

حلزون

ḥalazūn 1. snail (used for the preparation of paste, *ghirā’ al-ḥalazūn*, q.v.) (UK, 141) 2. screw (of the bookbinder’s press) (MB, 104; IA, 59) 3. scroll (in design) (UI, 31).

حلق

ḥalqah (pl. *ḥalaq, ḥalaqāt*) 1. ring (on a book cover, or a lid of the chest, part of a clasp) (BA, III, 372) 2. study circle, scholar’s circle (SL, II, 48; AI, 27).

ḥalqah lawlabīyah, miḥlāq (pl. *maḥālīq*) – tendril (FT, 422; AB, 136, 139).

ḥalqīyah – roundel (FT, 416).

حلى / حلو

ḥilyah, taḥliyah – decoration, embellishment (KT, 150-151).

ḥilyat al-sa‘ādah al-sharīfah, al-ḥilyah al-sharīfah – calligraphic composition containing the ḥadīth describing the physical appearance of the prophet Muḥammad (MC, 204-209).

حمد

ḥamdalah, taḥmīd(ah) – the doxological formula ‘al-ḥamd li-Allāh’ (AD, 38; TP, 53, n.20; EI, III, 122-123).

حمر

ḥumrah 1. red colour, red ink (LC, 24) 2. rubrication, rubrics (CM, 152: tammat al-ḥumrah al-mubārakah; TE, 15; MM, 139: kitābah bi-al-ḥumrah, kitābat al-ḥumrah; TB, 95), also referred to as **ibrāz (izhār, kitābah) bi-al-ḥumrah** (LC, 24; TP, 55).

taḥmīr – rubrication (TE, 15; LC, 24).

ḥimār al-kutub – book support, book cradle (TC, 29).

حمل

maḥmil 1. exemplar; archetype (KM, IV, sifr 13, 4: al-maḥmil al-kitāb al-awwal; ME, 566: al-mu‘tamad) 2. ‘Uthmanic canon, codex (MA, IV, 86) 3. also **miḥmal, maḥmal** – copyist’s book support (ME, 566; TW, 56-57, 169; WA, 12: ‘ūd al-nasākhah; SD, I, 328: ‘pupitre’).

ḥamīlah (pl. ḥamā’il) – talisman, amulet (DT, 69).

taḥammul al-‘ilm – transmission of knowledge (GA, 286; TP, 51).

حنش

taḥnīsh (pl. taḥānīsh) 1. straight or curved line (executed on leather, etc.) (MP, 58; ST, index, 11) 2. rope work; interlace (TF, 138, 143) 3. compass, (pair of) dividers (IB, 44).

حنف

ḥanīfah – inkwell (KD, II, 700).

حنو / حنى

munḥanin – downward (inclined) sloping stroke (from right to left or left to right, as in the isolated dāl) (UD, 11; LM, 49: wa-al-munḥanī wa-al-munkabb fī al-jumlah huwa alladhī yadkhul fīhi al-i‘wijāj min yamnah ilā yasrah).

حور

miḥwar (pl. maḥāwir) 1. spine (of a book) (AB, 140) 2. central panel (on a book cover), as opposed to the border (TF, 138, 144).

maḥār(ah) – oyster shell (for burnishing gold decoration or writing) (KA, 104-105), see also tamḥīr.

taḥwīr – lining books with sheepskin leather, ḥawr (LL, II, 665).

حوط

taḥwīṭah – circular talismanic seal (DT, 109, 149-150).

حوق

taḥwīq – parenthesis (IM, 171; MH, 97, 99; TP, 58: as a means of cancellation; TP, 59: as a means of indicating an addition or omission in a different recension).

حوقل

ḥawqalah, ḥawlaqah – the formula ‘lā ḥawla wa-lā quwwata illā bi-Allāh’, often found at the end of a composition or colophon (MG, I, 483).

حول

ḥā’il, taḥwīl, ḥaylūlah – place separating (separation of) one isnād from another, abbrev. ح (TP, 56).

iḥālah, **‘alāmat al-iḥālah** – reference mark (signe de renvoi) (LC, 24; MI, 35).

خ

خنة

khānah – compartment, panel (in decoration) (UI, 3, 31).

ختم

khatm 1. seal, sealing; stamp, stamping; tool, tooling 2. stamping (of a book cover) (FZ, 214) 3. colophon (TM, 174: wa-ka-dhālik yaf‘al fī khatm al-kitāb aw ākhīr kull juz‘) 4. also **khatmah** – lecture delivered to mark the end of a series of study sessions on a given composition (e.g. Ṣaḥīḥ al-Bukhārī) or subject; work compiled for this occasion (KS).

khatm al-Qur’ān – the final sūrah of the Qur’ān (AD, 43).

khatmah (pl. khatamāt, khitam) – 1. recital of the entire Qur’ān (esp. on festive occasions) 2. complete copy of the Qur’ān (SJ, 370: al-khitam al-mubārakah; MA, IV, 86).

khātim, **khātam** **khātām**, **khītām** (pl. khawātim, khawātīm, khayātīm, KK, 54) 1. seal, signet; seal impression (EI, IV, 1102-1105; OS) 2. talismanic seal (DT, 108) 3. stamp or medallion (on a book cover), e.g. **khātim murabba‘** – lozenge-shaped medallion; **khātim musaddas** – six-pointed medallion (star); **khātim muthamman** – eight-pointed medallion (star) (TS, 29, 34; AG, 109, 110, IA, 63).

al-khātim al-Sulaymānī – Solomon’s seal (cryptographic talisman representing the greatest name of God, al-Ism al-A‘ẓam) (CM, 169; CI, I, 130; DT, 144).

khātimah (pl. khawātim), **ikhtitām** 1. conclusion, epilogue 2. explicit, closing matter (in manuscripts) (TP, 52, n.14) 3. colophon (UI, 5, 8; FT, 396) 4. tailpiece (HD, 108).

خ د

khadd (pl. khudūd) – inner or outer margin (IM, 165: fa-kāna al-takhrīj fī ṭurratayh ṭurar ṣuffifat bi-bīḍ al-khudūd; AA, 67).

خ د ع

takhḍīʿ – rounding, backing (of the spine) (HN, 385).

خ ر ج

takhrīj, ikhrāj 1. also **istikhrāj** (TW, 210) – edition or composition involving correction, selection and/or rearrangement (tabwīb) of the material from the original work (TW, 126-130: mukharraj min al-mubayyaḍah, takhrīj ḥāshiyah min al-mubayyaḍah, kharraja taʿālīq jaddih), comp. tajrīd 2. tracing a ḥadīth back to its original source; explanation and evaluation of the sources of a ḥadīth (MH, 88) 3. omission; insertion, comp. laḥaḡ (TP, 58; TM, 187-188;) 4. writing an omission in the margin (MH, 94: kayfīyat takhrīj al-sāqīṭ fī al-ḥawāshī; MR, 94, 95; IM, 163) 5. marking the place of omission (MF, 606) 6. extract from a book; quotation (TM, 169) 7. copying, transcription (TW, 243: akhrajahu minhu bi-khaṭṭ yadihi mujalladāt kathīrah; KF, II, 333: ghayr mukharraj ilā al-bayād) 8. **takhrīj** – ‘kharraja kitāban – he wrote a book leaving [blank] the places [of the titles] of the sections and chapters’ (LL, I, 718).

takhrījah 1. omission; insertion 2. reference mark (signe de renvoi), also known as ‘**alāmat (khaṭṭ) al-takhrīj**’ (TP, pl.XXIIA: wa-yajʿalu badala al-takhrījah ishāratān bi-al-hindī; TP, 58, n.73: in the form of a curved line, ‘aṭfah, or a caret; KF, I, 222: wa-lā kalimah fī al-ḥāshiyah wa-lā takhrījah) 3. marginal note, comment (AD, 45; LC, 27).

mukharraj, mukhraj – insertion (MH, 95: kharraja al-mukharraj fī al-ḥāshiyah).

mukhraj – discarded leaf of calligraphy (AC, 39).

istikhrāj 1. excerpting; copying (DM) 2. catchword, vox reclamans (MA, IV, 90: fa-yaḥtāj al-ṣānīʿ an yakūn ʿarīfan bi-al-istikhrāj li-yaʿrif bi-dhālik ittiṣāl al-kalām bi-mā baʿdih; NM, 683).

mustakhrij, mukharrij – compiler, selector (DF, II, 384; TW, 126-130).

خرز

kharz – sewing (of leather) (TS, 35; ST, index, 12; MP, 59).

mikhraz, mikhrāz – awl, punch (SA, II, 481; DS, 181).

al-qirāb al-makhrūz see qirāb.

kharzah – glass bead (for burnishing gold or paper) (MB, 99; OM).

خرش

mikhrash – tool resembling a churn-staff (for mixing paper pulp) (OM).

خرط

kharīṭah (pl. kharāṭīṭ) – case, book pouch (for hanging a copy of the Qurʾān on the wall) (TM, 171: kharīṭah dhāt ʿurwah wa-mismār; TB, 93-94).

خرطوش

kharṭūsh(ah) (pl. kharāṭīsh) 1. cartouche (FI, 82; FT, 394) 2. ansa, roundel, palmette (KH, 36), comp. ṭurrah.

خرطوم

khurṭūm (pl. kharāṭīm) – nib (of a calamus) (SA, II, 459), comp. jilfah.

خرق

khirqah (pl. khirāq) 1. cloth (used for doublures and endbanding) (TS, 15, 17, 27; MB, 109) 2. polishing cloth (MB, 114; HT, lin.166); eraser (cloth) (DM) 3. scrap (of paper) (DM).

خرم

kharm 1. sewing (of quires) (UK, 154, 157; MB, 104; IA, 60; SA, II, 481) 2. undoing the sewing (ST, index, 12; MP, 59) 3. gap, blank, lacuna (SJ, 347, 354: wa-fīhi kharm wa-taqṭī wa ḥarq ḥibr; MI, 76: al-kharm al-saqṭ fī al-makḥṭūṭāt).

khurūm – loose leaves from a disbound codex, fragments (HB, 233: feuillets décousus, en vrac; TC, 26).

makhrūm, munkharim – imperfect, incomplete (TC, 26; KF, II, 526: makhrūm al-awwal, makhrūm al-ākhir).

makhārīm, makhrūmāt – incomplete, imperfect manuscripts (volumes) (KF, II, 527).

خرمش

kharmashah – uneven lineation (KM, IV, sifr 13, 7: wa-al-kharma-shah ifsād al-suṭūr wa-al-kitāb wa-naḥwih).

خز

khazz (pl. khuzūz) – silk; cloth made of silk and wool (TS, 27; AG, 107; AD, 46).

خزم

takhzīm – sewing (of quires) (TS, 14-15; AG, 107), comp. kharm and ḥazm.

makhzūmah – document written on ‘a sheet of paper folded twice vertically in the middle so as to form four narrow pages, each page is divided into two parts divided by a fold’ (DR, 119).

خزن

khizānah, khizānat al-kutub – bookcase; library, comp. maktabah.

خسف

inkhisāf see inḥiṭāṭ.

خصر

mukhtaṣar 1. concise composition, comp. mabsūṭ 2. abridgement, epitome (EI, VII, 536-540; EA, I, 23-24) 3. abbreviation (contraction, suspension, siglum, TP, 55-56. For various abbreviations used in manuscripts see CI, II, xiii-xiv, 159-160; GL, 25-26).

al-sharḥ al-mukhtaṣar see sharḥ.



khaṭṭ (pl. khuṭūṭ) 1. mark, sign; stroke, line (for various technical terms connected with the shapes of letters and strokes see KH, 34-38) 2. writing, handwriting; script, calligraphy, penmanship (ML, 52: i'lam anna al-khaṭṭ huwa šuwar tatashakkal fī al-'aql tashakkulan kullīyan wa-al-yad tukharrij tilka al-šuwar bi-wāsiṭat al-qalam bi-qadr quwwat al-yad wa-kathrat idmānihā wa-līn a'šābihā).

al-khaṭṭ al-Fāsī – numerical system of Graeco-Coptic origin, also known as **al-qalam al-Fāsī** or **al-qalam al-Rūmī**, used in Maghrebi manuscripts for the purpose of dating and in the law of inheritance (AK, 358).

al-khaṭṭ al-mu'jam – pointed letters, script (text) see also 'ajam.

al-khaṭṭ al-mansūb (also **al-kitābah al-mansūbah**, LM, 29) – proportionate writing or scripts, which according to the Arabic tradition, use the principle of 'tanāsub' elaborated by Ibn Muqlah (SA, III, 41; EI, III, 887; ER, IV, 681), comp. al-aqlām al-sittah.

al-khaṭṭ al-mushakkal – vocalized script (text), scriptio plena, as opposed to unvocalized (ghayr mushakkal), scriptio defectiva.

bi-khaṭṭ – in the hand(writing) of, copied by (e.g. CI, I, 83, 103), comp. yad.

khuṭūṭ al-kuttāb – chancery (secretarial) scripts (KU, 114; AS, 144).

khuṭūṭ al-mašāhif – Qur'ānic scripts; book hands used principally for the transcription of the Qur'ān (FN, 9; KU, 114; RN, 17; AS, 144).

khuṭūṭ al-warrāqīn – book hands associated with the copying of texts other than the Qur'ān itself (KU, 114; AS, 144).

khaṭṭāt – calligrapher, penman, comp. muḥarrir, kātib.

khaṭṭāṭīyah – female calligrapher (SD, I, 380).

khiṭāṭah – writing; paleography (KJ, no.1, 26); calligraphy (WR, 80).

makhṭūṭ (pl. makhṭūṭāt) 1. handwritten 2. also **makhṭūṭah** – manuscript, manuscript codex.

mikhaṭṭ 1. implement (made of wood, bone or iron) in the shape of a gendarme's hat used for tracing lines on leather (ST, index, 12); tracer (ME, 555; LL, I, 760; MB, 110, 118; IA, 60, 61) 2. reed pen, calamus (AA, 98, 103; UA, 393: wa-qalam al-ṭarḥ yusammūn miḥṭṭ!).

mikhṭāt – wooden ruler, straightedge (LL, I, 760).

takhṭīṭ 1. tracing, drawing (MB, 110) 2. ruling (of lines); writing,

calligraphy (KM, IV, sifr 13, 4: al-takḥṭīṭ al-tasṭīr; WR, 80; LF, 81, n.1).

خطب

khiṭāb (pl. akḥṭibah) 1. letter, note; address, speech 2. honorific (e.g. Fakhr al-Dīn, Shihāb al-Dīn) 3. also **khuṭbah** – exordium, preface (LC, 25; TP, 53, n.20).

faṣl al-khiṭāb see faṣl.

خف

khafīf (lit, ‘light’) – smaller variety (version) of a script (e.g. al-thuluth al-khafīf, khafīf al-muḥaqqaq) (AS, 145).

mukhaffaf – letter without doubling (shaddah), abbrev. خف (often unpointed) (GL, 14).

al-lām alif al-mukhaffafah see lām alif.

خفض

takhfīḍ – shaving, trimming (TS, 18; AG, 109).

خند

khālīdī – oval or round-shaped tool (UK, 156; MB, 105; IA, 59; IB, 44: ornament).

خلص

khulāṣah – excerpt, extract; abridgement, epitome, comp. mukhtaṣar.

takhalluṣ – pseudonym; pen-name (nom de plume) (EI, X, 123).

خلف

khilāf (pl. khilāfāt), **ikhṭilāf** – variant reading, varia lectio (e.g. ikḥṭilāf al-riwāyah, ikḥṭilāf al-nuskhah, MH, 95; MU, XI, 46; XII, 273; XVII, 52; TP, 58).

خمسة

khamṣ (pl. akhmās), **khāmīṣah** (pl. khawāmis) – mark in the shape of a circle, disc or floret separating a group of 5 verses (āyah) of the Qurʾān (MS, 15).

al-khamṣah al-ghubārīyah – the number 5 written in the ghubār notation (٧) to mark the middle folio of a quire (ST, 9).

takhmīs 1. marking a group of 5 verses of the Qurʾān; the mark itself (MD, 126; thumma raʾaynā baʿda kull khamṣ āyāt anna al-dāʾirah tataḍamman raʾs ḥarf al-khāʾ badalan min al-sharṭ wa-aṣbaḥat tusammā bi-al-takhmīsāt) 2. (pl. takhāmīs) – pentastich amplification of a poem, pentameter (SD, I, 405; AD, 50; EI, X, 123-125).

makhmūs – pentagonal element in a Mamluk book cover design (JL, 95, 97).

خوصة

khūṣah – fillet (in decoration) (FT, 401).

خير

al-khayr – epithet of the month of Ṣafar (q.v.).

ikhtiyār, mukhtār 1. selected passage 2. (pl. ikhtiyārāt, mukhtārāt) – anthology (EA, I, 94-95).

خيط

khayṭ (pl. khuyūt) – thread (ST, index, 12).

al-khayṭ al-tashbīk – thread for preliminary endbanding (headbanding), i.e. endbanding without silk (TS, 19; AG, 109).

khiyāṭah – sewing (of quires) (ST, index, 12; MB, 107-108).

mikhyāṭ, mikhyāt – large, thick needle (ST, index, 12; IB, 43; IR, 230; DS, 181: huwa mā yukhāṭ bi-hi al-waraq ʿinda al-ḥājah ilā dhālik; NH, 381).

د

دأدا

al-daʿādī (pl. of duʿduʿ) – the last three nights of the month (SA, VI, 250).

دبج

dībāj (pl. dabābīj) – silk brocade (MU, XIV, 84: mubaṭṭan bi-dībāj).

dībājah 1. preface, exordium, embracing the matter before and after al-baʿdīyah (q.v.) (LC, 23) 2. headpiece; frontispiece (MD, 127; PA, 65, 115).

ṣafḥat al-dībājah see ṣafḥah.

tadbīj 1. adorning something with arabesques; creating headpieces (AD, 52; TW, 259) 2. composition (of a text) (DM).

دبر

tadabbur – consideration, reflection; **fa-tadabbar(hu)** – syn. of fa-taʿammal(hu) (q.v.).

دبغ

dibāgh(ah) – tanning (MB, 114-115; IA, 63; MP, 60).

dabbāgh – tanner (QS, I, 140-143; EI, suppl., fasc.3-4, 172).

دخن

dukhān – soot, smut (one of the ingredients of ink, midād) (UK, 80; IR, 236: ṣifāt ikhrāj al-dukhān).

al-ḥibr al-dukhānī see ḥibr.

درج

darj, dirj (WS, 87) (pl. durūj, adrāj) 1. rolled up or folded sheet of papyrus, parchment or paper (AJ, 138, 141; LL, I, 868: also **daraj**; IK, 68: al-adrāj al-ʿarīḍah) 2. roll, rotulus (IK, 68; SA, I, 138: al-

murād bi-al-darj fī al-ʿurf al-ʿāmm al-waraq al-mustaṭīl al-murakkab min ʿiddat awṣāl; WS, 89; IA, 63, n.18;).

mudraj(ah) (pl. madārij) 1. syn. darj (FN, 61; AJ, 120, 152: ṣuḥuf mudrajah) 2. bifolio (bifolium) (AJ, 142) 3. inset (SD, I, 432).

درس

tadrīs – explication (of a reading) (GA, 287).

درفش

dirafsh – awl, punch (IA, 60).

درمك

darmak – farina; paste (used for work with parchment) (TS, 13; AG, 107).

دست

dast(ah) (pl. dusūt) 1. quire (Fr. main de papier), usually consisting of 25 sheets (AJ, 145; AB, 92; MA, IV, 81; PT, 39; WS, 92, 94, 96; SD, I, 524) 2. stack of 5 folded sheets of paper (5 bifolia) (OM), comp. rizmah, kaff 3. wide polisher, burnisher (UK, 156; MB, 105; IA, 59; IB, 44).

دستور

dustūr (pl. dasātīr) 1. holograph in the form of a draft or notes (FN, 113: irtijālān min ghayr kitāb wa-lā dustūr; FN, 416: wa-raʾaytu bi-khaṭṭih shayʿan kathīran fī ʿulūm kathīrah musawwadāt wa-dasātīr lam yukhraj minhā ilā al-nās kitāb tāmm; KF, II, 332, 363) 2. author's original, holograph (LC, 23) 3. also **al-nuskhah al-dustūr** – archetype (AL, I, 29: al-aṣl al-waḥīd alladhī taʿūd ilayhi ākhir al-amr kull al-nusakh al-khaṭṭīyah).

دشت

dasht – loose leaves; unbound book, book consisting of loose leaves (KF, II, 357: mustakhraj min dasht al-Muʾayyad; HB, 233: 'feuillet en vrac').

دعو

du‘ā (pl. ad‘iyah) 1. supplication, pious invocation, ‘prayer of request’ (EI, II, 617-618) 2. formula of benediction, such as ‘raḥima-hu Allāh, raḍiya Allāh ‘anhu, ‘alayhi al-salām’, etc. (see e.g. TP, 54; AA, 150-156).

دغم

idghām – assimilation, contraction (of letters, such as rā’, sīn, mīm, nūn, hā’), hence **mudgham** – contracted, assimilated (KU, 123-124: wa-i‘lam anna aṣl kull khaṭṭ wa-‘amūdah al-faṭḥ dūna al-ta‘miyah fa-al-tabyīn wa-al-tawqīm dūna al-idghām wa-al-ta‘wīr; SA, III, 89; KH, 35).

دف

daffah (pl. difaf, daffāt) 1. wooden board 2. pressing board (in the screw press) (MB, 104) 3. book cover, pasteboard (ST, index, 13; ST, 5: al-alwāḥ min al-kāghaṭ alladhīna yaksūnahum bi-al-jild ‘alā al-kitāb; MB, passim).

al-daffah al-ūlā (ST, index, 13), also **al-daffah al-yumnā** (al-‘ulyā) – upper cover.

al-daffah al-thāniyah (ST, index, 13), also **al-daffah al-yusrā** (al-suflā) – lower cover.

دفتر

daftar (Gr. diphtera) (pl. dafātir), **taftar** (SK, 108, 321; KK, 57) – booklet (consisting of a number of bifolia or diplomas); notebook (e.g. *Daftar kutub*, 14 leaves, 40 x 14 cm., see LS) 2. bound or unbound codex ; volume (IK, 96: al-daftar fa-yuwaqqi‘ūnahu ‘alā mā jullida wa-‘alā mā lam yujallad; FK, I, nos.108, 662, 1096) 3. account book, register (EI, II, 77-81; SL, I, 4, 22-25, 29, 48; IA, 63, n.18) 3. pen wiper (SA, II, 481).

دق

daqq 1. rubbing, pounding (MP, 60) 2. beating (of the pulp) (OM) **tadqīq** – compact, fine writing (TM, 192).

د قماق

duqmāq – small mallet (OM).

د لك

dalk, **tadlīk** – polishing, burnishing; glazing (ST, index, 13; MB, 118; HT, lin.163; KM, I, sifr 4, 110; NH, 363: glazing of paper with a wooden ball; OH, 139).

midlak – polisher, burnisher (for doublures) (TS, 11; AG, 107).

د لو

dallāyah – pendant (FZ, 217; FJ, 48-50; KR, 85, 87).

al-ḥabk al-dālī see ḥabk.

د مغ

damghah (sometimes **tamghah**) – ownership stamp (LC, 23; SD, I, 461).

waraq damghah see waraq.

د هن

duhn (pl. adhān, duhūn) – fat, grease; oil.

midhan, **mudhun** – container for oil (IR, 230: LL, I, 927).

د ور

Dār al-Fath – Constantinople.

Dār al-Hijrah – Medina.

Dār al-‘Ibādah – Yazd.

Dār al-Irshād – Ardabīl.

Dār al-Khilāfah – Baghdad, Tehran, Shāhjahānābād.

Dār al-Sa‘ādah – Constantinople.

Dār al-Saltānah – Constantinople, Herat, Tabriz, Isfahan.

Dār al-Salām – Baghdad.

Dār al-Surūr – Burhānpūr (for other epithets of towns see ER, I, 905-906).

dārah, dā'irah (pl. dawā'ir) 1. circular motif (used as a textual divider, paragraph mark, fāṣilah) (MR, 93: yaj'al bayna kull ḥadīthayn dārah, fa'ala dhālika jamā'at min al-mutaqaddimīn wa-istaḥabba al-Khaṭīb an takūn ghuḥḥan; JA, I, 272; TP, 55) 2. circular motif (used as a collation mark) (TP, 56; JA, I, 273: fa-istaḥabba an takūn al-dārāt ghuḥḥan fa-idhā 'ūriḍa bi-kull ḥadīth naqaṭa fī al-dārah allatī talīhi nuqṭah aw khaṭṭ fī wasaṭihā khaṭṭan) 3. circular motif representing the letter hā' (for intahā or intihā') and its numerical value, i.e. (5) 4. circular mark indicating the end of a gloss (TP, 59) 5. round motif in textual or book cover decoration, e.g. roundel, medallion, disc (UK, 156; TS, 30; MB, 105; UD, 13: al-dawā'ir al-bīkāriyah – circles drawn with a compass).

tadwīr 1. straight, even (as opposed to oblique, taḥrīf) nibbing (of a calamus) (UD, 9, 10; LM, 39-40) 2. rounding (of the spine) (IA, 61) 3. also **istidārah** – rounding (of letters) (KH, 35), hence **mustadīr** – round, curvilinear (e.g. RN, 22; LM, 49: wa-al-mustadīr huwa alladhī lā yumkin an yufraḍ 'alayhi thalāth nuqaṭ 'alā samt wāḥid ka-dawr al-ḥā' wa-al-'ayn).

دون

dīwān (pl. dawāwīn) 1. collection (of records or sheets); register; account book; office, chancellery (KM, IV, sifr 13, 8: al-dīwān majma' al-ṣuḥuf; EI, II, 323; SA, I, 90) 2. book (collection) of prose or poetry (FK, I, 129; EI, II, 323); collection of poems written by one author (DM).

tadwīn 1. collecting (collection), writing down (of ḥadīth) (EI, X, 81; TP, 51), comp. taqyīd 2. writing, composition (CM, no.80; TE, 15) 3. copying, transcription (LC, 28; TE, 15; UI, 8: al-nusakh al-mudawwanah bi-khaṭṭ al-tadwīn al-'ādī).

(al-khaṭṭ or khaṭṭ) **al-dīwānī** – Ottoman chancery hand having a much more pronounced tarwīs (q.v.) than the Persian ta'līq (q.v.) from which it is derived (EI, IV, 1125-6).

دوی

dawāh (pl. dawayāt, duwīy, dawāyā, dawan) 1. inkwell (IK, 82-85; KU, 154: wa-fī al-dawāh majrāhā wa-jūbatuhā wa-ḥuqquhā wa-ṭabaquhā; TW, 52-56, 169-170; BA, III, 370) 2. escritoire, writing case (containing among other things compartments for ink and pens,

ruler, wiper and sand) (SA, II, 440-443; ND, 54; UK, 77; MB, 65; AT, 132-133; EI, suppl. fasc.3-4, 203-204; ER, VII, 137-139).

dawwāʾ, **dawāʿī** – maker of inkwells or writing cases (KD, II, 713; DG, 73).

ذ

ذأب

dhuʾābah (pl. dhawāʿib) 1. leather thong attached to a ḥalqah (q.v.) in ‘boxed books’ (BA, III, 372) 2. descender (of a letter) (AA, 53).

ذبر

dhabr, **midhbar** see mizbar.

ذكر

tadhkirah 1. memorandum, aide-mémoire (EI, X, 53) 2. commonplace book (often of oblong format, safīnah) (HB, 234; EI, X, 53).

ذنب

dhanab (pl. adhnāb) – tail (foot) of a letter, ḥarf (SA, III, 24; UD, 21).

tadhnīb – appendix, supplement (AD, 59).

ذهب

dhahab, **māʾ al-dhahab** – gold ink, paint (MU, V, 226; UK, 130-132; MB, 89-91; SA, II, 477; LC, 25; LL, I, 983: ‘water-gold, gold powder mixed with size for ornamental writing, etc.’).

al-dhahab al-maḥlūl – liquid gold (ST, index, 13).

al-dhahab al-mashūq – gold powder (QS, I, 151).

(qalam) al-dhahab – script written in gold ink in the form of al-

thuluth or al-tawqīʿ with its letters outlined in a colour other than gold (NA, IX, 222; AS, 145).

tadhhīb 1. gilding; writing with liquid gold, chrysography (LC, 27; TE, 15; KA, 104-105: **al-tadhhīb al-muṭṭā** = matt, **al-tadhhīb al-lammaʿ** = brilliant, glossy, glazed) 2. (pl. tadhāhib) gilt object (SD, I, 490).

tadhhīb maṭrūq – gold tooling (HN, 385).

mudhahhib – gilder; chrysographer (AB, 132; PA, 141).

idhhāb – chrysography (SJ, 27; MU, XV, 120: ṣāhib al-khaṭṭ al-malīḥ wa-al-idhhāb al-fāʿiq; TE, 15).

ذيل

dhayl (pl. dhuyūl) 1. tail or foot (of a book or page) 2. supplement, appendix.

dhayl al-jāmah see jāmah.

dhayl al-kitāb – tail (of the book) (LC, 23).

dhayl al-waraqah – foot of the page, lower margin.

dhaylah – ‘tail of the text’ colophon (TW, 206).

al-taʾrīkh al-mudhayyal see taʾrīkh.

ر

رأس

raʾs (pl. ruʾūs) 1. head (of a letter, i.e. character, page or book, e.g. **raʾs al-waraqah**, **raʾs al-ṣafḥah**, **raʾs al-kitāb**); upper margin (TS, 14; SA, III, 24; LC, 26) 2. fore-edge of the codex, as opposed to the spine (MB, 108, 109; IA, 61) 3. envelope flap (MB, 107, 113: al-sāqiṭ wa-huwa al-raʾs; IA, 62) 4. beginning of something, e.g. **ruʾūs al-suṭūr**, **ruʾūs al-ḥurūf** (MM, 136; TM, 172).

raʾs al-fiqrah or **raʾs al-kalām** – chapter heading or subheading (LC, 26).

raʾs al-kaʿb – endband (headband) (MB, 109).

raʾs al-lawḥah – headpiece, frontispiece (LC, 26).

(qalam) al-riʾāsī, sometimes **al-riyāsī** or **al-riyāshī** (!) 1. one of the early scripts apparently associated with the vizier Dhū al-Riʾāsatayn

al-Faḍl ibn Sahl (d.202/817-8) (FN, 12, 13) 2. script akin to a large naskh, but having a left-sloping tarwīs as one of its characteristics (AS, 146; HI, 84; JM, 83-84; TU, 42: fa-inna qalam al-riyāshī yamīl ilā al-muḥaqqaq wa-al-naskh wa-laysa fīhi insikhāf wa-lā inḥiṭāṭ wa-huwa murawwas jamī'uh).

tarwīs 1. execution of the head of a letter (the manner of drawing it) 2. also **tarwīsah** (see AQ and MO below) – barbed letter-head or serif-like downward stroke (either right-sloping or left-sloping) on the head of such letters as alif, bā', jīm, dāl, rā', ṭā', kāf and lām (SA, III, 46: thumma qad dhakara ahl al-ṣinā'ah anna tarwīs al-alif ka-sub'ih wa-dhahaba Yāqūt ilā al-ziyādah 'alā dhālik; IR, 241-242; KH, 35; RN, 33; AS, 144; AQ, 100, 126, 226, 236; MO, 30, 100).

رِبْط

rābiṭ (pl. rawābiṭ) – fore-edge flap (FJ, 37; FZ, 213, 215).

rābiṭah – catchword, vox reclamans (NZ, 65).

رَبْع

(qaṭ' or qālib) **al-rub'**, **rubā'ī** see qaṭ' and qālib.

rub' al-jāmah see jāmah.

rub' al-turunjah see turunjah.

Rabī' al-Awwal (al-sharīf) – the third month in the Muslim calendar, abbrev. ر / ا / ع / ا (OS, 89; CM, 39/2: **Rabī' al-Mawlūd**).

Rabī' al-Thānī, Rabī' al-Ākhir (al-mubārak) – the fourth month in the Muslim calendar, abbrev. ر / ع / ا (OS, 89).

rab'ah (pl. raba'āt) 1. square chest, box for copies of the Qur'ān, divided into compartments, buyūt (SD, I, 503) 2. copy of one part (juz') of the Qur'ān (TS, 25, 39) 3. multi-volume Qur'ān, **al-rab'ah al-sharīfah** (SJ, nos.21, 48, 51; MS, 15: inna al-murād bi-al-rab'ah ṣundūq murabba' al-shakl min khashab mughashshā bi-al-jild dhū ṣafā'iḥ wa-ḥalaq yuqsam dākhiluh buyūtan bi-'adad ajzā' al-muṣḥaf yuj'al fī kull bayt minhu juz' min al-muṣḥaf wa-iṭlāquhā 'alā al-muṣḥaf majāzan; HI, 94; SD, I, 503; CA, 49).

mirba'ah – small tool resembling a piece of wood used for lifting; stalk (?) (TS, 11; AG, 109).

tarbī' – square (an instrument) (HT, lin.128).

al-ka'b al-murabba' see ka'b.

رتب

tartīb 1. arrangement (of the text); composition (MU, I, 50, 51: wa-ja'altu al-tartīb 'alá ḥurūf al-mu'jam; AM, no.170) 2. the expression 'rattabtuhu(hā)' used in a preface (khuṭbah) and indicating the chapter arrangement of the composition in question (TP, 53, n.20).

murattīb – author, compiler (DF, II, 384; SS, 72), comp. mubawwib.

رتم

ratm – close, compact writing, copying (KM, IV, sifr 13, 5: ratamtu al-kitāb qarrabtu bayna suṭūrih).

رجب

Rajab (al-murajjab, al-ḥarām, al-aṣamm, al-aṣabb, al-fard) – the seventh month of the Muslim calendar, abbrev. ر / ب (OS, 89).

رجز

urjūzah – poem composed in rajaz metre in which one and the same rhyme is obligatory; didactic poem (EI, VIII, 376).

رجع

raj' (pl. arjā') – reference mark (signe de renvoi), often in the shape of an upward rising stroke or the abbreviation ر (MI, 35, 145; AR, 35: ر 'alāmat al-raj' ilā al-hāmish; IN, I, 252), comp. SD, I, 513: 'barrage, barrière qui ferme une rivière'.

rujū' – reference, source (in a text) (IN, I, 252).

rāji' (pl. rawājī') – strip of leather for lining the spine (TS, 28; AG, 109), comp. mu'allaqah.

al-yā' al-rāji'ah – the letter yā' with its tail (foot) pointing to the right (SA, III, 99; MJ, 239: not allowed in al-muḥaqqaq).

tarjī' 1. retouching, retouchage (of a letter); writing in bold characters (TE, 17) 2. polychrome illumination (TE, 17; KM, IV, sifr 13, 5: al-tarjī' washy al-kitāb) 3. also **istirjā'** – formula 'innā li-Allāh wa-innā ilayhi rāji'ūn', used at the end of a conclusion, epilogue (AD, 62).

marji' – envelope flap (ST, index, 13; ST, 13: yusammá al-lisān; IB, 81, n.185).

al-marji' al-aṣghar – fore-edge flap (ST, index, 13).

al-marji' al-akbar – envelope flap (ST, index, 13).

رحل

raḥl(ah) – book cradle, book support (MD, 137; RI, 31: MD, 132: al-raḥlah aw kursī al-muṣḥaf min lawḥayn min al-khashab mutadākhi-layn bi-ṭarīqat al-ta'shīq min al-wasaṭ ka-annahumā kaffān qad shabakat aṣābī'uhā; AD, 62: 'pupitre pour le Coran').

رحم

tarḥīm, tarahḥum – the formula of benediction, requiescat (used after the name of a deceased person) 'raḥimahu Allāh, raḥmat Allāh 'alayhi, taghammadahu Allāh bi-raḥmatih', abbrev. ره / رحه / رم (the *rā'* and *hā'* in manuscripts of Persian and Indian provenance often resemble a long horizontal line with a loop at its end, comp. numrah) (TP, 54; VA, nos. 294, 419, 584, 1223, 1038, 1055, 1062, 1035, 2152, 3099, 3185).

رخم

rukḥām(ah), also **lawḥ al-rukḥām** – marble, marble slab (MB, 103; IA, 59; TS, 11; AG, 107; ST, 10, 14; OM).

رد

raddah – envelope flap (TM, 172: al-qit'ah al-rā'idah min al-jild fawqa al-daffah al-yusrá; TP, pl. XXIB).

ردأ

radā'at al-khaṭṭ – inelegance (poorness) of handwriting, similarly **al-khaṭṭ al-radī'** – bad, inelegant hand (FN, 16: wa qīla radā'at al-khaṭṭ zamānat al-adab wa-qīla al-khaṭṭ al-radī' jadb al-adab).

رزم

rizmah (pl. rizam) 1. ream (of paper), consisting of five quires, dast (q.v.) (PT, 39; AB, 92; AJ, 145; WS, 96: wa-al-dast khams wa-‘ishrūn waraqah wa-al-rizmah khamsat dusūt; SD, I, 524), comp. dast 2. also **ruzmah** – booklet (SD, I, 524: ‘cahier’).

رسل

risālah 1. letter, epistle 2. tract, treatise; monograph (EI, VIII, 532). **irsāl(ah)** – final stroke, extension of the tails of such letters as sīn, rā’, ḥā’, mīm, nūn, yā’ ‘ayn, qāf, šād, wāw, hā’ without an upward curvature (KH, 35: huwa iṭlāq al-‘arāqah min ghayr taqwīs; SA, III, 36: wa-kull irsālah yajib an takūn bi-sinn al-qalam al-yumnā; LM, 72: fa-yajib an yakūn qadruhā mithl sub‘ alif khaṭṭihā). **tarassul** – art of letter writing, epistolography (DM).

رسم

rasm 1. marking, making a mark (ST, index, 14) 2. writing, execution; copying, e.g. rasm al-muṣḥaf, rasm al-tasmiyah (DP, 45) 3. drawing, designing, sketching (ME, 561; MB, 100, 101; PA, 100; EI, VIII, 451-453) 4. (pl. rusūm) – stroke, line (traced with a pen) (SD, I, 527) 5. unpointed letter or word (NO, 15) 6. letter or word in a dictionary (SD, I, 527) 7. chapter (in a composition) (SD, I, 527), comp. faṣl.

rasm al-ghubār – see raqm.

bi-rasm see mustanad.

miṣṭarat al-rasm see miṣṭarah.

rāsīm, rassām – draftsman, designer, painter (ME, 560; SD, I, 528).

rawsam (pl. rawāsīm) – woodcut, wood block (AB, 137).

رش

rashshāsh – reed pen, calamus (BA, III, 370).

رشم

rashm, tarshīm 1. marking (syn. rasm) (ST, index, 14) 2. tooling (HT, lin.129, 164) 3. decorating centers of book covers with medallions (ST, index, 14).

rashmah 1. mark (TS, 18) 2. ream (of paper) (SD, I, 532), comp. rizmah.

marshim, marsham (pl. marāshim) 1. small bookbinder's tool (HT, lin. 125) 2. hot iron (SD, I, 532).

رصع

raṣṭ'ah – central medallion (on a book cover) (AB, 135).

tarṣīf 1. illumination, decoration (MS, 28: wa-qad raṣṣa'tu hawāmish al-kitābah bi-tarājim akbar) 2. illumination (in gold and saffron) (IP, 145; TE, 17) 3. decoration (with liquid gold); covering the entire surface with liquid gold (HD, 103, 126); gilding the inside of the surround (outline), taḥrīr (q.v.) (AF, 48).

رصف

raṣf, tarṣīf 1. joining letters together (AP, 79; SA, III, 140; KH, 35) 2. writing, composition (NS, 184: faraghtu min ta'līfih wa-raṣfih wa-taṣnīfih; QF, 65: faraghtu min tarṣīf hādhā al-Ḥiṣn al-ḥaṣīn).

رضى

tarḍiyah, taraddīn – the formula of benediction 'raḍiya Allāh 'anhu' or 'riḍwān Allāh 'alayhi', used for the companions of the Prophet, abbrev. رة / رض / رضه (TP, 54; SL, II, 89; AR, 34, 35; MI, 125).

رطب

tarṭīb – rounding (of letters) (UD, 15; KH, 35: al-tarṭīb hiya shaddat al-istidārah), comp. taqwīr.

al-aqlām al-muraṭṭabah (or **al-raṭbah**, ant. of yābis) – curvilinear scripts, such as the thuluth, tawqī' and riqā' (UD, 14, 15, 16, 19; AS, 144).

رعى

istir'ā'iyah – note, statement (LC, 24).

رفع

rafʿ – gouge-like tool (HT, lin.133, 137).

mirfaʿ 1. book support, book cradle (IN, I, 230, 231; ND, 44, n.11; KK, 70) 2. support (for an inkwell) (AA, 111-112).

رق

raqq, riqq (pl. ruqūq) 1. thin leather, parchment (SA, II, 484-485; IW, 74-75; AE, 108-111; WS, 60-63; KJ, no.1, 42: al-raqq al-azraq, al-raqq al-aḥmar; EI, VIII, 407-410; EP) 2. parchment leaf (ND, 53, n.67).

raqq ghazāl see jild.

raqq manshūr – ‘unfolded parchment’ (EI, VIII, 407).

raqqāq, ruqūqī – parchment maker, parchmener (DG, 85).

رقش

raqsh, tarqīsh 1. elegant, embellished writing, copying (TE, 17; AA, 105; SK, 119; KK, 53; KM, IV, sifr 13, 5: al-tarqīsh al-kitābah wa-al-taṣṭīr fī al-ṣuḥuf) 2. vocalization by means of points; diacritical pointing (TE, 17; IK, 93; LL, I, 1135) 3. making something multi-coloured (LL, I, 1135) 4. arabesque decoration (KA, 105; KR, 86: **al-raqsh al-ʿArabī**).

raqshah – pointing, diacritical point (JA, I, 269).

mirqash – reed pen, calamus (IR, 230).

رقص

raqqāṣ – catchword, vox reclamans (NM, 683; AK, 353).

رفع

ruqʿah (pl. riqāʿ) 1. piece (slip) of leather, paper or other writing surface (MU, I, 133: wa-kuntu aʿriḍ ʿalayhi kull yawm riqāʿan fayuwaqqiʿu lī fihā) 2. letter, brief message, note.

(**khatt**) **al-ruqʿah** (Turk. rikʿa) – script developed most probably in the 2nd half of the 12/18th cent. on the basis of dīwānī (q.v.) and used commonly by the Arabs in correspondence and occasionally as a book hand (EI, IV, 1126).

(qalam) al-riqāʿ – smaller version of tawqīʿ (q.v.) script (AS, 146; JM, 78-82; LM, 47: wa-al-riqāʿ lil-tawāqīʿ al-ṣighār wa-al-murāsālāt; EI, IV, 1123- in Persia, 1125- in Turkey).

ruqayʿah – slip of paper (used for glosses and inserted in between the leaves of the codex, often sewn in); inset (MK, 86).

tarqīʿ (pl. tarāqīʿ) – repair, patchwork.

muraqqaʿ – album of paintings, drawings and/or calligraphy (consisting of a number of pieces joined together and forming a book-accordeon) (AC, passim; MN, 139; EI, VII, 602-603).

رقم

raqm 1. writing (KM, IV, sifr 13, 5: al-raqm al-khaṭṭ fī al-kitāb) 2. also **tarqīm** – elegant writing, copying (TE, 17) 3. (pl. ruqūm) – piece of calligraphy, calligraph (AC, 41; DP, 54; NI, 180: al-ijāzah al-mubārakah li-kātib hādhā al-raqm; AW, 266) 4. diacritical pointing (of letters) (IK, 93: raqqamtuhu tarqīman) 5. (pl. arqām), also **tarqīm** – numbering; number, numeral 6. (pl. ruqūm) – abbreviation, siglum (CL, fasc. 2, 141, 160).

al-arqām al-Hindīyah, also known as **al-ḥisāb al-Hindī** or **ḥisāb al-Hind** – Hindu-Arabic numerical system used in the Mashriq (AN, 383; GA, 183).

al-arqām al-ghubārīyah, also known as **ḥisab** (or **ḥurūf, rasm) al-ghubār** – numerical system (also known as ‘dust’ or Toledan numerals) used in the Maghreb (EI, III, 468-9: AN, 387-388; GA, 183; KJ, no.3, 30).

rāqīm, muraqqīm – calligrapher, copyist (AC, 45; TE, 17; AW, 244; AM, no.76).

raqīm – inkwell (KM, IV, sifr 13, 5; IK, 82; SK, 106).

arqam, mirqam – reed pen, calamus (TE, 17; IR, 230; BA, III, 372; LL, I, 1140).

tarqīm – punctuation (AH, 147, 154).

tarqīm al-ṣafaḥāt – pagination.

tarqīm al-waraqāt – foliation.

رقن

raqn – compact writing (KM, IV, sifr 13, 5: raqana al-kitāb qariba bayna suṭūrih).

tarqīn 1. embellishing (a text, writing) (KM, IV, sifr 13, 5: tarqīn al-kitāb tazyīnuh) 2. calligraphy (FT, 394).

رکب

tarkīb 1. linking (joining) one letter with another; ligature (e.g. SA, III, 50, 60ff); composition of letters and words on the line (ER, IV, 681) 2. mounting (of leather on book covers and the covers on the textblock); boarding (TS, 24-27; AG, 109; ST, index, 14; MP, 58; HT, lin.73, 78) 3. preparing inks (by mixing two or more ingredients) (e.g. NW, 10: tarkīb al-alwān; IR, 236-237: al-aḥbār al-murakkabah), comp. ḥibr.

murakkab 1. (Turk. mürekkeb) – ink (DD, I, 389; UA, 393), comp. ḥibr 2. hybrid (of a script) (LM, 45).

al-ḥurūf al-murakkabah, murakkabāt – letters of the alphabet (written joined together, ligatured, on the line) (MY, 83).

al-ism al-murakkab – compound name, e.g. Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ.

رکز

markaz (pl. marākiz) – support (for reed pens) (UA, 393: li-mā ‘alay-hi yūḍa’ ru’ūs al-aqlām li’allā tuṣḍa’).

رکع

rukū‘, rak‘ah – bowing (during the recitation of the Qur’ān), abbrev. ع, usually accompanied by numbers indicating rak‘ah, juz’ and āyah (CA, 36; EI, VIII, 406).

رکن

rukṇ (pl. arkān) 1. corner (on a book cover) (KR, 80) 2. wedged stamp (used for a corner piece) (TS, 30, 31; AG, 107) 3. corner piece itself (ST, index, 14; IB, 69).

mirkan – pitcher-shaped container (OM).

رکو

rakwah (pl. rikā’) – inkwell (KD, II, 703).

رم

ramm, tarmīm – repair, restoration (DM).

murammim – restorer.

رمج

tarmīj – smudging, obliteration (KM, IV, sifr 13, 7: ifsād al-suṭūr baʿda taswiyatihā wa-kitābatihā wa-yuqāl rammajahu bi-al-turāb ḥattā fasada).

رمز

ramz (pl. rumūz) 1. abbreviation; siglum (LC, 26; MH, 90, 99; EI, VIII, 428) 2. chronogram, chronosticon (EI, III, 468; WB, 55; TW, 159) 3. code, cypher; secret alphabet (EI, VIII, 427) 4. also **tarmīz** – marking the Qurʾānic text with the conventional reading signs (qirāʾāt), hence **marmūz** – provided with reading marks (DC, V, 209; KC, 33: akhar fī al-rubāʿī qadīm marmūz fī sifr).

رمض

Ramaḍān (al-mubārak, al-muʿaẓẓam) – the ninth month of the Muslim calendar, abbrev. رمض / ن (OS, 89).

رمك

tarmīk see tazmīk.

رمل

tarmīl – sprinkling (of the freshly written text with sand) (TD, I, 127-136).

al-tarmīl al-dhahabī – gold sprinkling (TW, 86; TD, I, 135: **tarmīl bi-al-dhahab al-khālīṣ**).

mirmalah, ramlīyah – sand box; sand compartment in the writing case (dawāh) (SA, II, 478-480; AT, 133; SD, I, 559; DD, I, 389: ālah lil-raml al-aḥmar; UA, 393).

رود

mirwad (pl. marāwid) – little stick for the application of kohl, syn. mikḥāl (DD, I, 392: lil-iktiḥāl bi-hi; UA, 393; LL, I, 1186; DM).

روی

rāwin, rāwiyah (pl. ruwāh) – transmitter, link in the chain of transmission (TP, 53).

riwāyah 1. transmission, tradition (traditio); version (versio), recension (recensio) (LC, 26; EI, VIII, 545-547) 2. **riwāyat al-kitāb** – book ascription, also known as sanad (q.v.) (TP, 53; KF, II, 417-418 and 500-501) 3. variant reading, varia lectio (MR, 94).

ijāzat al-riwāyah – transmission certificate (MU, XII, 109-111).

marwiyah (pl. marwiyāt) – work transmitted through riwāyah (chain of transmitters) (EI, VIII, 545-547).

ريحان

(qalam) al-rayḥān – smaller version of al-muḥaqqaq (q.v.) script (AS, 146; JM, 73-77; LM, 43: wa-qāla Ibn al-Bawwāb wa-ammā al-rayḥān fa-huwa bi-al-qiyās ilā al-muḥaqqaq ka-al-ḥawāshī ilā al-naskh, qultu wa-ka-al-ghubār ilā al-riqāʿ, wa-al-farq bayna al-muḥaqqaq wa-al-rayḥān anna al-rayḥān yakūn iʿrābuhu bi-qalamih wa-yakūn iʿrābuhu mufattaḥ al-aʿyun wa-al-muḥaqqaq yakūn iʿrābuhu bi-ghayr qalamih).

rayḥānī – term used in the later Ottoman period and in modern publications either as a syn. of rayḥān or a type of muḥaqqaq script (EI, IV, 1123- in Persia, 1125- in Turkey).

ریش

rish(ah) – quill pen (UK, 144; MP, 38; MB, 100: al-aqlām al-rīshī-yah).

(qalam) al-riyāshī see riʿāsī.

ز

زاج

zāj – vitriol, sulphuric acid or a sulphate (one of the components of ink, ḥibr, q.v.).

زبر

zabr, tazbīr 1. also **dhabr** – writing; inscription on stone (KM, IV, sifr 13, 4: al-zabr al-naqsh fī al-ḥajar) 2. copying, transcription (TE, 18; CI, I, 65: qad waqa‘a al-farāgh min zabr hādhihi al-Majālis al-Mustaṣirīyah...).

zabūr (pl. zubur) – composition, work (SA, II, 444; ND, 80; IK, 92).

zābir, zabūr – scribe, copyist (TE, 18; ND, 80; KK, 53: wa-yuqāl lil-kātib zābir wa-zabūr mithl dārib wa-ḍarūb).

mizbar or **midhbar** – reed pen, calamus (TE, 18; SA, II, 444-465; IK, 85; IR, 230).

زبرج

zibrijah, zibrāj 1. elegant, embellished writing, copying (KK, 53: wa-yuqāl zabrajtu al-kitāb ... idhā ḥassantuhu wa-zayyantuh; TE, 18) 2. polychrome illumination (TE, 18).

زخرف

zakhrafah 1. elegant, embellished writing, copying (KK, 53; TE, 18) 2. (pl. zakhārif) polychrome illumination (TE, 18) 3. arabesque or geometrical decoration (WR, 87).

muzakhrif – illuminator, decorator (WR, 80).

زر

zirr (pl. azrār, azirrah) – knob (of a clasp) (TS, 25, 34; AG, 110; KT, 135), comp. ‘urwah.

زركش

zarkashah – embellishment, decoration in gold and colours (LL, I, 1222).

زنج

zulayjah (**zalījah**, **zulāyjah**, see DC, V, 360) 1. ornamental tile (DM) 2. most probably a small, square format of a book (KC, passim: fī qālib al-zulāyjah; fī al-zulāyjah lil-kibar(?); ST, index, 19: in 12).

زلف

zulf (Pers./Turk., lit. ‘hair lock’, ‘curl’), **zalf** (MN, 69) – serif-like stroke protruding from the head of the alif, lām, etc., comp. tarwīs (KH, 35; MN, 69; ER, IV, 682, 689).

زم

zamm – leather thong (for tying up a book); fastener (TS, 25; AG, 109).

zimām(ah) (pl. azimmah) 1. account book, register (IK, 95) 2. list, catalogue (SD, I, 601).

ḥurūf al-zimām – Graeco-Coptic alpha-numerical system used in early Arab administration records (AN, 383-385; GA, 181).

(**al-khaṭṭ**) **al-zimāmī** see musnad.

زمنك

tazmīk – outlining (of a letter by means of a fine line in a colour different from it) (NC, 127; NA, pt.9, 222: al-tarmīk (!) huwa an yaḥbis al-ḥarf bi-lawn ḡayr lawnih bi-qalam raqīq jiddan; TE, 18; AS, 145; MB, 101; KF, II, 315, 320), comp. taḥrīr, takḥīl.

زنجفر

zunjufr, **zinjafr** – cinnabar, vermillion ink (SA, II, 478).

زنفليجة

zanfalījah – case, box (DG, 91).

زهر

tazhīr – floral decoration, hence **muzahhar**, floriated (KJ, no.1, 38, 44; KR, 80: ‘amal al-muzahharāt wa-qaṣṣ al-waraq).

زوج

zawj (pl. azwāj) 1. bifolio (bifolium), diploma (TS, 13, 14, 15: fa-in kāna al-kitāb kulluh azwājan dūna mukarras; wa-dhālīka anna azwāj al-kāghad akthar dalkihā fī al-awāsiṭ; TK, f.120b; AG, 107) 2. conjugate leaf (AG, 107).

muzdawij – urjūzah-type poem in which every two verses have the same rhyme (EI, VII, 825 and VIII, 376).

sarlawḥ muzdawij see sarlawḥ.

زود

mizwadah – small container (for making ink) (DD, I, 391).

زور

zawwār – painter (AD, 73).

tazwīr 1. also **tazwīrah** – elegant, embellished writing, copying (TE, 18) 2. forgery, falsification (UI, 6; AD, 73; EI, X, 408-409; GA, 283; ER, X, 90-100).

muzaawwir – forger (EI, X, 409).

زوق

tazwīq (pl. tazāwīq) 1. elegant, embellished writing (KK, 53) 2. decoration, multi-colour illumination (HT, lin.102; WA, 11) 3. painting (with an admixture of quicksilver) (ME, 560) 4. writing, decorating (with colours other than gold) (KA, 105).

ziwāqah – art of illumination; miniature painting (WA, 12).

zawwāq – illuminator; miniature painter (ME, 560, n.4; MS, 4).

زوی

zāwiyah 1. corner; angle 2. square (an implement) (MB, 111; IA, 60, 62).

زید

zā'id(ah) (pl. *zawā'id*) 1. superfluous, abbrev. ز ; written above a cancellation to indicate a dittographic error (TN, 52; MI, 127) 2. interpolation; addition (CM, 136).

ziyādah 1. dittography (TM, 184) 2. interpolation; addition (TP, 59; MH, 98) 3. post-scriptum (AD, 73).

زیر

ziyār, ziyār – bookbinder's press, also **takht al-ziyār** (ST, index, 9).

ziyār al-taqṣīṣ – press (for trimming) (ST, index, 9).

ziyār al-qarīṣ – ordinary screw press (ST, index, 9), comp. *qarrāṣ*.

زین

zīnah, tazyīn 1. elegant, embellished writing (SK, 119: *ḥusn al-kitābah wa-zaynuhā*) 2. embellishment, decoration (DM).

س

al-sīn al-mu'allaqah see *mu'allaqah*.

سأل

su'āl (pl. *aṣ'ilah*) 1. quodlibet, abbrev. س (CI, II, xiv; MI, 128) 2. preamble to a *fatwā*, comp. *jawāb*.

سبح

sabḥalah, tasbīḥ 1. the doxological formula ‘subḥāna Allāh’ (MW, 108) used sometimes instead of the ḥamdalah (TP, 53, n.20; VA, nos. 461, 696, 1853, 3214) 2. the formula of glorification ‘subḥāna wa-ta‘ālā’, used after the word Allāh (TP, 54).

سبق

sabq(at) al-qalam – slip of the pen, lapsus calami (DM).

ستر

mistar – fore-edge flap (ST, index, 13; IB, 81, n.185).

سحق

al-dhahab al-mashūq see dhahab.

سحى

siḥā’ah – piece, slip (of paper on which one writes a short sentence), piece (of poetry, etc.) (SD, I, 637).

tashīyah – binding (with thin leather, parchment) (IB, 11-12).

سختیان

sukhtiyān, sikhtiyān – morocco (leather) (DM).

سخم

sukhām – soot, smut (one of the ingredients of ink, midād, q.v.).

سد

sidād (pl. asiddah) – stopper, plug (in the inkwell) (IK, 83).

tasdīd – copying, transcription (TE, 17).

سر

surrah – center-piece, center-medallion (on a book cover) (FJ, 39, 40, 50: **al-surrah al-dāʿirīyah** – circular medallion, **al-surrah al-lawzīyah** – mandorla), comp. *ṣurrah*.

سراس

sirās, **sīrās** see *shars*, *ashrās*.

سرد

sard 1. awling, punching (SK, 122) 2. reading, recital; collation (of a text without linguistic or other analysis of it), hence **sārid** – reader, prelector (TP, 56, n.52).

sārid, **sarrād** – sewer of leather (LL, I, 1347).

misrad – awl, punch (SK, 122; KM, I, sifr 4, 115; LL, I, 1347).

سرلوح

sarlawḥ(ah) (Pers.) 1. headpiece (*lawḥat ṣadr al-kitāb*) 2. frontispiece; double-page frontispiece (**sarlawḥ muzdawij**) (LC, 27; MD, 127; AF, 36).

سرو

sarwah – lozenge-shaped element (with two sides longer than the others, resembling a cypress tree) in a Mamluk bookcover design, also known as **lawzah** (JL, 95, 97; KR, 82).

سطح

munsatīḥ – flat, horizontal stroke (UD, 11: *huwa al-khaṭṭ al-mam-dūd min yamīn al-kātib ilā yasāriḥ aw bi-al-ʿaks ka-al-bāʿ wa-al-kāf wa-naḥwihimā*; SA, III, 24).

al-qafāʾ al-musatṭah see *qafan*.

سطر

saṭr (pl. *aṣṭur*, *aṣṭār*, *suṭūr*) – line (KD, II, 705: *al-saṭr fī al-lughah al-athar al-mustaṭīl ʿalā istiṭwāʾ*); line of writing.

‘**arsh al-saṭr** see ‘arsh.

taṣṭīr 1. ruling, lining; creating a line (of writing) (SA, III, 140: wa-huwa idāfat al-kalimah ilā al-kalimah ḥattā taṣṭīr saṭran muntaẓim al-waḍ‘ ka-al-miṣṭarah) 2. writing, copying (TE, 17; TM, 174) 3. ruling (of folios), lineation (LC, 28; WS, 91; KA, 134) 4. number of lines per page (LC, 28) 5. geometrical design (polygonal interlace), as opposed to arabesque, tawrīq, tashjīr (ST, index, 22; IB, 83, n.256; LC, 28; WR, 86, 87).

sāṭīr, musaṭṭīr – amanuensis, syn. kātib; copyist, scribe (AA, 119; TE, 17).

miṣṭarah (pl. masāṭir) 1. ruler, straightedge (UK, 155; TS, 12; MB, 103, 104-105; TK, passim; SA, II, 482: ālah min khashab mustaqīmat al-janabayn yusaṭṭar ‘alayhā mā yaḥtāj min taṣṭīriḥ min al-kitābah wa-muta‘allaqatihā wa-akthar man yaḥtāj ilayhi al-mudhahhib) 2. lineation, (grid of) guidelines; number of lines per page (TK, ff.120a-b: faṣl fī ‘amal al-miṣṭarah; TS, 18; TA, 50; LC, 25) 3. threaded guideline board for ruling pages, ruling board (ST, index, 15; WA, 13; IN, I, 247) 4. stencil (AF, 48) 5. pasteboard (HT, lin. 73, 78, 113) 6. redaction, composition (AD, 77).

al-miṣṭarah al-‘ājyah – ivory ruler, used for burnishing gold decoration or writing (KA, 104-105).

miṣṭarat al-rasm – ruler for drawing, designing (UK, 155; MB, 104; IA, 59).

miṣṭarat al-rīḥ – ruler for work with leather; folder (UK, 155; IB, 43).

miṣṭarat al-tabkīr – ruler for work with geometrical figures (MB, 104; IA, 59).

miṣṭarat al-taḥbīr – ruler for inking (UK, 155).

miṣṭarat al-takhīl – ruler for outlining (UK, 155).

miṣṭarat al-shughl – ‘work’ (heavy duty) ruler (UK, 155; MB, 105; IA, 59).



miṣ‘aṭ, mus‘uṭ – receptacle for sa‘ūt (snuff?, musk?) (IR, 230; LL, I, 1364; DM: snuff box).

سفر

sifr (pl. asfār) 1. textblock (ST, 15) 2. paper textblock (TS, 25; AG, 107) 3. book, codex, volume (bound in leather-covered pasteboards) (IK, 96: wa-qad jarat al-‘ādah fī al-akthar allā yuqāl al-sifr illā mā kāna ‘alayhi jild; MS, 16: al-maṣāḥif al-sifrīyah) 4. chapter, section in a book; pasteboards, binding (KC, passim: fī sifr, bi-dūn sifr).

sāfir (pl. safarah) – amanuensis, syn. kātib (KM, IV, sifr 13, 4; AA, 23-24: al-safarah al-katabah wāḥiduhum al-sāfir).

tasfir 1. bookbinding (e.g. ST, index, 15) 2. (pl. tasāfir) – book cover (MB, 97; TF, passim).

al-tasfir al-Miṣrī – Egyptian-style binding characterized by a central medallion in the shape of an almond, lawzah (mandorla) (TS, 31; AG, 110).

musaffir, saffār – bookbinder (ST, index, 15; AD, 78).

al-nuskah al-safariyah see nuskah.

al-maṣāḥif al-sifrīyah see muṣḥaf.

سفت

safaṭ (pl. asfāt) 1. small tool resembling a fish scale or a reed from a basket (TS, 11; AG, 109) 2. fibres (?) (in paper) (ID, 62: al-kāghad ajwaduh mā šafā lawnuh wa-na‘uma lamsuh wa-thaqula waznuh wa-jādat šiqālathu wa-qallat asfāṭuh).

سفل

asfal (suf) al-kitāb 1. tail (of the page); lower margin; end of a letter or book 2. spine (of a book) (UK, 158; HT, lin.115; MB, 109: thumma nazalta sufl al-kitāb mawḍi‘ al-khiyāṭah).

سفن

safan – coarse hide (used for polishing) (DM).

safīnah 1. oblong format (of a book) (MD, 106: al-ṣuḥuf al-safīnah; SD, I, 660; EI, IV, 742) 2. note-pad or commonplace book in oblong format in which the lines are usually written parallel with the spine (EI, VIII, 150).

سقط

saqt, saqaṭ (MU, XII, 238) 1. also **isqāṭ** – omission; haplography (TP, 58; MH, 87) 2. diamond-shaped element (in a Mamluk book cover design) (JL, 95, 97; KR, 88).

ghitā' al-saqt – hexagonal element (in a Mamluk book cover design, see above) (JL, 95, 97).

sāqiṭ 1. omission; haplography (MH, 94: kayfīyat takhrīj al-sāqiṭ fī al-ḥawāshī; TM, 186) 2. also **sāqiṭah** – envelope flap (MB, 107, 113: al-sāqiṭ wa-huwa al-ra's, 118; IA, 60).

سقى

saqy al-waraq – sizing (of paper) (UK, 148; WS, 80), comp. 'ilāj.

misqāh, siqāh – water container (for diluting ink) (SA, II, 482; AT, 133; IR, 230).

سكن

sukūn 1. mark indicating vowellessness of a medial consonant, comp. jazmah 2. circle-like tool (HT, lin.133, 137).

sikkīn (pl. sakākīn) – knife; pen knife (IK, 90-91; SK, 103-104; SA, II, 465-466; AA, 115-117; IA, 60; UK, 76 and MB, 64: sikkīn al-bary, sikkīn al-qatt; KD, II, 711; LM, 31-33).

sikkīn al-kasht see kasht.

سلخ

salkh, insilākh, munsalakh – the last night of the month (SA, VI, 248).

سلسل

silsilah (pl. salāsil) 1. chainwork (in book cover design) (TS, 33; AG, 110; TF, passim) 2. spiritual genealogy (as found in diplomas, ijāzāt, especially in calligraphy) (EI, IX, 611).

silsilat al-nasab – stemma, stemma codicum (AL, I, 27).

(qalam) al-musalsal – relative of al-tawqī' script in which all letters are interlocked and the alif and lām look like links in a chain (AS,

146; KK, 47: ḥurūfuh muttaṣilah laysa fihā shay' munfaṣil; JM, 58-63; EI, IV, 1124).

سلف

sulfah – soft leather (used for doublures) (TS, 15; AG, 107).

سلم

salām, taslīm(ah) – the formula of benediction “alayhi al-salām” (YM, 5: al-muqaddimah fī al-taṣliyah wa-al-taslīmah), abbrev. عه / عه / ع / عم / ع (TP, 54; VA, no.1830, 2211; CI, I, xiii; MI, 128).

سمر

mismār (pl. masāmīr) – nail, peg (part of a clasp) (BA, III, 372; TM, 171: kharīṭah dhāt 'urwah wa-mismār).

سمع

samā' (pl. samā'āt) 1. audition (of a text) (CT, 45) 2. audition note (statement, certificate), also known as **tasmī'** or **ṭabaqat al-samā'**, abbrev. ع (CW, 69; TP, 53; LC, 27; MU, X, 278; MU, XVII, 267; EI, VIII, 1019-1020).

ijāzat al-samā' – audition certificate (beginning with the words samī'a, samī'tu or balagha samā'an) (e.g. TP, 53, n.25; KF, II, 485-493).

sāmi' – pupil attending a samā'-session, auditor.

tasmī' 1. auditing (MU, XIII, 85); writing down, recording a samā' (CT, 45) 2. audition note, certificate (JA, I, 268: wa-yaktub fī alladhī yalīhi al-tasmī' wa-al-ta'rīkh; MH, 100).

musammi', **musmi'** – person (shaykh) conducting a samā'-session, audition leader (master); authoritative commentator, certifier (CT, 45).

masmū' (pl. masmū'āt) – work transmitted through samā', comp. maqrū'.

اسمى

ism (pl. asmā', asāmin) 1. proper name (EI, IV, 179-181) 2. title of a book (**ism al-kitāb**).

ism al-jalālah see *tajlīl*.

al-Ism al-Aʿzam see *al-khātim al-Sulaymānī*.

al-ism al-murakkab – compound name, such as *Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ*.

ism al-shuhrah see *shuhrah*.

tasmiyah 1. title (of a work) (LC, 28) 2. the expression ‘sammaytu-hu’ (in a preface) (LC, 28; TP, 53, n.20) 3. the propitiatory formula otherwise known as *basmalah* (q.v.) (MH, 100).

سن

sinn (pl. *asnān*) – half-nib (of a calamus created by a slit, *shaqq*) (UK, 154: *wa-sinnāhu ʿarafuhu al-mabrī*; SK, 105: *wa-lil-qalam sinnān*); SA, II, 463; KK, 50; EI, IV, 471: **insī** – left side; **waḥshī** – right side, see also the article on *insī* in LL, I, 114).

misann or **ḥajar al-misann** – whetstone, hone (UK, 153; MB, 103; IA, 60: *misann akḥḍar*, *misann ṭulaylī* (?); IR, 230; SA, II, 483; AT, 133; TS, 10; AG, 107; NH, 384: *al-Rūmī*, *al-Ḥijāzī*, *al-Qawṣī*).

misann al-miṣḥ – whetstone (for a *miṣḥ*, q.v.).

musannn al-aṭrāf – deckle-edged (paper) (DM).

musannanah – chevron (FT, 395).

سند

sanad (pl. *asnād*), also known as **isnād** and **riwāyat al-kitāb** – ascription (of a ḥadīth or work, indicating a chain of authorities going back to the author) (TP, 53, 56).

musnad – ḥadīth-work (not arranged thematically but on the basis of the first authority in the *isnād*) (SL, II, 2, 39; EI, VII, 705), comp. *muṣannaf*.

(qalam) al-musnad – Himyarite (ancient South Arabian) script, also known as **khatt Ḥimyar** (KM, IV, *sifr* 13, 5; FN, 8; RN, 2; EI, VII, 704-705).

al-Musnad al-imām see *imām*.

(al-khatt) al-musnad, also known as **(al-khatt) al-zimāmī** – Maghrebi chancery (secretarial) hand used primarily in legal documents and annotations (LT, 365; TW, 14, 47).

misnadah – copyist’s book support made up of some dozen sheets of paper held together at the four corners and placed on the knee (SD, I, 692).

mustanad – closing phrases of a document including such statements

as bi-al-ishārah, ḥasaba al-amr and the like; in codices these statements indicate patronage and include bi-rasm, bi-‘ināyah, bi-himmah, ḥasaba al-ishārah, ḥasaba al-amr and the like) (SA, VI, 264-265; OS, 88; CM, 232).

سندس

sundus – silk brocade (NT, II, 143: wa-kusiya al-muṣḥaf al-‘azīz bi-ṣiḥwān laṭīf min al-sundus al-akhḍar).

سنة

sanah (pl. sinūn, sanawāt) 1. year, often represented by a logograph consisting of a horizontal line with a downward curve at its end, and used predominantly in dates in non-Maghrebi manuscripts (SA, VI, 252), comp. ‘ām. See also ta’rīkh 2. era.

al-sanah al-milādīyah (al-‘Īsawīyah, al-Masīḥīyah) – Christian era (A.D.).

al-sanah al-qamarīyah (al-hilālīyah, al-hijrīyah) – Muslim era (DD, I, 384, 388).

سود

sawād 1. black ink (LC, 27; SK, 320; AI, 147-148: yanbaghī lil-tālib an yaktub al-ḥadīth bi-al-sawād thumma bi-al-ḥibr khāṣṣatan dūna al-midād li-anna al-sawād aṣbagh al-alwān wa-al-ḥibr abqāhā ‘alā marr al-duhūr wa-al-azmān) 2. also **musawwadah** – draft, rough copy (LC, 27; MU, VI, 161; MU, XIII, 126; MU, XV, 7: ‘athartu ‘alā al-musawwadah wa-bayyaḍtuhā; MU, XV, 23), comp. mubayyaḍah.

taswīd 1. preparation of a draft (TE, 18) 2. also **iswīdād** (!) – writing, copying (TE, 18; AM, nos. 45, 50A) 3. marring (of a text), making it difficult to read (MH, 97, 98) 4. copying by an apprentice (TE, 18).

musawwid – copyist; calligrapher (AW, 237).

(al-khaṭṭ) al-Sūdānī see Ifrīqī.

سوس

sāyis (sā’is) – catchword, vox reclamans (NZ, 65: wa-yuṭlaq ‘alayhā al-sāyis, wa-hiya al-‘āmmīyah, fī al-katātīb al-Qur’ānīyah).

sūs(ah) (pl. sīsān) – woodworm.

taswīs – worming, damage caused by worms (LC, 28).

musawwas – worm-eaten.

سوی

taswīyah – aligning (of quires) and shaving, trimming the textblock (TS, 17-18).

istiwāʾ – straight (even) cut (of the point of the nib) (SK, 105; KK, 50; SA, II, 463; KD, II, 702), comp. taḥrīf.

al-qatṭ al-mustawī see qatṭ.

سیاق

(khaṭṭ) al-siyāq(ah), khaṭṭ-i siyāqat, siyāqat – script and/or system of alphabetic abbreviations used in accountancy (EI, IV, 1124- in Persia, 1125- in Turkey; DR, 178-180; RA, 24-24). A variety of this script, used in Ottoman Egypt, was known as **qirmah** (GA, 183).

سیر

sayr (pl. suyūr) 1. strip, narrow piece of leather (MB, 114; IA, 62) 2. endband (headband) strip (ST, index, 16; MB, 114; HT, lin.96).

سیف

sayf (pl. suyūf) – trimming sword, cutter (UK, 154; MB, 103, 104; IA, 60: sayf bi-niṣāb, sayf bi-niṣābayn, sayf ṣaghīr, sayf kabīr).

ش

شبک

shabīkah 1. endband (headband) (HT, lin.88-106, 115, 158: wa-al-ghilaḥ fī raʾs al-ibrah yashtarīṭ ʿinda ṣināʿat al-shabīkah faqaṭ) 2. also **mushabbak** – lattice work (FT, 407; DH, nos. 33, 73).

tashbīk 1. preliminary endbanding (without silk) (TS, 19, 20) 2. (pl. tashābīk) – interlace (TF, passim).

al-khayṭ al-tashbīk see khayṭ.
mutashābikah – interlacing (FT, 406).

شِبَاة

shabāt al-qalam – nib (of a calamus) (KD, II, 701: shabāt al-qalam ṭarafuhu al-mabrī; BA, III, 370: shabātuh ḥadduh), comp. jilfah.

شَج

shajjah (pl. shijāj) – diacritic point (JA, I, 276: shijāj ya'nī nuqaṭ).

شَجَر

shajar, līf al-shajar – paper pulp (OM).
shajarah – genealogical tree; stemma (AL, I, 27).
tashjīr 1. also **mushajjar** – foliated design, arabesque decoration (WR, 86, 87; DH, no.73) 2. creating a genealogical tree; stemma (SL, I, 14; EI, VII, 967) 3. composing a text in a schematic, tree-like way.
al-qalam al-mushajjar see qalam.

شَحَذ

shaḥdh – whetting, honing (of a knife) (KD, II, 711).
mishḥadh – whetstone, hone (DD, I, 390).

شَحْم

shaḥm(ah) – pith, white interior substance of the reed (IK, 86: wa-yuqāl li-bāṭinih al-shaḥmah wa-li-ẓāhirihi al-līṭ; UD, 9; LM, 35-35).

شَد

shaddah, tashdīd(ah) – doubling (of a consonant), doubling sign over a consonant (for various practices see GL, 14).

شَدَق

shidq (pl. ashdāq) 1. pasteboard (made of two or three pieces of paper and one piece of parchment), book cover; case binding (TS, 27;

AG, 109), comp. fakk 2. fore-edge flap (?) (NH, 369).

شرح

sharaj (pl. ashṛāj) – plaited thong (al-sayr al-murassa‘) placed beneath a ḥalqah in ‘boxed books’ (q.v.) (BA, III, 372).

شرح

sharḥ (pl. shurūḥ, shurūḥāt) 1. note, comment (LC, 27) 2. running (systematic) commentary, comprising the text commented upon (matn); comment-text book, also referred to as **al-sharḥ al-mamzūj** (bi-al-matn), **al-sharḥ al-mazjī**, abbrev. ش (LC, 27; CI, II, xiv; MI, 100; MM, 139; EI, IX, 397-320; EA, I, 174-175).

al-sharḥ al-kabīr (al-muṭawwal) – original, long commentary.

al-sharḥ al-wasaṭ – middle commentary.

al-sharḥ al-ṣaghīr (al-mukhtaṣar) – short commentary.

shāriḥ (pl. shurrāḥ) – commentator, abbrev. الش (CI, II, xiv).

شرس

shars – pasting, paste (MB, 109: sharastu (not sharshartu!) ‘alayhi bi-al-ashrās; KM, I, sifr 4, 100: wa-al-shars shaddat da‘k al-shay’).

ashrās – asphodelus paste (UK, 158; MB, 106-107; IA, 60; IB, 50-51), also **shirās**, **sirās** and **sīrās** (DM).

شرط

sharṭ(ah) (pl. shurāṭ) – line, stroke (DM).

sharīṭ (pl. sharā‘īṭ, ashriṭah) 1. rules, rule-border (LC, 27) 2. frame (on a book cover) (FJ, 41: wa-al-matn muḥāṭ bi-iṭār dhī thalāthat ashriṭah; FZ, 217; MD, 109) 3. decorative band (UI, 29) 4. fillet (in decoration) (FT, 401).

mishraṭ(ah) – knife, cutter (IA, 60; NH, 385; DD, I, 392: for opening sealed documents; OM).

شرف

al-ashraf – epithet of Najaf.

al-sharīf(ah) – epithet of the months of Sha‘bān, Shawwāl, Dhū al-

Qa‘dah and Dhū al-Ḥijjah (q.v.), as well as the words kitāb, khatmah, muṣḥaf, nuskhah and the like.

شرق

shurūq – the first hour of day (SA, VI, 250).

(al-khaṭṭ) al-Mashriqī – large size, ligatured Maghrebi script, sometimes referred to as **al-thuluth al-Maghribī**, used predominantly for titles and chapter headings (LT, 365; TW, 47, 322).

شزر

shayzarah – endband (headband) (FD, 54, 55), comp. shīrāzah.

شطب

shaṭbah, tashṭīb – erasure (by means of a pen stroke) (SD, I, 756); cancellation (LC, 28: IN, I, 251), comp. shaqq, ḍarb.

mishṭab – 1. duster, whisk (?); eraser (TS, 11; AG, 113) 2. burnisher, polisher (NH, 390).

شطى

shazīyah (pl. shazāyā) 1. side of the right half-nib; also **tashzīyah** – line, stroke produced by the side of the right half-nib (either at the head of such letters as ḥā’, ṭā’, yā’, šād, kāf, ghayn or at the tail of the alif (SA, III, 35, 40: wa-kull shazīyah fī awwal aw ākhīr mithl sub‘ alif khaṭṭihā; KU, 154: wa-shazīyatuh ṭaraf sinnih al-ayman; AA, 88; KH, 36: al-tashzīyah, an yakūn a‘lā al-ḥarf ‘alā hay‘at al-shazīyah; UD, 13) 2. serif-like stroke (LM, 54: wa-ammā alif al-tawāqī‘ al-shabīhah bi-al-riqā‘ wa-al-ghubār fa-anta mukhayyar bayna al-shazīyah ! wa-‘adamihā; LM, 57, 97; UD, 13), comp. tarwīs.

شعب

Sha‘bān (al-mu‘azzam, al-mukarram, al-mubārak, al-sharīf) – the eighth month of the Muslim calendar, abbrev. ش / شع (OS, 89).

شعر

(qalam) al-sha‘r see qalam.

shi‘r (pl. ash‘ār) – poetry, versification; scribal verse (see e.g. CI, I, no. 12; CI, II, nos. 81, 82, 116).

(qalam) al-ash‘ār, (qalam) al-musha‘‘ar, also known as **(qalam) al-mu‘annaq** – allegedly a hybrid of either al-muḥaqqaq or al-thuluth or al-muḥaqqaq and al-naskh scripts (AS, 145; JM, 91-93; LM, 45, 47: wa-al-mu‘annaq li-kitābat al-shi‘r).

tash‘īr 1. outlining; outline (KF, II, 321: bi-al-khaṭṭ al-muḥaqqaq bi-mā’ al-dhahab al-musha‘‘ar bi-al-aswad) 2. illumination in gold; design made up of thin lines and drawn in gold (HD, 104; IP, 144; AF, 50) 3. also **sha‘rah** and **tash‘īrah** – hairline (used for joining letters in the thuluth family of scripts) (NC, 127; NA, pt. 9, 222: tash‘īrāt raqīqah taltaff ‘alā al-ḥurūf; KH, 36: fī nihāyat al-‘arāqāt; AS, 145; SA, III, 58).

al-alif al-musha‘‘arah – the letter alif with its tail (foot) bent to the left (SA, III, 59; MJ, 224).

mish‘ār – small tool (most probably for creating tendrils) (TS, 11; AG, 109).

شفر

shafrah 1. cutting edge (SK, 104; AI, 161) 2. bookbinder’s sword, trimmer (HT, lin.83; MB, 103, 112; IA, 59) 3. paring knife, parer, scraper (ST, index, 16; UK, 153, 161).

tashfīr – trimming, shaving (HT, lin.159).

شفق

shafaq – the first hour of night (SA, VI, 250).

شق

shaqq (pl. shuqūq) 1. line (drawn above a letter or word, e.g. **al-kāf al-mashqūqah**, i.e. the letter kāf with a line above the ascender to distinguish it from lām) (UD, 11-12: SK, 117: wa-yastahsinūn an takūn al-kāf ghayr mashqūqah) 2. cancellation mark (in the form of a line drawn across the top of the word) (TP, 59; MH, 97; IM, 171) 3. slit (of the nib); splitting of the nib to facilitate retention of ink (KU, 154: wa-shaqquhu farjah bayna sinnayh; SA, II, 460-462).

شك

mishakk – needle; awl, punch (UA, 393).

شكز

tashkīz – 1. sewing endbands (headbands); preliminary endbanding (IA, 62) 2. mounting (of leather on wooden book covers) (KJ, no.1, 43, 45: wa-al-tajlīd al-awwal al-Aghlabī yata'allaf min daffatayn min al-khashab al-mushakkazatayn bi-al-jild al-muṭarraz al-muzakhraf; KJ, no.3, 23: yujallidūn al-kutub wa-yubaṭṭinūnahā bi-al-khashab wa-yushakkizūnahā bi-al-jild).

شکسته

(**khaff-i**) **shikastah** (Pers.) – commonly used for **shikastah-nasta'liq**, a hybrid of two Persian scripts nasta'liq and ta'liq developed in the 11/17th century. Unlike ta'liq it has no tarwīs and the letter nūn is often written 'in reverse' (EI, IV, 1124; ER, IV, 699-702).

shikastah-ta'liq – version of the ta'liq script used for rapid writing (EI, IV, 1124; ER, IV, 694).

شکل

shakl(ah) (pl. ashkāl) 1. also **tashkīl** – vocalization, vowelization; vowel marks; orthographic (orthoepic) signs (e.g. IM, 150), hence **mushakkal** – vocalized, vowelized (for various practices see SA, III, 160-167; GL, 12) 2. diagram.

shākilah – lower end of the stem of a letter before the tail (SA, III, 59; KH, 36).

al-kāf mashkūlah – the letter kāf provided with a straight line above its stem (KU, 125; SA, III, 81), comp. shaqq.

شمر

shamrah, tashmīr – upward-curving tail of a letter (as in bā', dāl, nūn) (KH, 36; UD, 13, 14, 20).

شمس

shams(ah) (pl. shumūs) 1. circular, center-medallion (on a book cover) (UK, 156: wa-al-bīkār li-istikhrāj al-shumūs wa-hiya al-da-wā'ir al-manqūshah allatī taqa' fī wasaṭ al-kitāb ; MB, 105) 2. circular illuminated medallion, rosette (LC, 27; AF, passim; PA, 116).

شمع

sham^c(ah) – wax (AG, 110; MB, 118; IA, 63).

sham^c al-ʿasal – beeswax (used for polishing threads for use in sewing quires) (FD, 51).

tashmī^c – waxing (of leather or paper) (KA, 135).

شهد

shāhid 1. (pl. shuhūd, ashhād) witness; notary 2. (pl. shawāhid) – quotation (usually drawn from pre-Islamic poetry) serving as textual evidence (e.g. al-shawāhid al-Qurʿānīyah).

shāhidah (pl. shawāhid) – copy of a letter, document (DM).

shahādah, tashahhud – the doctrinal formula ‘lā ilāha illā Allāh Muḥammad rasūl Allāh’, also known as **kalimat al-tawḥīd** or **kali-matān** (TP, 53, n.20; EI, IX, 201 and X, 340-341); signed shahādah-statement (often on the front of the textblock): awdaʿtu fī hādhā al-kitāb shahādatan ...).

ishhād – written attestation of a document (e.g. a waqfīyah, q.v.), usually beginning with the expression ashhadanī (he called upon me as a witness) (OS, 90).

Mashhad ʿAlī, al-Mashhad al-Gharawī – Najaf.

Mashhad (al-)Ḥusayn, Mashhad al-Ḥāʾir (al-Mashhad al-Ḥāʾirī) – Kerbela (Karbālʾ).

al-Mashhad al-Muqaddas, al-Mashhad al-Riḍawī – Mashhad.

شهر

shahr (pl. shuhūr, ashhur) – new moon; month (LL, II, 1612).

al-shahr al-ḥarām – the Holy Month of Muḥarram (q.v.).

shuhrah, ism al-shuhrah – that part of a person's name under which he/she is best known, usually introduced by al-shahīr (al-mashhūr) bi, al-maʿrūf bi and the like (e.g. CI, II, 5).

شَوَّل

Shawwāl (al-mukarram, al-mubārak) – the tenth month of the Muslim calendar, abbrev. ش / ل (OS, 89).

شَيْئاً

For the formula ‘in shā’a Allāh’ see *istithnā’* and *mash’alah*.

شَيْخ

mashyakhah (pl. of shaykh) – record of attested study consisting of a list of works and their transmitters (EI, VI, 725), comp. *fihrist*, *fahrasah*.

شِيرَازَة

shīrāzah (Pers.) – endband (headband) (LA, pt.5, 386: wa-dhakara al-burshmān bi-ma‘ná mā yusammīhu mujallidū al-‘Irāq al-shīrāzah; HD, 117; PA, 118).

ص

صَب

al-aṣabb – epithet of the month of Rajab (q.v.).

صَبَح

ṣabāḥ – the last hour of night (SA, VI, 250).

صَبْع

iṣbā‘ (pl. aṣābi‘) – ascender (upstroke of such letters as alif, lām and the like) (FN, 8; RN, 19-20; KH, 34: al-ḥurūf al-qā’imah aw al-ṭālī‘ah).

صِغ

ṣabghah, ṣibāgh – pigment, dye, tint (UK, 120-129; MP, 29-32; MB, 114-118; IA, 63; NH, 370: ṣabgh al-waraq; NW, 45-46: ṣibāgh al-waraq).

ṣibāghah – art of dyeing, tinting.

ṣabbāgh – dyer (EI, VIII, 671-672; QS, II, 267-268).

صَح

ṣiḥḥah – soundness of the text (ant. maraḍ and saqam); attestation (of correctness in transcription); sic, thus (JA, I, 279: idh ra'ayta al-kitāb fihi ilḥāq wa-iṣlāḥ fa-ishhad bi-al-ṣiḥḥah).

ṣaḥīḥ – correct, abbrev. صح (KG, 473; AR, 35; LE, 136; CT, 45).

taṣḥīḥ 1. correction; emendation 2. writing صح (sic) on or next to a word in the text (GA, 285; MH, 95-96: ammā al-taṣḥīḥ fa-huwa kitābat 'ṣaḥḥa' 'alā al-kalām aw 'indah) or at the end of omission, abbrev. ص (TP, 57, 58) 3. writing صح (placet) at the end of audition notes (TP, 53, n.25); signing (a document) 4. preparation of a critical edition, comp. taḥrīr, taḥqīq.

muṣaḥḥiḥ – corrector; editor.

صَحْب

ṣāḥib (pl. aṣḥāb) 1. author (**ṣāḥib al-kitāb**), abbrev. ص (MI, 133) 2. owner (OS).

istiṣḥāb – ownership, possession (OS).

صَحْف

ṣaḥīfah (pl. ṣuḥuf, ṣaḥā'if) 1. sheet of writing material, often leather, parchment, papyrus or paper (KD, II, 704: wa-yuqāl lil-ṣaḥīfah al-qaḍīm ayḍan; BA, III, 371: wa-al-ṣuḥuf mā kāna min julūd; SA, II, 485: al-qirṭās wa-al-ṣaḥīfah wa-humā bi-ma'nān wāḥid wa-huwa kāghad; WS, 43; EI, VIII, 834-835) 2. papyrus or parchment roll (SL, I, 22) 3. folio (folium), leaf (TC, 24); page (DM) 4. small pamphlet, notebook (SL, I, 22; IK, 95: al-kitāb wa-al-ṣaḥīfah fa-innahumā yaqā'ān 'alā jamī' anwā'ih).

muṣḥaf, maṣḥaf, miṣḥaf (pl. maṣāḥif) 1. codex (either bound or unbound) (KM, IV, sifr 13,8: wa-al-muṣḥaf al-jāmī' lil-ṣuḥuf al-

maktūbah bayna al-daffatayn ka-annahu uṣḥifa ay jumi'at fīhi al-ṣuḥuf bi-kasr al-mīm wa-ḍammihā wa-faṭḥihā; SK, 320: fa-huwa muṣḥaf idhā ḍammat al-ṣuḥuf ba'duhā ilā ba'd) 2. parchment textblock (TS, 17, 25; AG, 107) 3. copy of the Qur'ān (**al-muṣḥaf al-sharīf**) (usually contained in one, sometimes two, volumes) (EI, VII, 668-669; KF, II, 316, n.4).

al-muṣḥaf al-imām see imām.

al-maṣāḥif al-sifrīyah – codices bound in pasteboards (TS, 17, 25; AG, 107; MS, 16).

al-maṣāḥif al-mulawwaḥah – codices bound in wooden boards (TS, 17; AG, 107; MS, 16).

(**qalam**) **al-maṣāḥif** – smaller version of al-muḥaqqaq script, but larger than al-rayḥān, used exclusively for the copying of the Qur'ān, hence its appellation (AS, 146; JM, 54-57).

muṣḥifī – calligrapher and decorator of the Qur'ān (MS, 4, 5).

taṣḥīf 1. distortion, error resulting from incorrect pointing or vocalization of a word or misplacing diacritical marks (e.g. حمرة / جمرة , حزم / خرم) (MQ, 641; SA, II, 485: wa-yusammā al-taṣḥīf taṣḥīfan lil-khaṭa' fī al-ṣaḥīfah), comp. taḥrīf, al-qalb al-makānī 2. mistake (in writing), syn. taḥrīf (q.v.) (EI, X, 347-348) 3. bookbinding (LA, pt.5, 385: wa-ma'nāhā al-tajlīd aw kamā yaqūl al-'Irāqīyūn al-taṣḥīf).

ṣaḥḥāf 1. also **muṣaḥḥif** – bookbinder (CI, II, 9; IB, 11, 13; HD, 118) 2. bookseller (QS, II, 269-270).

صدر

ṣadr (pl. ṣudūr), **ṣadārah** 1. also **taṣdīr** – incipit, preamble, preface (TP, 52, n.14; CM, no.73: qāla al-muṣannif fī ṣadr al-kitāb 'Bism Allāh al-Raḥmān al-Raḥīm'; FN, 351: wa-li-Abī Zayd al-Balkhī sharḥ ṣadr hādhā al-kitāb) 2. front of the textblock (TS, 24: fa-idhā ji'ta ilā ṣadr al-kitāb wa-huwa mā bayna al-udhn wa-al-tabṭīn) 3. recto of the first folio (LC, 27) 4. fore-edge (TS, 15) 5. fore-edge flap (TS, 16; AG, 107) 6. almond-shaped stamp (mandorla), known as **ṣadr al-bāz** (UK, 156; IB, 44; MB, 105; IA, 59).

ṣadr al-qalam – outer side of the nib, as opposed to inner side, wajh (SA, II, 464; MJ, 218).

ṣadārah see also lawḥ al-ṣadārah.

صدق

taṣdīq – the formula of attestation ‘ṣadaqa Allāh al-‘Aẓīm’ (placed usually at the end of the Qur’ān or a ḥadīth) (CA, 47); confirmation, certification (DM).

صر

ṣurrah – center-medallion, mandorla (FZ, 215-219: **al-ṣurrah al-wuṣṭá**, **al-ṣurrah al-lawzīyah**; JL, 83, 99; MD, 109, 110), comp. surrah.

صعد

ṣa‘d (pl. ṣu‘ūd) – ascender (up-stroke of a letter) (AA, 50; TU, 34: wa-ḍāḥá ṣu‘ūduhu ḥudūrah).

صغر

taṣghīr – abbreviation (contraction, siglum) (TP, 58).

صفح

ṣafḥ(ah) – page (SJ, 371; FN, 227; KD, II, 703: wa-al-waraqah ma‘rūfah wa-kull wajh minhā ṣafḥ).

ṣafḥat al-dībājah – opening page; verso of the first folio (LC, 27).

ṣafīḥah (pl. ṣafā‘iḥ) – slab (for tooling leather) (TS, 11, 30; AG, 107).

taṣfīḥ – catchword, vox reclamans (TT, 192).

taṣaffuḥ – examination, study (KF, II, 362: nuqila min dustūriḥ bi-khaṭṭiḥ wa-‘alayhi ‘alāmat al-taṣaffuḥ wa-al-muqābalah).

صفر

Ṣafar (al-khayr, al-ẓafar, al-muẓaffar, al-mubārak) – the second month of the Muslim calendar, abbrev. ص (OS, 89).

ṣifr (pl. aṣfār) – cancellation mark (in the form of a small circle) (IM, 171; TP, 59).

صفو

mişfāh (pl. maşāfin) – filter, strainer, sieve (UA, 393: for ink).

صقل

şaqł – polishing, burnishing (MB, passim; KA, 134).

şaqqāl, mişqalah (pl. maşāqil) – polisher, burnisher (for paper and gold) (UK, 142, 149, 156; IB, 44; MB, 99, 105; IA, 60: mişqalah kabīrah, mişqalah şaghīrah; TS, 11; AG, 107; AT, 133; SA, II, 482; DS, 181: al-mişqalah wa-hiya allatī yuşqal bi-hā al-waraq li-izālat mā fihi min al-khushūnah wa-yuşqal bi-hā al-dhahab ba'da al-kitābah li-tazhar baḥjatuhu; DD, I, 391: for polishing paper after erasure with a scraper).

maşāqil al-zujāj – glass burnishers (UK, 149; OM)

al-waraq al-maşqūl – see waraq.

صلب

şulb (pl. aşlub, aşlāb) 1. main body of the text, as distinguished from the margins, text-column (LL, II, 1712; LC, 27) 2. main, original text (LC, 27), comp. matn.

şalīb – cross (as a mark of two intersecting lines) (UK, 166; MB, 119).

taşlīb 1. making pasteboards (MB, 110: taşlīb al-daffatayn) 2. also

taşlībah – pasteboard (MB, 111; IA, 62) 3. bookbinding (IA, 62).

lawḥ al-taşlīb – slab for making pasteboards (IA, 59).

صلح

işlāḥ 1. correction (FK, II, no.1209/1: qara'tu hādhihi al-kurrāsah wa-aşlaḥtuhā; JA, I, 279) 2. repair, restoration (KC, 91, 94; TW, 135).

al-waraq al-maşlūḥ see waraq.

iştilāḥ, muştalāḥ – abbreviation (contraction, suspension, siglum) (TP, 55-56; CI, II, no. 191; MM, 139: fa-bayān al-iştilāḥ fī dībājat al-kitāb).

صلو

taṣliyah, ṣalwalah – the formula of supplication ‘ṣallā Allāh ‘alayhi wa-sallam’, also known as **al-ṣalāh wa-al-taslīm**, used after the name of the prophet Muhammad, abbrev. صلعم / صله / صلح صلح / صم / ص / صع (TP, 53, n.20; TP, 54; CI, I, xiii; EI, X, 358-359).

صم

al-aṣamm – epithet of the month of Rajab (q.v.).

ṣimām – plug, stopper (in the inkwell) (IK, 83).

taṣmīm – design, sketching (MO, 227: ittafaqa al-farāgh min taṣḥīfih wa-taṣmīmih wa-tadhhībih).

صندوق

ṣandūq, ṣundūq (pl. ṣanādīq) – wooden chest, box (for copies of the Qur’ān) (MD, 133; TB, 93-94).

ṣanduqī – keeper of the chest of the Qur’ān (CA, 35, 51).

صنع

ṣinā‘ah (pl. ṣinā‘āt, ṣuna‘); **ṣun‘, ṣan‘ah** – occupation of and production by artisans; art, craft (EI, IX, 625-626).

ṣan‘ah – composition, work (as in ṣan‘at Abī Hilāl = by Abī Hilāl), comp. ‘amal.

صنف

taṣnīf (pl. taṣānīf) – composition, work (MU, III, 98: wa-lahu fī kull fann taṣānīf wa-majāmi‘ wa-tawālīf), comp. ta’līf.

muṣannaf – compilation, work, often a thematically arranged ḥadīth compilation, as opposed to musnad (q.v.) (SL, II, 39; EI, VII, 662-663, 705).

muṣannif – author, compiler; often the author of the original text (matn), as opposed to a commentator (shāriḥ), abbrev. المصنف (CI, I, xi).

صوب

ṣawāb – correct, correctness; used in the expression ‘ṣawābuhu kadhā’, placed in the margin, abbrev. ص (LE, 136; TP, 57).

taṣwīb (pl. taṣwībāt) – correction, comp. taṣḥīḥ.

al-qaṭṭ al-muṣawwab see qaṭṭ.

صور

ṣūrah (pl. ṣuwar) 1. copy, transcript (e.g. ṣūrat ijāzah, ṣūrat ṭabaqat al-samāʿ) 2. exact copy, apograph (TP, 56) 3. example (JA, I, 268) 4. also **taṣwīrah** – miniature painting, painted illustration (EI, IX, 889-892 and X, 361; DH, no.212).

taṣwīr 1. miniature painting (MU, XV, 121; MU, XVI, 225; EI, X, 361-363) 2. microfilming.

muṣawwir – painter, illustrator (PA, 141: ‘portraitiste’).

صون

ṣiṣwān (pl. aṣwinah) – case, box (NT, pt.2, 143; ME, 559), comp. ḥifāz.

ṣawn, ṣiṣwānah – conservation, preservation (DM).

ض

ضب

ḍabbah (pl. ḍibāb) 1. correction mark (in the shape of a ‘door bolt’ and resembling the initial form of the letter ض), abbrev. ض (TP, 57; AR, 30) 2. sic, thus (TP, 57, n.64; MH, 95-96).

taḍbīb, also known as **tamrīd**, marking the word with a ḍabbah (TP, 57; MH, 95-96).

ضبر

iḍbarah (pl. aḍābīr), **aḍbarah, ḍibārah** 1. a number of leaves or sheets put together; bundle of documents (IK, 95: al-ṣuḥuf tujmaʿ wa-tushadd; KM, IV, sifr 13, 8: al-ḥuzmah min al-ṣuḥuf) 2. quire

(consisting of sewn leaves) (DA, II, 5) 3. textblock (TS, 17, 18; AG, 112) 4. album (FT, 388).

taḍbīr 1. gathering (arranging) leaves together (IB, 11) 2. collation (of quires) (TS, 13; AG, 107) 3. binding (IB, 19, n.177).

ضبط

ḍabt – pointing and/or vocalization (SJ, 356: wa-ḍabaṭa al-naṣb bi-al-dhahab wa-ḍabaṭa al-raḥ minhā bi-al-aḥmar wa-ḍabaṭa al-khaḍd minhā bi-al-lāzuward wa-al-akhḍar; KF, I, 222; MH, 90: kamā tuḍbaṭ al-ḥurūf al-muʿjamah bi-al-naqṭ ka-dhālika yanbaghī an tuḍbaṭ al-muhmalāt ghayr al-muʿjamah bi-ʿalāmat al-ihmāl; KF, II, 320: ḍabaṭa hādhihi al-khatmah al-sharīfah bi-al-shakl).

ḍabiṭ 1. specialist in ḍabt; orthographer (MH, 97) 2. (pl. ḍawābiṭ) – compass, (pair of) dividers (TS, 12, 16, 18, 26, 29; AG, 107; ST, index, 16; IB, 44; TK, f.120a-b).

ضرب

ḍarb (pl. ḍurūb) – cancellation; erasure (MF, 606: wa-ajwad al-ḍarb allā yaṭmis al-maḍrūb ʿalayhi bal yakhuṭṭ min fawqih khaṭṭan jayyidan bayyinan yadull ʿalā ibṭālīh wa-yaqraʾ min taḥtihi mā khaṭṭa ʿalayh; KF, II, 347: wa-kānat fī ghāyat al-siqam kathīrat al-ḍurūb; for various methods of cancellation see TP, 59).

miḍrabah 1. small tool (resembling a drum stick; stalk?) (TS, 11; AG, 109) 2. mallet (LF, 62).

ضرس

ḍirs (pl. aḍrās, ḍurūs) 1. pallet-like tool (used in leather work) (TS, 12; AG, 109) 2. interlace (TS, 12: ḥadīd al-ḍirs wa-hiya sabʿah wa-tasmiyatuhā al-ḍirs wa-al-ṭawīl wa-al-ṣilah wa-al-takḥīlayn! aʿnī bi-himā takḥīl al-ḍirs wa-takḥīl al-ṭawīl wa-al-ḍafrah wa-al-nuqṭah; also TS, 32-33; AG, 109-110).

ضعف

ḍiʿf (pl. aḍʿāf), **taḍʿīf** (pl. taḍʿāʿīf) – space between lines; interline (LL, II, 1792; MU, XVII, 54: wa-qad alḥaqa bi-khaṭṭih fī taḍʿāʿīf al-suṭūr bi-khaṭṭ daqīq; LL, II, 1792; LC, 27).

ضفط

ḍagħṭ – stamping (KF, 44).

al-waraq al-maḍghūṭ see waraq.

ضفر

ḍafīrah (pl. ḍafā'ir) 1. plait, braid (FT, 413) 2. interlace (TF, passim).

ḍafrah – gouge-like tool (TS, 12, 33; AG, 110).

maḍfūr – plaited, interlaced (FZ, 217).

muḍaffarah – interlacing (FT, 406).

ضلع

muḍalla' – polygonal; polygon.

al-ḥabk al-muḍalla' see ḥabk.

ضلف

miḍlaf – chisel-like implement (for work with wooden boards) (TS, 11; AG, 107).

ضوء

ḍaw' (pl. aḍwā') – counter, 'eye' (of a letter), e.g. ṣād, ṭā', 'ayn, fā' (SA, III, 30, 32, 44, 45).

ط

طبع

ṭābi', **ṭāba'** (pl. ṭawābi'), **miṭba'** 1. seal, signet, stamp (IK, 96), comp. khātīm 2. small tool (for leather work) (TS, 11, 26; AG, 109) 3. large stamp (for a center- medallion) (HT, lin.134: wa-ṭābi' ka-shakl ḥūt lil-wasat).

طبق

ṭabaq (pl. aṭbāq, ṭibāq) 1. mould; sheet of paper; roll (AJ, 144; WS, 87) 2. format (of a book) (SJ, passim: fī ṭabaq min al-kāghad, fī niṣf al-ṭabaq, fī rubʿ al-ṭabaq), comp. qaṭʿ and qālib 3. lid (of an inkwell) (KU, 154; DB, III, 2019) 4. center-medallion (on a book cover in the shape of a star) (DE, 979) 5. element of geometrical design (in Mamluk book cover decoration such as kindah, tirs, sarwah) (JL, 83, 95: al-aṭbāq al-najmīyah; KR, 81).

ṭabaqah (pl. ṭabaqāt, ṭibāq), **ṭabaqat al-samāʿ**, **ṭābiq** – group of auditors (auditors' circle); record of authorities (or those present at a reading session); audition note (EI, VIII, 1020; MZ, I, Taf.7; AD, 102).

ṭibāq – large sheets, leaves (of paper) (NH, 372).

طبل

ṭablah – fore-edge flap (MB, 107, 113; IA, 60).

طر

ṭurrah (pl. ṭurar) 1. edge; turn-in (TS, 21; AG, 109) 2. border (on a book cover) (TS, 33: wa-al-ṭurar takūn ʿalā anwāʿ minhā ṭurrah min bayt wāḥid; AG, 110) 3. margin (LC, 28; TK, f.120a) 4. marginal note, gloss; marginalia, abbrev. ط (TP, 59, n.84; AK, 352), comp. ḥāshiyah 5. head (upper) margin (TP, 58; ML, 46; SA, VI, 313; SD, II, 29) 6. address (ʿunwān) of a document, matter preceding the basmalah (MU, X, 57; TP, 58, n.67), comp. ṭughrā 7. illuminated headpiece (LC, 28) 8. 'title page' of a manuscript or recto of the first folio (LC, 28) 9. center-medallion on a book cover (LC, 28) 10. disc or roundel (serving as a text divider) (LC, 28) 11. ansa, palmette (LC, 28; KH, 36) 12. tailpiece (LC, 28) 13. serif-like stroke, comp. tarwīs and zulf (ER, IV, 682, 689).

al-ṭurrah al-suflā – lower margin (TK, f.120a).

al-ṭurrah al-ʿulyā – upper margin (TK, f.120a; HT, lin.85).

taṭrīr – glossing, annotation (WA, 16).

muṭarrar – glossed, annotated (WA, 16).

طرح

ṭarḥ (pl. ṭurūḥ), **taṭrīḥ** – sketch, outline (HD, 118; MB, 101; PA, 61, 69, 159: ‘dessin, composition’).

qalam al-ṭarḥ see mikhaṭṭ.

ṭarrāḥ 1. sketcher, draftsman (AB, 132; HD, 118; PA, 141: ‘dessinateur, celui qui fait le tracé initial, ṭarḥ’) 2. manuscript restorer; person who repairs parts of the manuscript damaged by humidity or worms by restoring the text (AD, 103).

ṭarḥah – mould (DG, 133).

al-waraq al-muṭarraḥ see waraq.

طرس

ṭirs (pl. ṭurūs, aṭrās) 1. palimpsest, i.e. writing surface or manuscript on which the original writing has been effaced to make room for a second writing (WS, 63-64; IW, 75-76; IK, 93; EI, VIII, 408; LL, II, 1840), comp. ṭils 2. sheet, leaf (of paper) (e.g. ‘Kitāb al-khaṭṭ wa-ādābuh wa-waṣf ṭurūsiḥ wa-aqlāmih’ by Ibn al-‘Adīm, d. 660/1262; OH, 140; LF, 79: **ṭirs mabshūr** or **ṭirs makshūṭ**: ‘une feuille de papier (!) qui avait déjà servi, et dont on avait effacé l’écriture avec un grattoir, pour s’en servir encore une fois’).

taṭrīs – obliteration, effacement (of the original writing) (KM, IV, sifr 13, 8; BA, III, 371).

طرف

ṭaraf (pl. aṭrāf) – key element (part) of a ḥadīth recorded on a slip of paper in order to later form an index (fihris) or dictionary (mu‘jam) called **al-aṭrāf** (IM, 166; TH, 57, 87).

طرق

ṭarīq – fillet (in book cover design) (TS, 11, 30, 31, 38; AG, 109).

miṭraqah – mallet; hammer (TS, 11; AG, 107; IA, 60).

taṭrīq – pounding (of the spine) (TS, 15; AG, 107).

طرمس

ṭarmasah – obliteration, erasure (KM, IV, sifr 13, 7: ṭarmastu al-kitāb maḥawtuh).

طعم

ṭu‘mah – small tool (possibly in the shape of a calice) (TS, 11; AG, 109).

taṭ‘īm – inlay, inlay work (AB, 134; FT, 406).

طغرى

ṭughrá, ṭughrā’ (pl. ṭughrā’āt, ṭughrāwāt) 1. address (of a document) (MU, X, 57: al-ṭughrā’ hiya kalimah ‘ajamīyah muḥarrafah min al-ṭurrah (q.v.) 2. signature of the Ottoman sultan (EI, X, 595-598) 3. headpiece (LC, 28) 4. decorative panel (on a book cover or in the text) (LC, 28).

طفو

al-tadhhīb al-muṭfá see tadhhīb.

طلب

ṭālibī – ‘student’ (medium) format (of a book) (MK, 83).

طلبى

ṭalbaqah – the formula of supplication, requiescat ‘aṭāla Allāh baqā’ahu’ (MG, I, 483).

طلح

ṭalh, ṭalah – sheet, leaf (of paper) (TS, 27; UK, 147; WS, 92; AJ, 145; SD, II, 52).

ṭalhīyah (pl. ṭalāḥīy) – sheet (of paper from the mould); roll (WS, 87: al-darj; SD, II, 52).

ṭalīḥah – ream (of paper) (DM).

طلخ

ṭalkh – obliteration, smudging (KM, IV, sifr 13, 7: ifṣād al-kitāb wa-naḥwih).

طنس

ṭils – palimpsest (KM, IV, sifr 13, 7: wa-al-ṭils alladhī muḥiya thumma kutiba; NH, 373: **ṭals**; LL, II, 1866: ‘written paper or the like; syn. ṣaḥīfah: or of which the writing has been obliterated; thus differing from ṭirs’), comp. ṭirs.

ṭalsah, ṭaṭlīs – obliteration, erasure (ND, 63, 82; NH, 373: **ṭulsah**).

طلسم

ṭilsam, ṭilsim, ṭilsim (etc.) (pl. ṭalāsīm) – talisman; magical combination of words (EI, X, 500-502).

ṭalāsīm – cryptic characters (DM).

طلع

ṭālīʿ (pl. ṭawālīʿ) 1. ascender (of a letter), iṣbāʿ (q.v.) (KH, 36: al-ḥurūf al-ṭālīʿah, al-ḥurūf al-ṭawālīʿ) 2. also **ṭālīʿah** – head margin; beginning of the text; incipit (WA, 11; WB, 56); headpiece (TW, 258).

muṭālaʿah – reading or study note (usually beginning with the verbs ṭālaʿa, naẓara, waqafa) (LC, 26; OS, 90), comp. taqrīz, naẓar.

طلق

(al-khaṭṭ) al-muṭlaq – curvilinear script or a family of scripts using ligatures and hairlines for joining letters together (AS, 144; SA, III, 22: wa-ammā al-muṭlaq fa-huwa alladhī tadākhalat ḥurūfuh wa-ittaṣala baʿḍuhā bi-baʿḍ; RN, 29: ‘common, popular class of scripts’).

al-alif al-muṭlaqah – the letter alif with its tail (foot) slightly tapered (SA, III, 59; MJ, 224).

al-tawqīʿ al-muṭlaq see tawqīʿ.

طلى

ṭaly 1. daubing, coating, pasting (MB, *passim*) 2. gilding (SD, II, 58; DG, 136).

ṭilāʾ – coat of paste, gilt and the like (MB, 110).

طمس

ṭams 1. obliteration, erasure (JA, I, 278; KD, II, 710: ṭamastu al-kitāb ṭamsan idhā ‘ammaytu khaṭṭahu ḥattā lā yuqra’) 2. filling in (inking in) (of the counters, ‘eyes’, of the letters such as ṣād, ṭā’ ‘ayn, fā’ qāf, mīn, hā’ and wāw) (SA, III, 46-47; IR, 242; KH, 36; AS, 144). **maṭmūs** – closed (‘blind’), as opposed to open (maftūḥ) (of the counter of a letter).

طنب

aṭnāb (sg. ṭunub) – ascenders (TU, 36: al-aṭnāb al-alifāt; MN, 6: al-alifāt wa-al-lāmāt).

طوق

ṭāqah 1. sheet (piece, layer) of paper (TS, 17, 35; AG, 109; MB, 111; IA, 62; TK, f. 120b) 2. strand (UK, 157; MB, 107; IA, 61).

طول

aṭāla Allāh ‘umrahu – formula of supplication for someone’s longevity (placed after a person’s name), abbrev. طع / طلع / طره (CI, I, xviii).

aṭālah Allāh baqā’ahu see ṭalbaqah.

ṭawīl – long, pallet-like tool (used in the interlace) (TS, 31, 32; AG, 110), comp. ṣilah.

muṭawwal – original, unabridged work.

al-sharḥ al-muṭawwal see sharḥ.

mustaṭīl 1. rules, rule-border (LC, 26) 2. rectangular panel (AB, 135) 3. cartouche (LC, 26).

طومار

ṭūmār, ṭāmūr (pl. ṭawāmīr) 1. (Gr. tomarion) – 1/6th of the papyrus roll; papyrus, parchment or paper roll (IB, 31; AJ, 102; IK, 68: fī anṣāf al-ṭawāmīr) 2. sheet of paper or other writing surface (SA, VI, 189: thumma al-murād bi-al-ṭūmār al-waraqah al-kāmilah wa-hiya al-mu‘abbar ‘anhā fī zamāninā bi-al-farkhah; KM, IV, sifr 13, 8: al-ṭāmūr wa-al-ṭūmār al-ṣaḥīfah).

(qalam) al-ṭūmār – one of the four ancient chancery scripts of a large size (FN, 11, 12). In the Mamluk period it was executed either using the rules of al-muḥaqqaq or al-thuluth (AS, 147: **al-ṭūmār al-kāmil, al-ṭūmār al-mu‘tād, mukhtaṣar al-ṭūmār**). It was written with a reed pen, the nib of which was slit in three or more places (SA, III, 49-57).

طوى

ṭayy al-kāghad – fold (of a leaf of paper) (TK, f.120a).

طيب

ṭāba or **ṭayyba (Allāh) tharāhu** – requiescat, prayer for a deceased person, abbrev. طه / طر (MI, 142).

ṭaṭyīb – scenting, perfuming (of ink, with camphor, kāfūr, and/or musk, misk) (e.g. MJ, 206, 212).

mustaṭāb(ah) – honorific (epithet) of kitāb, risālah, etc. (e.g. CI, II, 3; CM, 18).

طير

ṭayyārah – slip of paper used for additions and glossed and inserted between the sheets of the volume; inset (EM, 98; AH, 182).

ظ

ظرف

ẓarf (pl. ẓurūf) 1. receptacle, container (SA, II, 480) 2. case, box (LC, 29; LL, II, 1910; ME, 575).

ẓarrāf – seller of paper and boxes (cases) (QS, II, 495).

ظفر

al-ẓafar, al-muẓaffar – epithet of the month of Ṣafar (q.v.).

ẓufr (pl. aẓfār) – outline (surrounding the center-piece on a book cover) (LC, 29).

taẓfīr – ruling (of leaves by means of fingernails, usually the thumb-nail) (TM, 172: fa-idhā ẓaffara fa-lā yakbis ẓufrah qawīyan; MM, 132).

ظل

taẓlīl (lit. ‘shading’) – outlining, outline (KJ, no.3, 28: wa-kataba bi-al-dhahab al-ḥaqīqī al-muḥaḍḍan bi-al-ḥibr al-thubūt lil-taẓlīl wa-al-īḥā’ bi-ma’ná al-burūz).

ظن

ẓann (pl. ẓunūn) – conjecture, abbrev. ظ (TP, 57, n.64; CI, I, xv; GA, 285), often expressed by the phrase ‘aẓunnuhu’, placed in the margin.

ظهر

ẓahr – back, verso, hair side (of parchment), comp. baṭn.

ẓahr al-waraqah – verso or recto (LC, 29).

ẓahr al-kitāb (al-nuskhah), ẓahrīyah 1. back of a document; blank reverse of a letter (LC, 29; SL, II, 59) 2. front of the textblock (LC, 29); title-page (ṣafḥat al-‘unwān) 3. fly-leaf (SD, II, 88; ME, 553: ‘la feuille de garde’) 4. first page(s) of the textblock (KF, I, 8 and II, 473: wajh al-waraqah al-ūlā), comp. ghāshīyah.

ẓahr al-qalabbaq – tool resembling the back (shell) of a tortoise (TS, 11; AG, 109).

ẓāhir (lit. ‘external, obvious, evident’; ‘alleged, presumed’) – word commonly used in the Persian/Indian context to indicate a conjecture, abbrev. ظ (KG, 473: wa-hiya ay al-ziyādah bayna al-ṣaḥīḥ wa-al-ẓāhir wa-al-badal wa-li-kull wāḥid minhā ramz al-awwal ṣḥ wa-al-thānī bi-hi ẓ wa-al-thālith bi-hi khl wa-qad yuktab al-ḥarf ẓ fī al-hāmish ayḍan ishāratān ilā kalimat al-ẓāhir; TP, 57, n.64; TN, 52).

ع

al-‘ayn al-mu‘allaqah see mu‘allaqah.

عق

ta‘tīq (al-waraq) – method of making paper look old using saffron or straw to give it a buff or light brown tint (UK, 148-149; MP, 40; AJ, 147; WS, 80-82).

عجز

‘ajz, ‘ajuz (pl. a‘jāz) 1. the last word of a verse (DA) 2. conclusion, final part of a document or composition (work) (MU, V, 21-22; TP, 52, n.14).

عجل

‘ajjala Allāh farajahu – formula of supplication (used after the name of al-Imām al-Mahdī), abbrev. عج (MI, 146; RA, 26).

‘ujālah – (hastily prepared) short tract, treatise.

عجم

‘ajm, i‘jām, ta‘jīm 1. diacritical pointing (of letters) (MH, 90; SA, III, 16: al-‘ajm al-naqṭ bi-al-sawād; MF, 608: a‘jamtu al-kitāb fa-huwa mu‘jam lā ghayruh wa-huwa al-naqṭ) 2. diacritical point 3. vocalization (KM, IV, sifr 13, 5: shakaltu al-kitāb ashkuluhu shaklan a‘jamtuh).

mu‘jam – record of attested study arranged alphabetically by name (SD, II, 98; EI, II, 743), comp. barnāmaj, thabat, mashyakhah.

al-ḥurūf al-mu‘jamah – letters provided with diacritical points, pointed letters (TP, 57).

ḥurūf al-mu‘jam – letters of the alphabet.

عرج

ta'rīj(ah) (pl. ta'ārīj) – curve, curvature (of the descender) (SA, III, 29, 40, 45: mā huwa mutanāsib fī al-ta'rīj wa-huwa al-'ayn wa-al-jīm wa-yajma'uhā qawluk 'aj).

ta'arruj – scroll (in decoration) (UI, 30).

عرش

'arsh (pl. 'urūsh) **al-saṭr** – base line (TW, 230: 'alā 'urūsh al-suṭūr).

'arīsh, ta'rīshah 1. trellis (FT, 423) 2. lattice-work (AB, 136).

عرض

'arḍ(ah), 'irāḍ(ah), mu'āraḍah – collation of a text with the exemplar (usually in the presence of the teacher by means of recitation or reading) (LC, 25; TP, 56; MH, 92: afḍal al-mu'āraḍah an yu'arīḍ al-ṭālib bi-nafsih kitābahu bi-kitāb al-shaykh ma'a al-shaykh fī ḥāl taḥdīthih iyyāhu min kitābih; MU, XVII, 78: 'araḍtu al-Qur'ān 'alā Ibn 'Abbās thalāthīn 'arḍatan), abbrev. ع (for 'ūrīḍa, JA, I, 202), comp. muqābalah.

'urḍ al-kitāb – outer or inner margin (IK, 94: fa-idhā naqaṣa min al-kitābah shay' fa-alḥiqhu bayna al-suṭūr aw fī 'urḍ al-kitāb; IK, 101: fī asfal al-kitāb al-marfū' ilayh aw 'alā ḡahrih aw fī 'urḍih; LC, 29).

'arḍ al-qalam – left-side (of the) half-nib (of a reed pen) (MJ, 218; KU, 154: wa-'urḍuhu! al-jānib al-aysar; SA, II, 464; SA, III, 45).

mu'arīḍ – collator; reciter (CT, 45).

عرق

'arāqah, ta'rīqah (pl. ta'ārīq), **mu'arraqah** – descender (terminal, sublinear stroke of a letter) (RN, 22; KH, 36, 37; SA, III, 11, 40, 50; KU, 125: **al-ḥurūf al-mu'arraqah** – sīn, ṣād, qāf, nūn, yā', rā', zāy, mīm, wāw), comp. mu'aqqaf.

(al-khaṭṭ) al-'Irāqī see muḥaqqaq.

عرم

'arrām – bookbinder (IB, 11).

عرو

‘urwah (pl. ‘uran) – thong, leather fastener in the shape of a loop or noose (part of a clasp) (TS, 25, 34; AG, 110; KT, 135: al-muṣḥaf wa-lahu ‘uran wa-azrār; BA, III, 371: wa-fihi [al-ghilāf] al-‘urwatān).

عز

‘azza wa-jalla – the formula of magnification (placed after the word Allāh), abbrev. عج / ع ج (CI, I, xiii).

عشر

‘ashr (pl. a‘shār), **‘āshirah** (pl. ‘awāshir), **‘āshirīyah** – mark, decorative disc or rosette indicating the end of a group of 10 verses of the Qur’ān (MS, 15, 28; KT, 138; LL, II, 2051; UI, 36; SD, II, 130).

al-‘ashr – the first 10 days of Muḥarram (DM).

ta‘shīr 1. dividing a chapter of the Qur’ān into groups of 10 verses and marking them with the letter ع or ع 2. (pl. ta‘shīrāt) the mark itself (MD, 126: wa-ba‘da kull ‘ashr āyāt tataḍamman al-dā‘irah ra’s ḥarf al-‘ayn wa-aṣbaḥat tusammá al-ta‘shīrāt; KT, 139: kānū yakrahūn al-naqṭ wa-al-ta‘shīr wa-iḥṣār al-suwar).

‘ushar 1. stamp with vegetal design (TS, 31: wa-al-‘ushar fī wasaṭ al-sifr wa-al-lawzah ḥawlah; AG, 109) 2. tool (used for the application of gold with the inside either engraved or not) (TS, 11; AG, 109).

عصر

‘aṣr – pressing (MB, 108, 109).

‘aṣṣārah – press (used for tanning leather) (MB, 116: ghaḍārah!).

mi‘sarah (pl. ma‘āṣir) – bookbinder’s press (UK, 154-155; SD, II, 134).

mi‘sarat dhāt ḥabl – rope press (UK, 154).

mi‘sarat al-maghāzil – screw press, also known as **laḥm Sulaymān** (UK, 154; IB, 42).

عطب

‘uṭbah – cotton wad (tow) (in the inkwell) (KU, 155; IK, 84).

عطف

‘aṭf (ah) 1. fold (of a leaf of paper or quire) (MB, 107: ‘aṭf al-kurrās; HT, lin.130) 2. curved line (used as a reference mark, signe de renvoi); caret (MR, 95: wa-qīla tamudd al-‘aṭfah ilá awwal al-laḥaq thumma yuktab al-laḥaq qubālata al-‘aṭfah fī al-ḥāshiyah; TP, 58) 3. rounding (of the end of descender or the tail of the alif) (KH, 37) 4. also **‘alāmat al-‘aṭf** or **ma‘ṭūfah** – conjunction, connection, abbrev. معط / عطف / ع (AR, 35, 36; MI, 145, 147; AM, introd.).

عظم

ta‘zīm – the formula of glorification, such as tabāraka, taqaddasa, ‘azza wa-jalla, subḥānahu, ta‘ālā (placed after the word Allāh) (MM, 132; MR, 93; TM, 176; TP, 54).

al-mu‘azzam – epithet of the months of Ramaḍān and Sha‘bān (q.v.).

عقص

‘aṣṣ – galls, gall nuts (for making iron-gall or tannin inks, ḥibr) (MP, 16, 19).

‘ifāṣ – plug, stopper (in the inkwell) (IK, 83; LL, II, 2091).

عقب

‘aqb, ‘aqib (pl. a‘qāb) – end of the text (matn) on a page; lower margin (ST, index, 17; ST, 8: wa-yanṣur fī ‘aqb al-waraqah wa-fī al-awwal allatī ba‘dahā; MP, 62).

ta‘qībah 1. note, comment (LC, 27) 2. catchword, vox reclamans (TN, 38: hiya al-kalimah allatī tuktab fī asfal al-ṣafḥah al-yumnā ghālīban li-tadull ‘alā bad’ al-ṣafḥah allatī talīhā; KH, 37; NM, 683; SJ, 344).

عقد

‘uqdah (pl. ‘uqad) 1. counter, ‘eye’ (of a letter) (SA, III, 46, 47, 58, 128: mufattaḥ al-‘uqad; KH, 36) 2. knot-like tool (TS, 11; AG, 109).

عقف

‘uqf(ah) – tail of the alif curved to the right (KH, 37).

mu‘aqqaf – letter (such as jīm and ‘ayn) having its tail or descender curved to the right) (KU, 126), comp. ta‘rīq.

عل

‘allahu, la‘allahu (lit. ‘perhaps, maybe’) – used in the expression ‘la‘allahu kadhā’ (perhaps thus), to indicate a conjecture, abbrev. ع or ه (TN, 52; MI, 145).

علج

‘ilāj – sizing (of paper) (AB, 90; WS, 80: šifat saqy al-kāghad wa-huwa al-musammā fī muṣṭalaḥ al-nās al-‘ilāj), comp. saqy.

علق

ta‘līq 1. writing, composition; transcription, copying (TE, 15) 2. copy, transcript (AD, 119) 3. ligature (KU, 124); script, hand (using an unconventional way of joining letters) (MM, 133: huwa khaṭ al-ḥurūf allatī yanbaghī tafriqatuhā; TP, 55; MA, IV, 84) 4. dictation session (in Shāfi‘ī circles) (KF, I, 86) 5. also **ta‘līqah**, abbrev. ت / ه (MI, 107) (pl. ta‘ālīq, ta‘līqāt) – marginal gloss, comment; scholium, explication (TE, 15; LC, 27; MU, IX, 71; EI, X, 165) 6. insertion/omission (written in the margin) (SD, II, 162).

(khaṭṭ) al-ta‘līq 1. (also known as **ta‘līq-i qadīm** or **ta‘līq-i aṣl**) – Persian chancery hand and later also (though less frequently) a book hand which emerged in its definite form in the 7/13th century. It is characterized by numerous ligatures, the **tarwīs** protruding to the left and the tail (foot) of the alif bent leftward and often joined with the following letter (EI, IV, 1124; ER, IV, 694-696) 2. name often given, in the Turkish/Arabic context, to the script which is properly known as **nasta‘līq** (q.v.).

mu‘allīq – glossator (MI, 26).

mu‘allaqah – strip of parchment (used for lining the spine of the textblock before covering); hinge (guard) (TS, 17: ammā al-maṣāḥif al-mulawwaḥah fa-innamā takūn lahā mu‘allaqāt min al-raqq mud-

khalah bayna al-lawḥ wa-al-muṣḥaf; also TS, 26, 28; AG, 104), comp. rājī'.

al-‘ayn al-mu‘allaqah – syn. **al-‘ayn al-maṭmūṣah**, closed ('blinded') form of the letter ‘ayn (SA, III, 77).

al-sīn al-mu‘allaqah – the letter sīn without ‘teeth’ (SA, III, 72).

mi‘lāq – fastener (part of a clasp) (BA, III, 371, 372: wa-huwa khayṭ aw sayr yushadd ilā ‘urāhā).

علم

‘alam (pl. a‘lām) – decorated border (LL, II, 2140).

‘alāmah – 1. mark, book mark (e.g. to mark centers of quires when rebinding, TS, 27) 2. abbreviation (siglum) (MU, XII, 138: wa-qad a‘lama ‘alayhi ‘ayn wa-hiya ‘alāmah li-nafsih) 3. motto, signature (SD, II, 164; EI, I, 352) 4. autograph (LC, 22).

al-‘alāmah al-mā‘īyah – watermark (HN, 381).

‘alāmat al-‘aṭf see ‘aṭf.

‘alāmat al-balāgh see balāgh.

‘alāmat al-iḥālāh see iḥālāh.

‘alāmat al-iḥmāl see iḥmāl.

‘alāmat al-raj‘ see raj‘.

‘alāmat al-taḍbīb see ḍabbah.

‘alāmat al-takhrīj see takhrīj.

‘alāmat al-tamrīḍ see ḍabbah.

‘alāmat al-taṣḥīḥ see taṣḥīḥ.

‘alāmat al-waqf see waqf.

ta‘līm 1. marking; marking quires before sewing (ST, index, 18) 2. signing a document (AA, 135; SD, II, 164); also possibly the textual closing formula ‘wa-Allāh a‘lam (bi-al-ṣawāb)’.

علو / على

‘ilāwah – upper book cover (BA, III, 372).

a‘lā Allāh maqāmahu – the formula of supplication, abbrev. **ع** (MI, 100).

al-mu‘allā – epithet of Kerbela (Karbalā') (CM, no.39).

ta‘ālā – the formula of glorification placed after the word Allāh or qawluhu (introducing a Qur’ānic quotation), abbrev. **تع** or **تَع** (TP, 54).

عمد

‘amūd al-kitāb – text-column (as opposed to the margins) (LL, II, 2153: ‘text of the book’).

al-nuskah al-mu‘tamadah see nuskah.

عمل

‘amal (pl. a‘māl) 1. composition, compilation (MU, VII, 256: ‘amaltu bi-idhn Allāh kitāban), comp. ṣan‘ah 2. also **‘amaliyah** – execution, i.e. writing, colouring, painting, etc. (SJ, passim: min ‘amal ḥasan jiddan, mukhtalifat al-‘amal, laṭīf al-‘amal; TC, 30) 3. main work of a painter (PA, 61: le ‘gros’ de l’oeuvre, used in opposition to ṭarḥ, q.v.).

عمى

ta‘miyah 1. ‘blinding’ of the ‘eyes’ (counters) of letters (KU, 123), comp. ta‘wīr 2. also **mu‘ammá** – cryptography, cryptogram; chronosticon (TI, 47-48; SA, IX, 229; EI, VII, 257-258).

al-ta‘miyah bi-al-naqṣ see ta‘rīkh.

al-ta‘miyah bi-al-ziyādah see ta‘rīkh.

عن

‘an‘anah – the formula ‘an fulān’ (on the authority of, by), abbrev. ع (used in the isnād and indicating an indirect transmission of a text) (MW, 110; PK, 211; SL, I, 16; EI, VII, 260-261).

عنون

‘unwān (pl. ‘anāwīn) 1. address (in diplomatic: min fulān ilá fulān); the matter preceding the basmalah (LC, 29; EI, X, 870), comp. tarjamah 2. title (of a book) (LC, 29; EI, X, 871-872) 3. illuminated headpiece or frontispiece (sometimes containing the title of the work) (AF, 36; PA, 66, 116; EI, X, 870-871) 4. chapter, section heading (LC, 29).

عهد

‘uhdah – faulty formation of letters (fī khaṭṭih ‘uhdah) (LL, II, 2183).

عوج

‘āj – ivory (EI, I, 200-203).

al-miṣṭarah al-‘ājīyah see *miṣṭarah*.

īwījāj – curvature, hence **mu‘awwaj** – crooked, curved (of a line, stroke) (KU, 126: curvature of the tail of *jīm* and ‘ayn; UD, e.g. 13, 14).

عود

‘ūd al-nasākhah – copyist’s book support (WA, 12; IN, I, 230).

ī‘ādah – reiteration of dictation; collation session (MF, 74).

mu‘īd – transmitter’s clerk (*famulus*); collation master, repetitor (EI, VII, 726).

عوذ

ta‘awwudh, isti‘ādhah – the formula of protection ‘a‘ūdhu bi-Allāh’ (EI, X, 7).

ta‘wīdhah (pl. *ta‘āwīdh*) – talisman, amulet (DT, 69).

عور

ta‘wīr – filling in (inking in) (of the counters, ‘eyes’, of letters) (AP, 95; KU, 114, 123-124), comp. *ṭams*.

عوم

‘ām (pl. *a‘wām*) – year (word used predominantly in dates in Maghrebi manuscripts) (SA, VI, 252-253), comp. *sanah*.

عين

‘ayn (pl. ‘uyūn, a‘yun) – counter (‘eye’ of a letter) (MJ, 194; LM, 43), comp. ‘uqdah.

غ

غبر

(**qalam**) **al-ghubār** – the smallest curvilinear script, also known as (**qalam**) **al-janāh**, (**qalam**) **al-baṭāʾiq** (AS, 145), as well as **ghubār** (or **qalam**) **al-ḥalbah** or **al-hilyah** (KK, 47; IK, 88; MP, 41, n.289: ghabār al-ḥulbah!; JM, 58-63; AS, 145; EI, IV, 1124).

al-khamsah al-ghubārīyah see khams.

rasm al-ghubār, al-arqām al-ghubārīyah see raqm.

ghubrah – mixture of white, red and black colours (SD, II, 199).

غر

ghurrah – the first night of the month (SA, VI, 244).

ghurar – the first three nights of the month (SA, VI, 250).

غرا

gharan, ghirāʾ (pl. aghriyah) – paste, adhesive (TS, 12-13; AG, 107; HT, lin.60-72; NW, 45-47).

ghirāʾ al-ḥalazūn – snail paste (UK, 141; MB, 97; MP, 37; IB, 73).

ghirāʾ al-ḥūt – whitefish paste (ST, 19-23; IB, 74).

ghirāʾ al-samak – fish paste (UK, 141; MB, 97; MP, 37; IB, 74; NW, 47).

taghriyah 1. pasting (ST, index,18) 2. sizing (of paper) (AB, 90; NW, 46: taghriyat al-waraq).

غرب

ghurūb – the last hour of day (SA, VI, 250).

(**al-khatt**) **al-Maghribī** – generic name for a host of ‘non-proportioned’ scripts which originated from the category currently known as the ‘Abbasid bookhand’ and which were used throughout Andalusia, North Africa, and sub-Saharan Africa (DQ, 233; OD; DW, 32-34, 42-45), comp. Ifrīqī.

غزل

jild (raqq) ghazāl see jild.

mi'ṣarat al-maghāzil see mi'ṣarah.

غشى

ghishā' (pl. aghshiyah) 1. book cover; covering of the board, binding (TS, 35, 36; ME, 554, 564) 2. case, box (SD, II, 214; KC, passim).

ghāshiyah (pl. ghawāshin) 1. book cover; inner cover, paste-down end paper or recto of the first folio (TM, 182: wa-yaj'alu ru'ūs ḥurūf hādhihi al-tarjamah ilā al-ghāshiyah allatī min jānib al-basmalah; CD, III, pl. 71: samī'a al-juz' kullah wa-mā fī ghāshiyatih; qara'tuh wa-mā 'alā ghāshiyatih) 2. last page(s) of the textblock; area around the tail of the text and the colophon (KF, I, 8: al-ṣafaḥāt al-akhīrah; KF, II, 473).

taghshiyah – book covering, binding (IN, I, 257).

غفر

istighfār(ah) 1. the formula of forgiveness 'astaghfiru Allāh' (SD, II, 217) 2. prayer (in verse) on the theme of forgiveness.

غفل

ghufl – anonymous (BA, III, 371: hādihā kitāb ghufl ... idhā lam yakun mawsūman).

غلط

ghalaṭ (pl. aghlāṭ), **ghalṭah** – error, mistake, abbrev. غ (written above a word) (MI, 150).

غظ

ghilaz, **ghilzah**, **ghilāzah** – boldness (of letters); bold character, letter (SK, 105; TB, 95: in kāna al-Qur'ān bi-khaṭṭ mutamayyiz bi-ghilaz aw ḥumrah aw ghayrihā ḥaruma).

taghlīz – writing in bold letters (TM, 192).

غلف

ghilāf (pl. aghlifah, ghilāfāt) – book cover (MD, 108).

mughallif – bookbinder (DG, 157).

taghlīf – book covering; binding (FZ, 213, 214; AB, 132).

غلق

ghālīqah (pl. ghawāliq) – tailpiece (KF, II, 320: hādhihi al-fawātiḥ wa-al-ghawāliq min id‘ān al-‘abd ... Ṣandal).

ف

فافير

fāfir – papyrus (EI, VIII, 261).

فتح

fath – opposite of ṭams (q.v.); **mufattaḥ al-‘uqad** – letters with open counters (KU, 114; SA, III, 46, 47, 128), comp.‘uqdah.

fātiḥah (pl. fawātiḥ) 1. also **iftitāḥ**, **istiftāḥ** – opening lines (of a composition); incipit (MU, XVII, 92: kull mujallad lahu fātiḥah bi-khuṭbah; LC, 23) 2. preface, prologue, proem (MU, XV, 8: kull mujallad lahu fātiḥah wa-khātimah; TP, 52, n.14; LC, 23) 3. heading (e.g. **fawātiḥ al-suwar**, LC, 23) 4. headpiece (KF, II, 320: al-fawātiḥ wa-al-ghawāliq).

miftāḥ al-qarrāṣ see qarrāṣ.

muftataḥ – the first day of the month (SA, VI, 245).

فتل

fatīlah 1. also **maftūl** – endband (headband) strip (MB, 114: wa-yusammā hādhā al-sayr al-maftūl al-fatīlah; IA, 62; TS, 18; AG, 109) 2. press screw (MB, 104; IA, 59).

فرخ

farkhah – sheet, leaf (of paper) (SA, VI, 189; SD, II, 249), comp. *ṭūmār*.

فرد

fard(ah) (pl. *afrād*) – one of a pair; one half of a piece of leather (TS, 28); conjugate leaf.

al-fard – epithet of the month of Rajab (q.v.).

farīdah – quire (of paper) (DM).

al-nukhah al-farīdah see *nuskhah*.

ifrād – letter in its isolated, as opposed to linked (ligatured) form, *tarkīb* (q.v.) (SA, III, 50).

al-ḥurūf al-mufradah, mufradāt – letters of the alphabet written individually (in their isolated forms) (e.g. SA, III, 60; MY, 83).

فرش

mifrash(ah) – piece of cotton or wool (used as lining for pens in a writing case) (SA, II, 481; AT, 133; IR, 230; DD, I, 390).

فرض

farḍ al-qalam – syn. *shaqq* (q.v.) (KU, 154).

furḍah (pl. *furaḍ*) – place in the writing case (*dawāh*) where the ink is kept; perhaps syn. of *jūnah* (q.v.) (LL, II, 2374).

فرط

mifraṭ – cutter (ST, index, 18), most probably a variant of **miqrāḍ**, **miqrāṭ** and **miqrāz**.

فرع

farʿ (pl. *furūʿ*) 1. also **al-nuskhah al-farʿ** – copy, apograph; witness (MR, 94: *wa-yakfī muqābalatuh bi-farʿ qūbila bi-aṣl al-shaykh*; LC, 23) 2. note, annotation (TM, 191: *wa-lā yusawwiduh bi-naql al-masāʾil wa-al-furūʿ al-gharībah*; KZ, 95: *kāna ʿalā al-aṣl al-manqūl minhu hādhā al-farʿ mā ṣūratuh*...) 3. script derived from the original

(principal) script (aṣl, q.v.) (UD, 15; SM, 269) 4. argument resulting from a legal point, aṣl; application as opposed to theory, abbrev. ʿ (AD, 131).

tafrīf – interlacing, scroll (FI, 87, 88; JL, 93; KR, 82).

فرغ

farāgh (pl. farāghāt) 1. also **tafrīgh** (MO, 41) – end, completion, execution; one of the standard words introducing a colophon (tail of the text), e.g. kāna or waqa‘a or wāfaqa al-farāgh, faragha min tafrīgh 2. also **qayd al-farāgh** – colophon (LC, 23, 26; GA, 289) 3. blank, lacuna (LC, 23).

فرك

farkah (MN, 116) – thinner part of a letter (stoke) at its bend (JM, 17: al-qatṭ al-muḥarraf yuẓhir al-farakāt fī al-kitābah wa-al-farkah riqqat al-zāwiyah; KH, 37; LM, 42).

فسر

tafsīr (pl. tafāsīr) 1. explication, comment; commentary on a given work (usually but not necessarily relating to the text of the Qur‘ān) (FN, 350: fassarahā fī thalāth maqālāt), comp. sharḥ 2. commentary and/or translation, e.g. from Greek into Arabic (EI, X, 83).

mufasssir – commentator.

فص

faṣṣ (pl. fuṣūṣ) – lobe (in design) (JL, 103: buḥur mustaṭīlah dhāt fuṣūṣ fī nihāyatihā; MD, 128: dā‘irah min fuṣūṣ – scalloped circle).

فصل

fāṣil(ah) (pl. fawāṣil) – mark (such as a circle, letter hā‘, disc, three dots, three ‘inverted commas’) used as a textual divider; paragraph mark (TP, 55; LC, 23; AK, 351; MS, 28: **fawāṣil al-khams**, **fawāṣil al-‘ashr**; SA, III, 146: fa-al-nussākh yaj‘alūn li-dhālik dā‘irah tufaṣṣil bayna al-kalāmayn; IR, 245).

faṣl (pl. fuṣūl), **tafṣīl** 1. word division (in a text); space between words or passages; spacing (TP, 55; MM, 134, 138; SA, III, 145-146) 2. division of a composition into fuṣūl (FK, I, no.546: wa-qad faraghtu min hādhā al-kitāb wa-taḥṣīlih wa-tafṣīlih) 3. chapter (SD, II, 271).

faṣl al-khiṭāb – (in epistolography and diplomatic) conclusion of the formal greetings by the words ‘amma ba’dū’; place separating the doxological and doctrinal formulae from the preface proper (AA, 37; TP, 53, n.20), comp. ba’dīyah.

فض

fiḍḍah – silver, silver-based ink (UK, 130-133; MB, 92; MP, 33).

فضح

(qalam) **al-faḍḍāh**, or **faḍḍāh al-naskh** see matn.

فضل

faḍl – inner or outer margin (SA, III, 50: an yakūn al-faḍl min jānibay al-qirṭās mutasāwiyan fī al-miqdār).

فقر

fiqrah (pl. fiqar) – passage, section of a text, paragraph (LC, 23; AK, 351).

فقط

tafqīṭ – writing the word **faqaṭ** ‘only’ (closing formula found at the end of colophons and marginal glosses), abbrev. ط (often represented in the form of a logograph) (CI, I, xiii; SD, II, 273; DM), comp. ta’mīn, tatmīm.

فك

fakk (pl. fukūk) – book cover (HN, 385; BA, III, 372: wa-huwa mā yastur al-awrāq min jānibayh), comp. shidq.

mafkūk, mufakkak – loose, disbound (e.g. **al-nuskhah al-mufakkakah**).

فندق

fanīq (pl. funuq) – case, box (KC, 45).

فهرس

fihris, fihrist (pl. fahāris) 1. table of contents (LC, 23) 2. record of attested study 3. list, catalogue (SD, II, 286; EI, II, 743-744) 4. bibliography.

fahrasah 1. record of attested study, comp. mashyakhah 2. cataloguing.

فيد

fā'idah (pl. fawā'id) 1. digressional remark (in a text) (SD, II, 293) 2. marginal note, gloss; nota bene (notabilia), abbrev. ف or فيه (CM, 52, 66, 149, 207; LC, 23; AR, 36), also **fā'idat al-aṣl**, abbrev. فصل or فصل (CA, 49, 50).

ق

قانون

qānūn (pl. qawānīn) – trapezium-shaped instrument (used for creating compartments and frames, tabyīt, on book covers) (TS, 32; AG, 107).

قب

Qubbat al-Islām – epithet of the city of Basra.

Qubbat al-Ṣakhrāh – the Dome of the Rock (the Mosque of 'Umar in Jerusalem).

taqbīb – rounding (backing) the spine (of a book) (TS, 15).

al-qafā' al-muqabbab see qafan.

قَبْر

qubūr (sg. qabr, lit. 'grave') – pen box (EI, IV, 471).

قَبْطَال

qubṭal, qubṭāl (qabāṭil) – ruler, straightedge (TS, 12: wa-yaḥtāj qubṭālan wa-hiya miṣṭarah; AG, 107; SD, II, 302).

قَبْل

qabla – before, abbrev. ق (when used for a transposed word) (LE, 137), see also taqdīm.

muqābalah – 1. collation (of the text with the exemplar either in the presence of the shaykh or not) (MR, 94: afḍal al-muqābalah an yamsik huwa wa-shaykhuh kitābayhimā ḥāla al-samā'; MH, 92: 'alā al-ṭālib muqābalat kitābih bi-aṣl samā'ih; TP, 56, n.52; EI, VII, 490-492), comp. mu'āraḍah 2. collation note (statement).

muqābil – collator; corrector.

قَحْم

iqḥām – interpolation (LL, II, 2985: ḥarf muqḥamah, letter inserted without reason; AD, 138), comp. zā'idah.

قَد

qadd, taqdīd – cutting (of leather, etc.) into strips (lengthwise) (KD, II, 701; AA, 109), comp. qaṭṭ.

qidd (pl. aqudd) – strip (of leather).

miqaddah – crescent-shaped trimming knife (TS, 10, 11, 18, 24; AG, 107).

قَدَس

taqdīs – the formula of benediction 'qaddasa Allāh sirrahu (rūḥa-hu)', abbrev. ق د س / ق د / ق د ه / ق د ه / ق د ه (TP, 54, n.37; CI, I,xiii; CI, II, xiv).

قَدَم

muqaddam – fore-edge; fore-edge flap (TS, 16: al-muqaddam wa-huwa al-ṣadr; also TS, 17, 26, 27: ṭurraṭ al-muqaddam wa-al-udhn; TS, 28: min nāḥiyat al-ḥabk wa-al-muqaddam; AG, 107).

muqaddimah – forward, preface, introduction (EI, VII, 495-496).

al-taqdīm wa-al-ta'khīr – transposition (of words), abbrev. ق or م for taqdīm or muqaddam and خ for ta'khīr or mu'akhkhar or م م for both muqaddam and mu'akhkhar; م خ for mu'akhkhar muqaddam; م خ for muqaddam mu'akhkhar (TN, 52; TP, 59; MI, 120, 173), comp. al-qalb al-makānī.

قَر

taqrīr (pl. taqārīr) – marginal note, gloss; collection of glosses, commentary (AD, 139).

قَرَأَ

qārī' (pl. qurrā') – reader, prelector; reciter.

qirā'ah 1. reading, recitation (LC, 26) 2. manner of recitation, punctuation and vocalization of the Qur'ānic text (DM; EI, V, 127-129) 3. variant reading (varia lectio), lection (especially relating to the text of the Qur'ān) (AL, I, 26; TP, 51), comp. ḥarf.

ijāzat al-qirā'ah – audition (recitation) certificate (beginning with the word qara'a, qurī'a or qara'tu) (e.g. TP, 53, n.25; KF, II, 494-498), comp. samā'.

maqrū'ah (pl. maqrū'āt) – work for which an 'ijāzat al-qirā'ah' was granted (LM, 78: min maqrū'ātih wa-masmū'ātih).

قَرَبَ

qirāb (pl. aqribah) 1. sheath (SK, 104; SA, II, 466) 2. sleeve case (TS, 35-36; AG, 110).

al-qirāb al-mabnī – case or box (built around a form) (TS, 36; AG, 110).

al-qirāb al-makhrūz – sewn case or box (TS, 36; AG, 110).

قرص

qurṣ (pl. aqrāṣ) disc (in decoration) (ZM, 47).

qarṣ, qarīṣ – pressing, putting something into a press (ST, index, 19; MP, 63).

qarrāṣ – bookbinder's press; screw press (MB, 103: miqrāḍ (!), elsewhere, qarrāḍ and qarrāṣ; IA, 59).

miftāḥ al-qarrāṣ – press screw (IA, 60).

قرصع

qarṣa'ah – fine, compact writing (KM, IV, sifr 13, 5: qarṣa'tu al-kitāb qarmaṭtuh; IK, 94).

قرض

miqrāḍ (pl. maqāriḍ) – (pair of) scissors (TS, 10, 21; AG, 107; ST, index, 19; IK, 91-92; IB, 44; QS, II, 417).

qurāḍah – slip (of paper) (UI, 20).

قرطبون

qartabūn – square (an instrument) (TS, 18; AG, 107; ST, index, 19; MP, 63; IB, 44).

قرطس

qirṭās, qurṭās, qarṭās (Gr. khartes) (pl. qarāṭis, qarāṭīs) – sheet or roll of papyrus (EI, V, 173-174; EI, VIII, 261; AE, 66-93; WS, 66-76; IW, 82-91), parchment (AE, 108; EI, VIII, 407) or paper (SA, II, 485: al-qirṭās wa-al-ṣaḥīfah wa-humā bi-ma'nān wāḥid wa-huwa kāghad; KK, 50; AE, 98; UD, 11: wa-l-yakun al-qirṭās fī ḥāl al-kitābah 'alā al-rukbah al-yumnā), comp. ṣaḥīfah.

qarāṭīsī – papyrus maker (KF, I, 17).

قرظ

taqrīz(ah) (pl. taqārīz, taqrīzāt) – approbation (appreciation) note or statement attached to a manuscript, often in the form of laudatory verses or encomia for the promotion of a newly composed work;

blurb (SA, XIV, 335-340: taqrīdāt (!); BL; AM, nos. 4, 34, 83, 112, 122, 136, 143, 313), comp. muṭāla‘ah.

muqarriz – blurb-writer (BL, 182, 186).

قرمد / قرمط

qarmadah, qarmaṭah – fine, compact writing (KM, IV, sifr 13, 5: al-qarmadah wa-al-qarmaṭah diqqat al-kitābah; TP, 55; SK, 120: fa-in jama‘a al-ḥurūf wa-qāraba al-suṭūr ba‘dahā min ba‘ḍ qīla qarmaṭahā).

قرمه

qirmah see **siyāq**.

قرن

qurnah – corner (MB, 112: al-qurnah al-yumnā, al-qurnah al-yusrā).
(**qalam**) **al-muqtarin** – script derived from al-riqā‘, the main characteristic of which is that it is executed in lines grouped in twos with a large interline spacing between each group (AS, 146; JM, 41).

قسم

miqsam(ah) (lit. ‘divider’) – tool (most probably a compass) used in leather work (lil-naqsh) (IA, 60, see also UA, 393: not defined).

قص

qaşş, taqşış – shaving, trimming (ST, index, 19; HT, 80).

miqaşş (pl. maqāşş) – (pair of) scissors (UK, 153; IB, 42; DS, 181; MB, 103; IA, 59; IK, 91-92: wa-yuqāl huwa al-miqaşş wa-al-miqtā‘ wa-al-miqrāḍ wa-al-jalam).

قصب

qaşab(ah) – reed; reed pen (IK, 86; EI, IV, 682; EI, IV, 471: **baḥrī** – reeds from a seashore and **şukhrī** – reeds from a rocky ground; AA, 69).

قَصْدِير

qaṣdīr – tin, tin-based ink (UK, 130; MP, 32).

قَصَم

qaṣamah, quṣāmah – a shaving (from a reed) (KU, 154).

miqṣamah – plaquette (for nibbing a calamus) (KU, 153), comp. miqatṭ.

قَضَم

qaḍm – syn. qatṭ (nibbing) (IK, 86).

qaḍīm(ah) – white hide, leather (IW, 72-74; KM, I, sifr 4, 102; IK, 93).

قَط

qatṭ(ah) – cutting (of the point of the nib), nibbing; the point itself; cutting (of leather, etc.) breadthwise (KD, II, 701: wa-kull qatṭ ‘arḍan qatṭ; AA, 109-110; KK, 50; KU, 153; qatṭtu al-qalam qatṭan idhā qatṭu min ṭarafih al-mabrī li-yastawī; SA, II, 462-463; LM, 39: wa-qad ikhtalafa al-kuttāb fī qatṭ al-qalam ‘alā khamsat madhāhib).

al-qatṭ al-muḥarraf – oblique point of the nib (SA, II, 462; LL, I, 551: muḥarraf – ‘reed pen nibbed bliquely; having the right ‘tooth’ of the nib higher, i.e. longer than the left’; LM, 39: fa-ṭā’ifah taquṭṭ muḥarrafan fī jamī’ al-aqlām wa-huwa ikhtiyār Yāqūt al-Musta’šimī; LM, 42: fa-ammā al-muḥarraf fa-yakhtaṣṣ bi-al-muḥaqqaq wa-al-rayḥān, wa-al-muḥarraf yuraqqiq al-muntaṣibāt ka-al-alif wa-ra’s al-lām).

al-qatṭ al-muṣawwab – ‘nibbing in which the exterior of the writing-reed is made to extend beyond the pith, opposed to qā’im’ (LL, II, 1742; MJ, 217).

al-qatṭ al-mustawī – even, straight point of the nib (SA, II, 462); see also istiwā’.

al-qatṭ al-qā’im – ‘nibbing in which the pith and the exterior of the reed are made of equal length, opposite to muṣawwab’ (LL, II, 2996; MJ, 217).

quṭāṭah – a shaving (from a reed) (KU, 154).

miqatṭ(ah) (pl. miqātṭ) – nibbing plaquette (made of wood, ivory,

etc. for nibbing a calamus) (UK, 76; MB, 65; SA, II, 468; ND, 54, 62; SK, 105: maqatt; AT, 133).

قَطْع

qaṭʿ (pl. aqṭāʿ) – format (of a sheet or codex) (EI, IV, 742; IP, 45; MK, 83: qaṭʿ niṣf al-waraqah, niṣf al-waraqah al-kabīrah, thulth, rubʿ, thumn al-waraqah al-kabīrah, niṣf al-thumn; LS, 70: qaṭʿ al-kāmil, al-kāmil al-kabīr, qaṭʿ al-niṣf, qaṭʿ al-rubʿ, qaṭʿ al-thumn; MM, 131: al-qaṭʿ al-kabīr, al-qaṭʿ al-ṣaghīr), comp. qālib.

qāṭiʿ – artist skilled in the art of paper cutting, decoupage (ER, VI, 475).

al-qāṭiʿ wa-al-maqtūʿ – ‘cutting and the cut’, principle of the interlace, ḍirs (AG, 110).

qiṭʿah 1. piece of something (e.g. piece of poetry) 2. piece of calligraphy, calligraph (AC, 42: adhantu bi-waḍʿ al-kitbah li-muḥarrir hādhihi al-qiṭʿah al-mubārakah; NI, 180); piece of calligraphic decoupage (ER, VI, 475).

qiṭʿat al-taʾrīkh see taʾrīkh.

miqṭaʿ (pl. maqāṭiʿ) 1. (pair of) scissors (IK, 91); cutting instrument (DM) 2. instrument for fixing or removing decoration from book covers (TS, 11; AG, 107), comp. mishraṭ.

taqṭīʿ 1. splitting (of a word at the end of the line) (MS, 21) 2. tear(s) (SJ, no.36: fihā kharm wa-taqṭīʿ; SJ, no.46: awrāq muqatṭaʿah) 3. format (of a book) (TL, 85: wa-yanbaghī an yakūn taqṭīʿ al-kitāb murabbaʿan fa-innahu taqṭīʿ Abī Ḥanīfah wa-huwa aysar ʿalā al-raḥ wa-al-waḍʿ wa-al-muṭālaʿah; WS, 90) 4. also **qaṭʿah** – art of paper cutting, papercut(s); collage, decoupage, filigree work (IP, 144; PA, 60; ER, VI, 475; HD, 120, 127: qāṭiʿ, muqatṭaʿ).

muqatṭaʿāt – disjointed, mysterious letters at the beginning of 26 chapters of the Qurʾān (EI, VII, 509).

قَعْد

Dhū al-Qaʿdah (al-sharīfah, al-ḥarām) – the eleventh month of the Muslim calendar, abbrev. قَعْد / ذَا (OS, 89).

قَفْل

qufl (pl. aqfāl, qufūl) – clasp (for fastening bookbindings) (NH, 377).

قَفْو

qafan, qafāʾ – spine (back of a codex) (TS, 14, 15; AG, 107; ST, index, 20).

al-qafāʾ al-muqabbab – round back (TS, 15; AG, 107).

al-qafāʾ al-musaṭṭah – straight, flat back (TS, 15; AG, 107).

taqfiyah – backing (TS, 15-17; AG, 107).

قَلْب

qalb, al-qalb al-makānī – transposition (of letters) (MQ, 641), comp. taḥrīf.

qālib, qālab (pl. qawālib) 1. mould (UK, 147, 148) 2. format (of a sheet or book) (TS, 14, 26; LC, 26; ST, index, 19; MK, 83: mujalladah ṣaghīrat al-qālib; AD, 145: qālib al-kāmil – in folio, qālib al-niṣf – in quarto; KC, passim: fī al-qālib al-kabīr; fī qālib rubāʾī, fī al-rubāʾī, fī al-rubāʾī lil-ṣighar, fī al-thumānī; HT, lin.123: al-ribāʿ wa-al-thimān; KJ, no.3, 28-29: qālib al-thumn, qālib al-thumn al-ṣaghīr, qālib al-thumn al-kabīr, qālib al-rubʿ al-kabīr), comp. qatʿ 3. stamp (for book cover design) (IA, 59; FI, 88; FZ, 214; JL, 93) 4. folder (IB, 43).

miqlab (pl. maqālib) (Turk. mikleb) – envelope flap (MT, 202-203).

قَلَد

qilādah (pl. qalāʾid) – round center-piece (on book covers) (LC, 26).

taqlīd – imitation of the master calligrapher's work by reproducing it from memory (MY, 83; DW, 68).

قَلَم

qalam (pl. aqlām, qilām) 1. piece of wood (KK, 49; TS, 37) 2. calamus, reed pen; also **qalam al-qaṣab**, as opposed to **qalam al-nuḥās**, i.e. copper pen, see TW, 232; TC, 13 (AA, 69: **al-aqlām al-qaṣabīyah**; IK, 45-87; SA, II, 44-465; KU, 153: al-qalam al-unbūb min al-qaṣab wa-al-qinnā (?); KK, 49-50; AT, 133-134; UK, 71-75; MB, 59-64; EI, IV, 471) 3. script; hand, handwriting; ductus.

qalam al-rīsh see rīsh.

qalam al-shaʿr – brush pen (UK, 144, 356; MP, 38-39; MB, 100).

al-qalam al-Fāṣī (al-Rūmī) see khatt.

al-aqlām al-mabsūṭah (al-yābisah) see mabsūṭ, yābis.

al-aqlām al-muraṭṭabah (al-layyinah, al-muqawwarah) see tarṭīb, layyin, muqawwar.

al-qalam al-mushajjar – cryptographic script, otherwise known as the alphabet of Dioscorides, used in talismans and amulets (IT, I, 335).

al-aqlām al-mawzūnah – ‘weighed scripts’, an appellation given by Ibn al-Nadīm to some 24 ancient scripts used in the early centuries of Islam (FN, 11-12).

al-aqlām al-sittah – the six main calligraphic scripts based on the principle of proportionality (tanāsib): al-muḥaqqaq, al-rayḥān, al-naskh, al-thuluth, al-tawqīʿ and al-riqāʿ, and used extensively in the main Arab lands, Iran and Turkey throughout the medieval and post-medieval periods (AS, 144).

al-aqlām al-uṣūl – principal scripts from which other scripts are derived (AS, 145).

qulāmah – a shaving (from a reed) (KU, 153; IK, 85).

miqlam(ah) (pl. maqālim) 1. pen box (case) (IK, 85; AI, 160: fī al-sikkīn wa-al-miqaṭṭ ijtimāʿuhumā maʿa al-aqlām fī al-miqlamah; SA, II, 465: sawāʿan kāna min nafs al-dawāh aw ajnabiyan ʿanhā; IA, 63, n.18) 2. compartment for reed pens in the writing case (dawāh) (DS, 179: al-miqlamah wa-hiya al-jūnah allatī takūn fihā al-aqlām wa-naḥwihā min ālāt al-dawāh; AT, 132).

taqlīm – paring, trimming (a reed), hence **miqlam**, a knife for taqlīm (IK, 85).

قمح

qamḥah – small tool (resembling a wheat grain) (TS, 11; AG, 109).

قمطر

qimṭar(ah) (pl. qamāṭir) – container (made of reeds woven together for storing books); chest (LL, II, 2565). For a list of words used for such containers see SL, II, 43, 49-51.

قنطرة

qanṭarat al-lisān – fore-edge flap (KF, I, 43; KR, 79).

قور

taqwīr – rounding (of letters) (AS, 144), comp. tarṭīb, taqwīs.

al-aqlām al-muqawwarah (al-muraṭṭabah, al-layyinah) – curvilinear scripts such as al-thuluth, al-tawqīʿ and al-riqāʿ (SA, III, 11; AS, 144).

قوس

taqwīs – syn. taqwīr, tadwīr, rounding (of letters, especially descenders) (KH, 37).

muqawwas – sublinear stroke (line) forming an arch of the circle, as in sīn, qāf and nūn (UD, 11; LM, 49: wa-al-muqawwas huwa alladhī lā yumkin an yufraḍ ‘alayhi thalāth nuqaṭ ‘alā samt wāḥid ka-dawr al-nūn wa-al-sīn wa-al-qāf wa-naḥwihā).

قول

qawl (pl. aqwāl) – quotation, passage; in commentaries and glosses usually introduced by qāla or qawluhu, abbrev. ق / قه, as well as fa-qāla, yuqāl, fa-yuqāl, abbrev. فيق / يق / فق respectively (CI, II, xiv; TP, 55; MI, 154, 155, 190; MU, XII, 238).

maqālah 1. short composition, treatise, tract 2. chapter in a composition (such as in the *Fihrist* of Ibn al-Nadīm).

قولب

qawlabah – moulding (of paper) (AB, 90; DM), comp. qālīb.

قوم

qāʾimah (pl. qawāʾim) – leaf, folio (folium) (MK, 82, 83, 86; DF, III, 190, 283, 327, 377; KF, I, 222: wa-kaʾannahu matá fasada maʾahu shayʾ abṭala tilka al-qāʾimah; KF, I, 90: yaktub al-mustamlī awwal al-qāʾimah ‘majlis amlāhu shaykhunā fulān’).

al-qatṭ al-qāʾim see qatṭ.

mustaqīm – upright, erect; rectilinear (of letters and scripts) (e.g. RN, 22), comp. mabsūt.

قوى

taqwiyyah (pl. taqāwin) – endpaper (UK, 159: ammā al-‘Irāqīyūn fa-innahum yalzīqūn al-kitāb bi-waraqah minhu bilā hādhihi al-baṭā’in wa-tusammā al-taqāwī; MP, 43).

al-waraq al-muqawwá see waraq.

قيد

qayd (pl. quyūd) – note, statement.

qayd al-tamalluk see tamalluk.

qayd al-farāgh see farāgh.

taqyīd 1. committing something to writing; composition (TE, 17; TP, 51: taqyīd bi-al-kitāb; SD, II, 430: ‘ce qu’on note, ce qu’on couche par écrit’), comp. tadwīn 2. copying, transcription (TE, 17) 3. tying, binding; sewing endbands (headbands) (MB, 113; IA, 62) 4. diacritical pointing (of letters) (BA, III, 371: naqaṭtu al-kitāb wa-a’jamtuhu wa-shakaltuhu wa-qayyadtuh; IK, 87: **muqayyadah** – pointed; LL, II, 2576) 5. (pl. taqāyīd, taqyīdāt) – marginal note, gloss (LC, 27).

muqayyid 1. author 2. glossator (AM, no.187).

ك

al-kāf al-mashkūlah (al-mashqūqah) see shakl and shaqq.

كازن

kāzan – mallet (UK, 153; IB, 43).

كاغذ

kāghad, kāghid, kāghadh (pl. kawāghid, kawāghīd, kughūd, AJ, 136), **kāghīṭ, kāghīt** (ST, passim) (pl. kawāghīṭ, WS, 77) – paper (EI, IV, 419-420; AE, 98-105; WS, 77-85), comp. waraq.

al-kāghad al-Islāmī, al-Rūmī, al-Ṭalḥī, etc. see waraq.

kāghidah – sheet, leaf (of paper) (AJ, 136).

kaghghād, kāghidī, kawāghidī – paper maker (AJ, 136; WS, 85-86).
ṭayy al-khāghad see ṭayy.
kāghadkhānah – paper mill (HN, 374).

كَب

kubbah (pl. kubab) – ball (of fibre, in papermaking) (OM).
munkabb – inclined, downward sloping curved stroke (from right to left or vice versa, as in the beginning of wāw) (UD, 11; LM, 49), comp. munḥanin.

كَبَس

mikbas, makbas – bookbinder's press (QS, II, 416; SD, II, 440; UA, 393).
takbīs – pressing (QS, II, 416).

كَبِج

kabīkaj 1. *Ranunculus asiaticus*, Asiatic crowfoot (bot.) 2. talismanic word (used as an invocation against worms and insects, known in the Maghreb as kaykataj, q.v.) (US, 49-53; TS, 40; AG, 107; KL, 43: iḥbas yā kabīkaj al-araḍah yā ḥafīẓ yā Allāh yā Allāh yā Allāh; CM, 88: yā kabīkaj yā kabīkaj yā kabīkaj huwa al-ḥafīẓ huwa huwa faqat; CM, 169).

كَتَب

kath, kitbah (MH, 91; TH, 21: naskh al-kitāb: TH, 27), **kitāb, kitābah** – writing, composition; copying, transcription.
kitbah – the word 'kataba' or 'katabahu/hā' (abbrev. ك / س, TE, 16) used as part of the signature or autograph of the writer (copyist, calligrapher) (HI, 90, 91: ajāza lahu bi-al-kitbah; NI, 183: al-ijāzah bi-al-kitbah; wa-ajaztu lahu an yaktub fī kitābatih al-kitbah; CT, 45: 'hence katabah, Turkish **ketebehü**, becomes a term equivalent to colophon').
kātīb (pl. kuttāb, katabah) 1. secretary, amanuensis (EI, IV, 554-760); scribe, scrivener 2. fully-fledged (licensed) calligrapher (NI, 180), comp. muḥarrir.

kitāb – writing; piece of writing; letter, document; book, booklet; chapter in a book (SL, I, 23; IK, 95: wa-yuqāl lil-kitāb ayḍan mawaddah, wa-majallah wa-waḥy; EI, V, 207-208).

kitābkhānah, kutubkhānah – library.

asfal (sufl) al-kitāb 1. tail (of a book or document) 2. spine (of a codex) (HT, lin.115).

a'lā ('ulw) al-kitāb – head (of a book or document).

al-kitāb al-awwal – 'Uthmanic canon, codex (MA, IV, 86); archetype.

al-kitāb al-mukarras see kurrās.

al-kitābah al-mansūbah – see khaṭṭ.

kutubī – bookseller (KF, I, 165, 166: sūq al-kutubīyīn; QS, II, 383-384).

maktab – place designated for writing, copying (KK, 53; KD, II, 705; NH, 388: **mukattab**).

maktabah – library (EI, VI, 197-200).

maktūb (pl. maktūbāt) – piece of calligraphy, calligraph (DP, 53).

muktib, mukattib (e.g. Ibn al-Ṣā'igh al-Mukattib) – teacher of calligraphy; master calligrapher (KK, 51; KM, IV, sifr 13, 4; KD, II, 705).

istiktāb – copying on request (for a patron) (KM, IV, sifr 13, 4: idhā amartuhu an yaktub laka aw ittakhadhtuhu kātiban; KK, 51; OS, 88).

كثر

kathīrā' – tragacanth, paste obtained from tragacanth (DM).

miktharah – receptacle (for paste) (DD, I, 391: ka-al-minshāh; UA, 393).

كحل

kuḥl – antimony; kohl.

akḥal – dark-blue ink (or black with bluish luster) (DG, 187).

mikḥalah (pl. makāḥil), **mukḥul** – kohl container (UA, 393; IR, 230).

mikḥāl see mirwad.

takḥīl 1. pointing (of a wall) (FT, 414) 2. outlining, outline (of letters) (DH, no.383: 'iddat khatamāt bi-khaṭṭihimā maktūbah bi-al-dhahab al-mukaḥḥal bi-al-lāzuward); outlining, outline (of designs on book covers) (IB, 68), comp. miṣṭarat al-takḥīl 3. fine (thin) lines (in

writing) (UK, 142: al-diqqah fī rasm al-ḥurūf) 4. small, pallet-like tool (used in the interlace) (TS, 12, 33; AG, 110: takḥīl al-ḍirs, takḥīl al-ṭawīl).

كحلبون

kaḥlibūn – screw press (UK, 154; IB, 42).

كذا

kadhā – thus, sic, abbrev. ك (MI, 161; TN, 52: wa-tūḍa‘ k fī ba‘ḍ al-hawāmish ishāratān ilā annahu ‘kadhā fī al-aṣl’); for the use of ‘ṣawābuhu kadhā’ and ‘la‘allahu kadhā’ see TP, 57).

takdhīyah – the kadhā-statement (MI, 48, 162).

كر

tikrār, mukarrar (or **al-ḥarf al-mukarrar**), **takarrur** – ditto-graphic error, dittography (e.g. TM, 184).

كرس

kurrās(ah) (Syr.) (pl. karārīs) 1. also **al-kitāb al-mukarras** – codex form of a book (AB, 131; TS, 14; AG, 107) 2. quire (gathering), abbrev. ك / ك (KM, IV, sifr 13, 8: summiyat bi-dhālika li-takarrusiḥā ay inḍimām ba‘ḍihā ilā ba‘ḍ; TS, passim; CI, II, x; SK, 321: al-kurrāsah li-annahā ṭabaqah ‘alā ṭabaqah; SL, II, 60).

takrīs – collation (of quires) (HT, lin.92).

kursī – book cradle, reading stand (MD, 132), comp. raḥl.

kursī al-ḥajar – support (for a stone slab) (IA, 60).

كرسف

kursuf(ah) – tow (wad of raw cotton or wool used in an inkwell) (KK, 48; IK, 84; AA, 100; SA, II, 468-471; KU, 154: wa-huwa jawf al-quṭn wa-yuqāl lahā al-‘uṭbah; KD, II, 700).

کرش

kirsh (pl. kurūsh), **takrīsh** – letter-head or serif in the shape of a barb or dot (blob) (KJ, no.1, 39, 41), comp. tarwīs.

کرم

karīm, mukarram – honorific (epithet) of muṣḥaf, Qur'ān, khatmah.
takrīm – the formula of benediction 'karrama Allāh wajhahu' (used after the name of the Imām 'Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib).
al-mukarram – epithet of the months of Shawwāl and Sha'bān (q.v.).

کرة

kurah – wooden ball (for burnishing paper) (NH, 363).

کسر

miksar (pl. makāsir) – fold (in a leaf of paper) (OM).
al-ta'rīkh bi-al-kusūr see ta'rīkh.

کشده

kashīdah – long line or stroke (like a long fatḥah) used to embellish the script (MN, 128).

کشط

kasḥṭ – erasure (by means of a pen knife or scraper) (MM, 137; TP, 58); syn. of bashr (LF, 79; IR, 237: bi-al-ṣadr lā bi-al-sinn kasḥṭ fī al-waraq).
mikshaṭ, sikkīn al-kasḥṭ – scraper, knife (for making erasures) (IR, 274; NH, 389; DD, I, 391).

کشکول

kashkūl – commonplace book, comp. tadhkirah, kunnāsh.

كعب

kaʿb (pl. kuʿūb) – spine (back of a codex) (MB, passim; IA, 61; JL, 84, 90).

al-kaʿb al-muhallal – round back (MB, 109).

al-kaʿb al-murabbaʿ – straight, flat back (MB, 109).

كف

kaff(ah), kaff al-waraq – quire (Fr. main de papier), usually 25 sheets (PT, 39; AJ, 145; AB, 92; WS, 92, 94), comp. dast, rizmah.

كفت

takfīt – inlaying, inlay (SA, II, 442; FT, 406).

كلب

kallābah, kullābah – (pair of) pincers, tongs (MB, 109; DM).

كندة

kindah – sexagonal element (in a Mamluk book cover design) (JN, 95, 97; DE, 977; KR, 82).

كنش

kunnāsh(ah) (pl. kanānīsh) – 1. commonplace book (LC, 25; HB, 233), comp. tadhkirah, kashkūl 2. syn. of barnāmaj or fahrasah (in the Maghreb).

كنى / كنو

kunyah (pl. kunan) – patronymic, consisting of abū or umm followed by the name of the son/daughter (EI, V, 395-396).

mukannan – named by (known by) his/her kunyah.

al-taʾrīkh al-kināʾī see taʾrīkh.

كوفي

(**al-khaṭṭ**) **al-Kūfī** 1. originally and properly speaking, an early script associated with the scribal circles of Kūfah (FN, 8: fa-awwal al-khuṭūṭ al-‘Arabīyah al-khaṭṭ al-Makkī wa-ba’dahu al-Madanī thumma al-Baṣrī thumma al-Kūfī) 2. generic name used loosely for a host of early Arabic ‘non-proportioned scripts’ currently distinguished as the ‘Ḥijāzī scripts’, ‘Early Abbasid scripts’, ‘New Abbasid style’ and the ‘Abbasid bookhand’ (see e.g. AV, 27ff; MV, 363; FN, 8-9, 11-13; OD), comp. Ḥijāzī.

كَيْكُتَجْ

kaykataj – talismanic word (used in the Maghreb as an invocation against worms and insects) (TS, 40; AG, 107; US, 49), comp. kabīkaj.

ل

لازورد

lāzuward, **lāzaward** – lapis lazuli, ultramarine; azure ink, paint (UK, 114, 119; MP, 27, 29; SA, II, 478).

لأ

(**qalam**) **al-lu’lu’** – script akin to al-thuluth al-khaṭīf (i.e. probably al-tawqī‘) in which vertical and flat strokes are less than five dots in length (AS, 145; JM, 85).

لبس

talbīs – sizing (of paper) (OH, 139).

لحق

laḥaq (pl. alḥāq, liḥāq), **ilḥāq**, **mulḥaq** – omission; insertion (TP,

58; IK, 94: idhā naqasha min al-kitābah shay' fa-alḥaqahu bayna al-suṭūr aw fī 'urḍ al-kitāb wa-huwa al-laḥaq; TM, 185; LC, 24; JA, I, 279).

لحم

laḥm Sulaymān – screw press (UK, 154; IB, 42).

لِزَق

lizāq – paste, adhesive (KD, II, 703), comp. liṣāq.

لِزَم

lazm – pressing (TS, 14).

milzam(ah) (pl. malāzim) 1. bookbinder's press (UK, 155; TS, 10, 11, 14, 15; AG, 107; SA, II, 481) 2. large paper clip (made of copper or other metal to hold the head of a leaf or roll or quire in place while copying) (AT, 133; SA, II, 481; IR, 230, n.24; DD, I, 390) 3. copyist's book support; book cradle (TW, 169; WA, 12: 'ūd al-nasākhah or maḥmal min khashab yaftaḥ wa-yaṭwī fa-yuḍa' 'alayhi al-kitāb al-muntasakh minhu ḥattā yartafī' an al-arḍ wa-yastanid jāni-bāhu ilā lawḥatay al-malzam).

malzamah (pl. malāzim) 1. quire (often encountered in Maghrebi lithographed books, where each gathering is numbered separately), abbrev. م (LC, 25; LE, 137) 2. sheet, leaf (of paper) (AD, 157; LE, 137) 3. large size bifolio (bifolium) (TC, 25).

لِسَن

lisān (pl. alsinah) – envelope flap (ST, index, 20; ST, 13; HT, lin.109, 119; LC, 25; JL, 90; MM, 132).

qanṭarat al-lisān see qanṭarah.

لِشَى

mutalāshin – worn, damaged (TW, 55: fī sifr mutalāshin).

لصق

liṣāq (pl. alṣiqah) – paste, adhesive (SA, II, 480; SD, II, 530), comp. lizāq.

لعن

laʿnah – curse, malediction; the formula of malediction ‘laʿanahu Allāh’ or ‘laʿnat Allāh ‘alayhi’, abbrev. لع or لعنه (MI, 145, 167; RA, 26).

لف

laffah, lifāfah (pl. lafāʿif) – roll (of parchment or paper) (AB, 131; DM).

milaff 1. spool (DS, 181; DD, I, 391; IR, 230) 2. wrapper (DM).

لفح

lafḥ – tooling, stamping (HT, lin.166).

لفق

mulaffaq, al-nuskhah al-mulaffaqah – made-up copy (KC, passim).

لقب

laqab (pl. alqāb) – nickname; honorific title (EI, V, 618-631).

mulaqqab bi – known by (referred to) his/her laqab.

لقط

milqaṭ, milqāṭ (pl. malāqīṭ) 1. (pair of) tongs, pincers, tweezers (MB, 109) 2. implement for collecting shavings (small fragments) after erasure (UA, 393: limā shāna al-qalam; DD, I, 391: yalqaṭ baqāyā mā yaẓhar bi-al-waraq min athar al-kashṭ).

لقم

talqīm – inlaying, inlay (FT, 406).

لقى

mustalqin – line, stroke sloping (descending) from right to left and vice versa (as in the beginning of kāf, ṣād, yā' and rā') (UD, 11; LM, 49).

لك

lak, lakk (or lāk, DG, 194) 1. lac, crimson red pigment or ink (MS, 5: wa-al-lak lil-ḍammāt wa-al-fatḥāt wa-al-kasrāt; MB, 84-86) 2. lacquer, varnish (AB, 140).

لمع

lammā' – glossy, glazed, burnished (e.g. al-tadhhīb al-lammā', q.v.).

لمق

lamq – elegant writing, copying (TE, 16), comp. namq.

لمنم

lamlīmah – small tool (resembling an elephant's tusk ?) (TS, 11; AG, 109).

لوح

lawḥ(ah) (pl. alwāḥ, lawḥāt) 1. tablet (of any hard-surfaced material) (SL, II, 58-59) 2. wooden board (TS, 11, 24; HT, lin.123, 124) 3. wooden tablet (for burnishing gold or paper) (UK, 142-143; MB, 99; OM) 4. pasteboard (ST, 5) 5. panel (in decoration); illuminated piece (such as frontispiece, head- or tailpiece) (LC, 25; MS, 29, 31) 6. (Turk. levha) large panel (of calligraphy, usually framed).

lawḥ al-ṣadārah – frontispiece, headpiece (FT, 402).

lawḥ al-taṣlīb – see taṣlīb.

lawwāḥ – master decorator, illuminator (HD, 125).

talwīḥ – marginal note, gloss (DM).

al-maṣāḥif al-mulawwaḥah see muṣḥaf.

لوز

lawzah 1. oval figure 2. almond-shaped tool or stamp (UK, 156; IB, 44; TS, 11, 31; AG, 109; MB, 105; IA, 59, 60: lawzah wa-niṣf, ra's al-lawzah; see also nuqṭah) 3. central medallion (on a book cover), mandorla 4. lozenge-shaped element (in a Mamluk book cover design), also known as sarwah (q.v.).

talwīz – rounding ('giving an almond shape to') of the initial stroke of such letters as ṣād, ṭā' and ḥā' (KH, 38).

لوق

milwāq (pl. malāwīq) – spatula, stirrer (for mixing ink) (SA, II, 478; AT, 133; IR, 230; IB, 45; MJ, 208).

لون

lawn (pl. alwān) – colour; pigment, tint (EI, V, 698-707; AI, 148; JA, I, 250; NW, 10: tarkīb al-alwān).

talwīn 1. polychrome illumination (WA, 11; LC, 27) 2. tinting (of paper).

ليط

līṭ(ah) – bark (skin) of the reed (BA, III, 370: qishr al-qāṣab; IK, 86; see also the quotation under shaḥm).

talyīṭ 1. shaving off the bark of the reed (IK, 86: layyaṭtu min al-qalam līṭah qashartuhu) 2. placing a līṭah in the slit of the nib to increase the intake of ink (KD, II, 702; BA, III, 370).

ليف

līf al-shajar – bast fibres, paper pulp (OM).

ليق

līqah (pl. liyaq) 1. also **milāq** (UA, 393) tow (wad, tuft of unspun silk, wool or cotton used in an inkwell) (ST, index, 20; MP, 13, n. 55, 26-29; IK, 84; MJ, 203) 2. colour, tint (AD, 160) 3. coloured ink (SA, II, 477-478; UK, 111-119; MB, 79-84; MP, 26-29; AT, 133).

malīq (pl. amlīqah) 1. also **milāqah** (BA, III, 370) – compartment for ink (KD, II, 700: al-nuqrah allatī yuj‘al fīhā al-midād wa-al-ṣūf; AT, 133), comp. jūnah. 2. tow (of cotton or wool) (BA, III, 370).

لین

lāyyin – curvilinear (of a letter or script) (AS, 144; KH, 38: al-khaṭṭ al-lāyyin huwa alladhī fīhī al-tadwīr).

al-aqlām al-lāyyinah – curvilinear scripts, such as al-thuluth, al-tawqīf and al-riqā‘, comp. muraṭṭab, muqawwar.

م

متن

matn (pl. mutūn) 1. content (text) of a ḥadīth (as distinguished from the chain of transmitters who handed it down) (SL, II, 1; EI, VI, 843) 2. main body of the text (as opposed to margins); text-column (MU, V, 111: al-matn al-ṭarīqah al-mumtaddah min yamīn al-ṣulb wa-shamālīh; DF, V, 456: al-maktūbah fī matn al-kitāb ‘adā al-ḥāshiyah; MH, 89: yaḍbiṭuhā fī matn al-kitāb thumma yaktubuhā qubālata dhālik fī al-ḥāshiyah; AD, 161) 3. original (main) text (as opposed to a commentary, sharḥ or gloss, ḥāshiyah), abbrev. م (VA, no. 2828; MM, 139: wa-lahu fī kitābat sharḥ mamzūj bi-al-matn an yumayyiz al-matn bi-kitābatih bi-al-ḥumrah; EI, VI, 843) 4. central panel (on a book cover) as opposed to the border (FZ, 214; MD, 109; LC, 25).

(qalam) al-matn, also known as **faḍḍāḥ al-naskh**, **al-naskh al-faḍḍāḥ** and **al-waḍḍāḥ** – larger version of al-naskh (NA, IX, 222: wa-qalam al-naskh yatafarra‘u ‘anhu qalam al-matn wa-huwa ghalīẓuh wa-qalam al-ḥawāshī wa-huwa khafīfuh; AS, 146; JM, 64-66).

ḥard al-matn (HN, 251-252) or **jard (?) al-matn** – colophon (LC, 24; TP, 53).

mātin – author of the original composition, matn (as opposed to a commentator, shāriḥ) (JN, 1; SD, II, 568).

مثال

mithāl (pl. amthilah) – copy, transcript, apograph (CD, IV, pl.115: mithāl al-samāʿ), comp. šūrah.

مجمع

majmajah – scribbling (KM, IV, sifr 13, 7: takhlīṭ al-kitāb wa-ifsāduhu bi-al-qalam; BA, III, 371).

محر

tamḥīr – polishing (burnishing) with an oyster shell, **maḥārah** (q.v.) (KF, I, 30: fī ṣināʿat tajhīz al-raqq wa-ṣaqlīh wa-tamḥīrih wa-ṣabghih).

مطح

tamḥīṭ 1. process of softening leather (making it flexible, supple) (by rubbing it with a piece of wood) (ST, index, 21; KR, 79: dalk) 2. blind tooling, hence **mumahḥaṭ** – blind tooled (FI, 86; JL, 90), comp. ḥaṭṭ.

tamḥīṭ bi-al-dhahab – gold tooling (FI, 89).

محو

maḥw – ink removal; erasure, obliteration (by means of a cloth, khirqah, or licking) (TP, 58; UK, 138-140; MP, 36-37).

al-waraq al-māḥī see waraq.

مد / مط

madd, istimdād, maṭṭ, tamṭīṭ – elongation (of letters) (KU, 121-122; TP, 55; KH, 38; MJ, 238).

midād (pl. amiddah) – soot ink; ink (in general) (SK, 320: summiya al-midād midādan li-annahu yamudd al-qalam; SA, II, 471-477; UK, 79-90, MB, 67-71; MP, 13, n.52, 15-18; AT, 134-135; AE, 127-131; EI, VI, 1031), comp. ḥibr.

istimdād – the manner of dipping the pen in the inkwell (SA, III, 38; MJ, 216).

مدن

al-Madīnah (al-munawwarah), also known as **Madīnat al-Nabī** – Medina.

Madīnat al-Salām – Baghdad (DM).

(al-khaṭṭ) al-Madanī see Ḥijāzī and Kūfī.

مدى

mudyah (madyah, midyah) (pl. mudan, midan) – knife, pen knife (SA, II, 465-467; SK, 103-104; UA, 393; IR, 230, 231), comp. sikkīn.

مر

marrah – spatula (for mixing paper pulp) (OM).

مرض

tamrīḍ see ḍabbah, taḍbīb.

مزج

al-sharḥ al-mazjī (al-mamzūj) see sharḥ.

مسح

mash – rubbing, wiping (MB, 110, 114).

mish 1. sword (for rubbing leather) (UK, 166; IA, 60: misann al-mish) 2. coarse haircloth, sackcloth (DG, 202).

mimsaḥah – pen wiper (IR, 230; SA, II, 481-482; AT, 133; DD, I, 391).

مشألة

mash'alah – the formula of submission to the will of God 'mā shā'a Allāh' (MG, I, 484), comp. istithnā'.

مشط

misht, **mushṭ** – comb (IA, 60; IR, 230).

مشق

mashq 1. elongation (of letters) (JA, I, 262: al-mashq huwa madd al-ḥurūf fī al-kitābah; TM, 194; SK, 116: wa-yastahsinūn al-mashq fī al-sīn wa-al-shīn illā fī awākhir al-kalām; SA, III, 146: al-jam‘ wa-al-mashq; SK, 116-117; AA, 55) 2. copying, transcription (TE, 16) 3. hasty, inelegant hand; scribbling (MM, 133: wa-al-mashq fa-huwa sur‘at al-kitābah ma‘a ba‘tharat al-ḥurūf; MH, 89: sharr al-kitābah al-mashq; AA, 123: mashaqa ... idhā asra‘a al-kitābah; TP, 55; TE, 16) 4. calligraphic exercise; copying from a model (TE, 16; MY, 83) 5. calligraphic model (AD, 164) 6. elegant, calligraphic hand (CM, 151).

(**khaṭṭ**) **al-mashq** – one of the ancient scripts (?) used originally by the scribes in the city of al-Anbār and characterized as light, having a slanted alif and, according to some opinions, unsuitable for the copying of the Qur‘ān (FN, 9, 10: fa-ammā al-warrāqūn alladīna yaktubūn al-maṣāḥif bi-al-khaṭṭ al-muḥaqqaq wa-al-mashq...; IK, 89: al-mashq huwa al-khaṭṭ fīhi al-khiffah; KK, 48; KT, 134: ‘an Ibn Sīrīn annahu kariha an tuktab al-maṣāḥif mashqan...li-anna fīhi naqṣ, a lā tarā al-alif kayfa yugharriqūhā yānbaghī an turadd; see also AV, 12: ‘Mashq, for example, is a technique that can be applied to any kind of script and is not an independent style of its own.’).

mashqah 1. fine elongation, fine elongated stroke (SK, 320: al-mashqah al-maddah al-daḥīqah wa-al-khaṭṭ al-mamshūq huwa al-mamdūd) 2. tail of the letter mīm (LM, 66: illā anna mashqatahu fī al-naskh qaṣīrah).

māshiq – calligrapher (NI, 183).

mushāq ḥarīr – silk tow (wad) (DD, I, 389), comp. liqah.

مضى

imḍā’ 1. signing; signature, autograph (DM) 2. signed attestation/reading statement (OT, 46: lammā ‘uriḍa hādhā al-kitāb ilayya naḥartu wa-ta‘ammaltu bi-mā yaḥwīhi fa-wajadtuhu muṭābiqan lil-ṣawāb fa-ḥakamtu bi-ṣiḥḥatih wa-amḍaytuhu nammaqahu... Aḥmad al-Qāḍī

bi-madīnat Nīkdah), comp. *naẓar* 3. execution statement (containing the calligrapher's name) (MN, 8).

مغرة

maghrah – ochre pigment (FT, 411).

al-maghrah al-ʿIrāqīyah – reddish brown ink (SA, II, 478).

مكة

Makkah (al-mukarramah, al-musharrafah, al-muʿazzamah) – Mecca. (al-khaṭṭ) **al-Makkī** see Ḥijāzī and Kūfī.

ملس

mimlasah 1. plane-like instrument (TS, 11; AG, 107) 2. also **malasah** – burnisher, polisher (NH, 390; TS, 11, 31; AG, 107).

ملك

milk – ownership (OS, 88; EI, VII, 60-61).

milkīyah, **tamlīk**, **tamalluk** – ownership note or statement (such as ex-libris, ex-dono, ex-library, etc.), also referred to as **qayd al-tamalluk** (OS, 88; LC, 25; LC, 27). For various expressions used in ownership statements see OS.

ملو

imlāʾ (pl. amālīn) 1. dictation (AI, passim; WS, 10-13; KF, I, 85-94) 2. work (known as al-amālī) produced through dictation.

mumlin – dictation master (AI, passim; SL, II, 48).

istimlāʾ – repetition of a dictation by a specially appointed famulus; writing down (of a dictated text) (EI, VII, 725-726).

mustamlin – tradition transmitter's clerk; famulus (AI, passim; EI, VII, 725-726; GA, 287: Vermittler – muballigh, mulqī, muktib).

مهر

muhr – seal, signet, stamp (EI, VII, 472-473), comp. *khātam*.

tamhīr – sealing, stamping (EI, VII, 472-473).

مهرق

muhraq (pl. mahāriq) 1. glazed cloth, silk (used as a writing surface) (IW, 79-82; KM, IV, sifr 13, 8-9; AE, 105-106; WS, 50-52) 2. sheet, leaf (of any writing material) (KD, II, 704: wa-al-qirṭās wa-al-ṣaḥīfah wa-al-sifr wa-al-muhraq sawā') 3. sheet, leaf (of paper) (SA, II, 472, 482: al-muhraq wa-huwa al-qirṭās).

موزة

mawzah – burnisher, polisher (IA, 60, 63).

موس

mūsá (pl. mawāsin, amwās) – pen knife; trimmer (TW, 169: li-bary qalam al-qaṣab wa-iṣlāḥ al-kitābah; IA, 60: **maws**; UD, 16: al-maws al-Shīrāzī).

موه

mā' al-dhahab – gold ink (MU, V, 226; LC, 25).

mā' al-ward – rose water (MP, 64).

mimwah, māwardīyah – water container (for diluting ink) (SA, II, 482; NH, 390; DD, I, 390: mimwah ālah ...wa-tāratān takūn min al-nuḥās wa-min al-ḥalazūn wa-ghayrih), comp. misqāh.

tamwīh 1. inlaying (SA, II, 442) 2. coating; gilt (SD).

tamwīh bi-al-ṭalā' (al-dhahab) – gilt (FT, 403).

ميل

imālat al-qalam – tilting of the pen; slanting (of the line, script) (UD, 12; SA, II, 45), hence **mā'il** – inclining, tilting (of a script).

ن

نَبَقْ

nabq, tanbīq – elegant writing, copying (TE, 16; KM, IV, sifr 13, 5: nabaqtu al-kitāb wa-nabbaqtuhu saṭṭartuhu wa-katabtuh).

نِبَه

tanbīh – note, remark (in the body of a composition); nota bene, marginal annotation (DM; TH, 28: tanbīh ‘alā al-ghalaṭ).

نَثْر

(qalam) al-manthūr – naskh or riqāʿ/naskh-based script (characterised by large spaces between words) (AS, 146; JM, 40).

نَجْدْ

nawājīdh (sg. nājīdh) – letters such as bāʾ and tāʾ (TU, 36).

نَجْم

minjam – mallet (ST, index, 21; IB, 43: mījamah).

نَحْتْ

naḥt 1. paring, trimming (of a reed) (IR, 232; UD, 9: wa-al-naḥt naḥtān naḥt baṭnih wa-naḥt jawānibih) 2. abbreviation of the type called contraction in which two or three words are fused into one portmanteau word, e.g. basmalah, ḥamdalah, etc. (MG, I, 482).

نَحْسْ

nuḥās – copper, copper-based ink (UK, 133-134; MP, 35).

نخب

nakhb, intikhāb, muntakhab 1. selected passage 2. (pl. intikhābāt, muntakhabāt) – anthology (EA, I, 94-95).

muntakhib – compiler, selector (DF, II, 384).

نخل

munkhul – sieve (IR, 230; DM).

نرجسة

narjasah – y-shaped nonagonal or decagonal element (in a Mamluk book cover design) (JL, 95, 97; KR, 82).

نسب

nasab (pl. ansāb) – lineage, genealogy, pedigree (EI, VII, 967-968).

nisbah (pl. nisab) – descriptive adjective (adjective of relation) indicating an individual's birthplace, tribe, religious sect or school, etc. ending in ى – (EI, VIII, 53-56).

al-khaṭṭ (al-kitābah) al-mansūb(ah) see khaṭṭ.

munāsabah – collation (of quires) (ST, index, 21).

نستعلیق

(khaṭṭ) al-nasta'liq – hybrid of **naskh** and **ta'liq** (thus properly known as **naskh-i ta'liq, naskh-ta'liq**), a script which emerged in the 8/14th century in Persia and later was used extensively in Turkey and India (EI, IV, 1124 (in Persia), 1126 (in Turkey), 1127 (in Muslim India); ER, IV, 696-699). In Turkey this script was often (but incorrectly) known under the name of **ta'liq**.

نسخ

naskh 1. also **naskhah, tansikh, nasākhah, intisākh, istinsākh** – copying, transcription (TE, 17; KM, IV, sifr 13,5; KK, 57) 2. **(qalam)**

al-naskh – book hand, par excellence, which according to the Mamluk tradition, belonged to the muḥaqqaq family of scripts. The Mamluk naskh was written sans serif, tarwīs, while the Ottoman naskh and

the Persian naskh of the 10/16th century and later often featured the serif on the letter lām of the definite article. The serif of this letter in the Ottoman naskh was often right-sloping, while the serif in the Persian naskh was mostly left-sloping (AS, 146; LM, 47: wa-al-naskh lil-ḥadīth wa-al-tafsīr wa-naḥwihimā; LM, 44: al-naskh i'rābuhu aqall min al-rayḥān wa-fīhi ta'līq wa-ṭams fa-qaruba min al-riqā'; LM, 45: wa-min al-rayḥān al-naskh; LM, 54: ammā qalam al-naskh wa-al-waḍḍāḥ wa-al-ḥawāshī wa-al-manthūr fa-asqīṭ minqārah; KL, no.12: **rafi'** al-naskh, **al-naskh al-mu'tād**; CA, 36, 47; EI, IV, 1123- in Persia, 1125- in Turkey, 1127- in Muslim India).

al-naskh al-faḍḍāḥ see matn.

al-naskh al-sādah – regular naskh hand (HI, 89).

al-naskh al-waḍḍāḥ see matn.

naskhī 1. properly 'pertaining to naskh'; commonly, but erroneously, used as a synonym of **al-naskh** proper (NC, 128, n.12) 2. **naskh**-based (related) hand of an idiosyncratic (informal, personal) nature (CI, I, xiv).

nuskhah (pl. nusakh) 1. transcript, copy (EI, VIII, 149) 2. version, recension (MU, XVI, 106: wa-kitāb 'al-Bayān wa-al-tabyīn' nuskhātān ūlā wa-thānīyah wa-al-thānīyah aṣaḥḥ wa-ajwad) 3. variant reading (varia lectio), abbrev. خ / خ / ن / ن / خ / خ (AR, 37; AK, 352; MI, 182; LE, 138; CI, I, xv; CM, 123, 141; MZ, II, 412: خ / ن – nuskhah-aṣl, comp. badal) 4. list, catalogue (AD, 171).

al-nuskhah al-aṣl (**al-nuskhah al-mu'tamadah**, CD, IV, pl.131: balagha qir'atan wa-muqābalatan wa-taṣḥīḥan 'alā nuskhah mu'tamadah) – exemplar; archetype (LC, 26).

al-nuskhah al-dustūr see dustūr.

al-nuskhah al-far' see far'.

al-nuskhah al-mufakkakah see mafkūk, mufakkak.

al-nuskhah al-mulaffaqah see mulaffaq.

al-nuskhah (**al-kutub**, **al-makhṭūṭāt**) **al-safariyah** – 'pocket book' (small size manuscript produced for travelers) (TC, 26).

al-nuskhah al-umm – holograph; archetype (LC, 26).

al-nuskhah al-waḥīdah (**al-farīdah**) – single surviving copy, unicum.

nāsikh (pl. nussākh), **nassākh** (pl. nassākhah), **muntasikh** – copyist, scribe (TE, 17; WB, 47).

mansūkh, **muntasakh** – manuscript (AK, 348; MA, 16; TW, passim).

'ūd al-nasākhah see 'ūd.

نسق

nasaq, tansīq – text arrangement; layout (mise en page) (FK, I, no. 1014/2: faragha min taḥrīriḥ ‘alā hādhā al-nasaq).

نشأ

inshāʾ – construction, style or composition, e.g. of letters, documents or state papers; letter-writing, epistolography (EI, III, 1241-1244).

munshiʾ 1. secretary, amanuensis (EI, VII, 580), comp. kātib 2. author (usually referring to poetry) (SS, 67).

نشر

nashr, tanshīr, tawshīr – sprinkling of a freshly copied text with sawdust, nushārah.

nushārah (also **ushārah, wushārah**) – sawdust (for drying ink) (JA, I, 278; IK, 94; AI, 173; TD, I, 134, 136).

minshar, minshār (pl. manāshīr) – saw (for work with wooden boards) (TS, 11, 18; AG, 107; IA, 60: minsharah kabīrah, minsharah ṣaghīrah; UA, 393: for cutting reeds).

minsharīyah – chevron (FT, 395).

raqq manshūr see raqq.

نشف

nashshāf – blotting paper (DM).

minshafah – blotter (TD, I, 136).

نشی

nashan – wheat starch, starch paste (TS, 12, 13; ST, index, 21; IB, 50; MB, 106; IA, 60; SA, II, 480: al-nashā al-muttakhadhah min al-burr aw al-kathīrāʾ); starch paste (made of sorghum, dhurah) (OM).

tanshiyah – pasting (ST, index, 21).

minshāh – paste-receptacle; compartment for paste (in a writing case) (SA, II, 480; AT, 133; OM; DD, I, 390; IR, 230: **minshaʾah**).

نصب

naṣb 1. straight line, stroke; the letter alif (IR, 239: al-madd ka-al-naṣb wa-ka-al-naṣbayn, 240, 241, 249, 269: al-lām naṣb thumma bā' al-khaṭṭ) 2. pallet-like tool (HT, lin.133, 137).

niṣāb 1. handle (SK, 103: niṣāb al-sikkīn; SA, II, 466; IK, 90) 2. folder (instrument used for folding sheets of paper when binding) (UK, 156; IB, 43, 47; MB, 103; IA, 59) 3. also **niṣāb al-dalk** – burnisher (IA, 59).

muntaṣib – ascender, up-stroke (SA, III, 101; UD, 11; LM, 49: fa-al-muntaṣib huwa alladhī yusāmit qāmat al-kātib).

نصل

tanṣīl – elongation (of letters) (SA, III, 140: wa-huwa mawāqī' al-maddāt al-mustaḥsanah min al-ḥurūf al-muttaṣilah).

نطق

minṭaqah (pl. manāṭiq) – decorative element, e.g. medallion, panel and the like (in illumination and book cover design) (FI, 88; FZ, 217, 218; JL, 93; ZM, 43).

نظر

nazar – study note, reading note, statement (usually introduced by 'naẓara fī') (AH, 97; KF, I, 243; CM, no.141/1: naẓara fīhi wa-ta'am-mala ma'ānīh wa-da'ā li-mālikih), comp. muṭāla'ah.

unzur – 'see', abbrev. ظ (used in the margin for notabilia, nota bene, along with the word qif, see tawqīf).

nāẓir (pl. nuẓẓār) 1. administrator of a waqf 2. curator.

fīhi nazar – 'phrase (syn. fīhi ta'ammul) implying doubt and insinuating politely that the words to which it relates are false or wrong' (LL, II, 2812).

نظم

naẓm, tanẓīm – composition (in verse or prose) (AM, no.170); versification, comp. shī'r.

نفخ

naḥkh – gaufrage (KJ, no.3, 23).

نفذ

naḥdh – punching, awling (MB, *passim*).

minḥadh – punch, awl (SA, II, 481; IR, 230; AT, 133; MJ, 208; DD, I, 391: for sewing of quires).

نفط

naḥaṭ (sg. naḥṭah) – pockets of air, bubbles (between the doublures and the cover board) (NH, 392).

al-waraq al-naḥṭī see waraq.

نقح

tanqīḥ, **tanaqquḥ** – correction; revision (KF, II, 503: *ṣuḥḥiḥat wa-tunuqqiḥat*).

نقر

naqr – inscription, engraving (on stone), epigraphy (KM, IV, sifr 13, 5: *al-kitāb fī al-ḥajar*).

naqqār – carver, engraver (KM, IV, sifr 13, 5).

minqār – serif-like stroke, syn. *tarwīs* (q.v.) (LM, 54).

نقش

niqs (pl. anqās, nuqūs) – ink (KK, 49; SA, II, 469, 471; IK, 84; KM, IV, sifr 13, 5).

نقش

naqsh (pl. nuqūsh), **niqāshah** 1. inscription, engraving, epigraphy (FT, 400), comp. *naqr* 2. tooling or stamping (of leather) (UK, 156; TS, 29-32; MB, 105; IA, 63) 3. painting, illumination (EI, VII, 931).

minqāsh (pl. manāqish, manāqīsh) bookbinder's tool (UK, 156; MB, 105; IA, 59).

naqqāsh 1. carver, engraver (KM, IV, sifr 13, 5) 2. miniature painter, designer, illuminator (PA, 141, 155, 159).

naqqāsh/khānah – Ottoman imperial painting atelier (workshop) (EI, VII, 931-932).

nāqish – calligrapher (AW, 266).

tanqīsh – writing, copying (FK, III, 304: wa-qad waqa'a al-farāgh min tanqīsh hādhā al-kitāb).

نقص

naqṣ, nuqṣān, naqīṣah (pl. naqā'is) – omission; haplographic error, haplography (TP, 58).

نقط

naqṭ 1. vocalization (by means of dots) (SA, III, 16: al-naqṭ qad yakūn bi-ma'nā al-shakl; SA, III, 160; TE, 16-17) 2. letter-pointing (TE, 16-17; SA, III, 151; KH, 38).

nuqṭah (pl. nuqaṭ) 1. diacritical point, dot (HI, 81: qāla Ibn Muqlah: wa-al-naqṭ šūrātān aḥaduhumā shakl murabba' wa-al-akhar shakl mustadīr) 2. small tool, point (for creating dots on leather) (TS, 12, 33; HT, 133, 137; MB, 105; IA, 59: nuqaṭ mudawwarah; IA, 60: nuqṭat al-lawzah, nuqṭah lil-tadhhīb, nuqṭah kabīrah li-buyūt al-lawzah).

nāqit (pl. nuqqāt), **naqqāt** – vocaliser; orthographer (LT, 368).

نقل

naql 1. transmission, tradition; exemplar (FK, I, no.729: qūbila Rawḍat al-murīdīn ma'a naqlīh fa-ṣaḥḥa) 2. quoting, citing; extract, quotation 3. copying, transcription (MU, XII, 138: naqaltuhu min khaṭṭih; TE, 16) 4. exact copy (apograph), 'facsimile' of the master calligrapher's work (DW, 68) 5. translation.

nāqil (pl. naqalah) 1. copyist; calligrapher (TE, 16; AW, 218) 2. translator.

نمر

numrah, nimrah – number, figure, abbrev. ٥ (often represented by a horizontal line for rā' with a loop at its end representing hā' used

among other things as a reference mark, written over the word in the text and repeated above the relevant gloss in the margin and bearing a superscript number) (RA, 45; AM, 53, 62, 91).

tanmīr – marking (providing) with numbers, numbering.

نمق

namq, tanmīq – elegant, embellished writing, copying (TE, 16; KK, 53; SK, 119: ḥusn al-kitābah namquh; WR, 87); elegant composition (of a text) (DM).

nāmiq, munammiq – calligrapher (AC, 45; NI, 180: adhantu li-nāmiq hādhihi al-qīṭ'ah al-marghūbah; TE, 16).

namīqah – piece (of calligraphy); calligraph, calligraphic composition (NI, 181; AW, 237).

نمل

tanmīl – compact writing, copying (KH, 38).

نمنم

namnamah 1. elegant, embellished writing, copying (SK, 119; AA, 105) 2. compact writing (KM, IV, sifr 13, 5: namnamtu al-kitāb qarmaṭtuhu).

munamnamah – miniature (figurative) painting, painted illustration (KF, II, 369, n.1).

نور

nuwwār (pl. nawāwīr) – floral design, arabesques (on book covers) (LC, 26; IB, 69).

nawārah – corner stamp (smaller than turunjah, used in the decoration of an envelope flap) (ST, index, 22; IB, 44).

al-munawwarah – epithet of Medina.

munīr – syn. of mufattaḥ, having an open counter (ant. of maṭmūs, q.v.) (LM, 43).

نول

munāwalah, ijāzat al-munāwalah – authorisation note or statement (allowing the transmission of a work by means of handing over the

shaykh's copy to the student) (MF, 86-87: nāwaltu hādhā al-kitāb kāmīlan wa-huwa sab'at ajzā'; KF, II, 498-450; EI, III, 27).

نون

nūn (pl. anwān, nīnān) – inkwell (SK, 106; KD, II, 700; IK, 82: wa-yuqāl hiya al-dawāh wa-al-nūn wa-al-raqīm).

نهى

intihā' – end, termination, used as a paragraph mark or textual divider, abbrev. هـ / هـ / هـ / هـ (for intahā) (MW, 110; CI, I, xiii; CI, II, xi; SL, II, 87; GA, 285).

inhā' (pl. inhā'āt) – collation statement and/or ijāzah (beginning with the word 'anhāhu') (IH, 7, 15: fa-kataba lahu inhā'an fī ākhir kitāb al-zakāh minhu).

هـ

هذب

ahdāb (sg. hudb, hudub) – letters such as rā' and zā' (TU, 36).

هـ هـ

hud'hud (pl. hadāhid) – hoopoe (see tabkhīr).

هدى

ihdā' – dedication (FN, 17: katabtu 'alā ḡahr juz' ahdāyuh ilā ṣadīq lī; MU, XIII, 98: wa-hiya al-nuskah allatī ahdāhā ilā Sayf al-Dawlah).

هذب

tahdhīb 1. correction, revision (DM) 2. abridgement, epitome (EA, I, 23).

muhadhdhib 1. author, compiler (SS, 69, 72, 73) 2. abridger, epitomist.

هل

al-waraq al-hilālī see waraq.

tahlīl 1. also **haylalah** – the doctrinal formula ‘lā ilāha illā Allāh’ (AD, 181; MG, I, 483; EI, X, 108) 2. rounding (of the spine), backing (MB, 109; IA, 61).

al-ka‘b al-muhallal see ka‘b.

muhall, **mustahall** – the first night of the month, e.g. fī muhall (mustahall) shahr kadhā (SA, VI, 244).

همش

hāmish (pl. hawāmish) 1. margin (DF, III, 180, 190, 210) 2. marginal note, gloss, abbrev. هـ (LC, 24; MI, 185).

hāmishah – interline (BA, III, 371: yuqāl ajābahu fī hāmishat kitābih idhā kataba bayna al-saṭrayn).

tahmīsh 1. glossing, annotation (TT, 193: hammasha al-kitāb ‘allaqa ‘alā hāmishih) 2. marginal note, gloss (AK, 352).

muhammash – glossed, annotated (TW, 102: sifr muhammash bi-ta‘ālīq muhimmah).

همل

ihmāl, **‘alāmat al-ihmāl** – mark distinguishing an unpointed letter from its pointed counterpart (for various practices see TP, 57; GL, 4; IR, 244).

al-ḥurūf al-muhmalah, **al-muhmalāt** – letters without diacritical points, unpointed letters (TP, 57; MH, 90).

هوم

hāmah – head (of a letter), syn. ra’s (e.g. SA, III, 60: hāmat al-alif).

و

وجز

ījāz, mūjaz – abridgement, epitome (DM).

وجه

wajh(ah) 1. face, upper part (of a document or textblock) (TS, 25) 2. upper cover (TS, 25, 31) 3. recto (of a document or leaf) 4. page (MU, IV, 182: mujalladah ḍakhmah taḥṭawī ‘alā ‘ishrīn kurrāsatan fī kull wajhah ‘ishrīn saṭran; DF, III, 239, 283: fī sab‘ qawā’im wa-wajhah wāḥidah).

‘alā al-wajh – copying, transcription in full; making a complete copy (of a manuscript or collection) (SL, II, 31, 43-45).

wajh al-hirr (lit. ‘tomcat’s face’) – the letter hā’ in the form of a rounded (as opposed to ‘almond shaped’ – mulawwaz) double loop (ه) (SA, III, 91-92).

wajh al-kitāb – upper cover (AG, 109).

al-wajh al-awwal (al-wajhah al-ūlā) – recto (of a leaf) (LC, 29; MK, 82).

al-wajh al-thānī (al-wajhah al-thānīyah) – verso (of a leaf) (LC, 29; MK, 82).

wajh al-qalam – inner side of the nib (KU, 154: wa-wajhuhu bāṭin sinnayh; SA, II, 464; MJ, 218).

wajh al-waraqah see waraqah.

وحش

waḥshī see sinn.

وحى

waḥy – writing; piece of writing (in an unspecified form) (IK, 95: wa-yuqāl lil-kitāb ayḍan mawaddah wa-majallah wa-waḥy; KM, IV, sifr 13, 5; KK, 53).

ود

mawaddah – writing; piece of writing (see waḥy above) (IK, 95; DA).

ورخ

tawrīkh see ta'rīkh.

ورد

wardah – rosette, lobed medallion (DH, no.73).

muwarrad – floriated (of design) (DH, no.73).

وزن

al-aqlām al-mawzūnah see qalam.

ورق

waraq (pl. awrāq) 1. paper (for various types of paper, such as al-waraq al-Samarqandī, al-Baghdādī, al-Khurāsānī, al-Shāmī, al-Misrī, al-Tihāmī, al-Maghribī, al-Andalusī, see e.g. SA, VI, 189-195; WS, 85-104), comp. kāghad 2. parchment (AE, 108).

waraqah 1. piece (of paper, parchment or leather) 2. leaf, folio (folio), abbrev. و / ق (AR, 36, 37) 3. small tool (resembling a vine leaf) (TS, 11; AG, 109).

khalf al-waraqah – verso (of a leaf) (LC, 25).

wajh al-waraqah – recto (of a leaf) (LC, 29).

al-waraq (al-kāghad) al-Islāmī – 'Islamic paper' (paper produced by Muslims) (WM, I, 85).

al-waraq (al-kāghad) al-Rūmī 1. European (usually watermarked) paper (WM, I, 75, 77) 2. French paper (PT, 31).

al-waraq al-ʿādim – waste paper (HN, 378).

al-waraq (al-kāghad) al-baladī – local paper (as opposed to imported) (PT, 30; SA, VI, 193; OM).

waraq damghah (tamghah) – stamped paper (DM), paper bearing an imitation watermark.

al-waraq al-hilālī – Venetian paper (bearing a crescent watermark, Tre Lune) (PT, 31).

al-waraq al-khām – unglazed paper (PT, 32).

al-waraq al-maṣlūḥ (al-maṣqūl) – glazed paper (PT, 32; SA, II, 487; WS, 82).

al-waraq al-madghūt – papier maché (FI, 88; JL, 84).

al-waraq al-māḥī – wove paper (HN, 380).

al-waraq al-muqawwá 1. pasteboard (JL, 87; MS, 35; MD, 107; WS, 104) 2. cardboard (FT, 394).

al-waraq al-mujazzaʿ (al-nafī or waraq al-abrū) – marbled paper (DM; MN, 161).

al-waraq al-muṭarraḥ – laid paper (HN, 380).

al-waraqah al-wuṣṭá – middle leaf (of a quire) (ST, index, 22; MP, 65).

warrāq, muwarrīq – papermaker, stationer, bookseller; professional copyist, scribe (SL, II, 16; IK, 66: fa-kātib al-khaṭṭ huwa al-warrāq wa-al-muḥarrir); bookbinder (QS, II, 495).

(al-khaṭṭ) al-warrāqī see muḥaqqaq.

al-lām alif al-warrāqīyah see lām alif.

wirāqah 1. profession of the warrāq 2. culture of the handwritten book.

warrāqah – paper-mill (MA, IV, 81, 82; WS, 94).

tawrīq 1. copying, transcription (WS, 9, 14; KF, I, 148) 2. foliation (as opposed to pagination) 3. vegetal (curvilinear) decoration; foliated arabesque design (ST, index, 22; IB, 69; FI, 88; LC, 28; JL, 93; WR, 87; EI, I, 558-561).

وسم

maysam (pl. mayāsīm) – tool, stamp (AB, 135).

mawsim (pl. mawāsīm) – feast, festival. For dating by feasts see taʾrīkh.

mawsūm bi – entitled (e.g. CI, II, 10).

وشح

washḥ – decorating, decoration (of book covers by impression and stamping) (ST, index, 22; MP, 65).

وشر

wushārah see nushārah.

وشم

washm 1. writing, drawing (AD, 186) 2. diacritical pointing (of letters) (IK, 93) 3. also **tawshīm** – tooling, stamping (of leather) (HT, lin.125, 164), comp. rashm, tarshīm.

mawshim (pl. mawāshim) – pattern (created by tooling); stamp (HT, lin.126).

وشى

washy, tawshiyah – polychrome illumination (TE, 18; UK, 147: al-tawshiyah al-naqsh wa-al-zakhrafah).

وصل

waṣl, wiṣl, wuṣl (pl. awṣāl, waṣlāt) 1. straight line (drawn with a ruler) (SD, II, 812; SA, VI, 195: fa-qaṭʿ al-Baghdādī yutrak fīhi sittat awṣāl bayāḍan wa-tuktab al-basmalah fī awwal al-sābiʿ) 2. connection (between two sheets when pasted side by side) (MB, 110); line of paste (kollesis) (AJ, 144) 3. piece, leaf (of parchment or paper forming an integral part of a roll, darj), collema (kollema) (WS, 10, 88, 90).

waṣlah 1. also **wāṣilah** – catchword, vox reclamans (NM, 683; HB, 234; NZ, 65) 2. knife (used by the waṣṣāl) (AD, 187).

waṣṣāl – manuscript decorator (who cuts the margins of leaves, replaces them with coloured papers and draws lines to cover the joints) (AD, 187; PA, 161: person involved in ‘reparation et montage des marges’).

ṣilah – pallet-like connecting tool (used in the interlace) (TS, 12, 31-32), comp. ṭawīl.

وضح

(qalam) **al-waḍḍāḥ** see matn.

وضع

waḍʿ (pl. awḍāʿ) – composition, arrangement (of a text) (MU, VI, 62; KF, I, 222: ḥusn al-waḍʿ wa-rīʿāyat al-marsūm).

wāḍiʿ – compiler, author (DF, IV, 376).

وطأ

tawṭiʿah – preface, prologue, proem (DM).

وعد

mīʿād, mawʿid (pl. mawāʿid) – collation session (TP, 56; TM, 192: fa-in kāna dhālik fī samāʿ al-ḥadīth kataba ʿbalagha fī al-mīʿād al-awwal aw al-thānīʿ; AI, 39, 41).

وعى

wiʿāʿ (pl. awʿiyah) – 1. case, box (MS, 16, 19; ME, 575) 2. container (OM).

وقع

wafīʿah – pen wiper (IK, 87: **waqīʿah**; DA).

وقف

wifq (pl. awfāq) – talismanic seal (in the form of a square) (DT, 69, 100, 108).

mīfaq – seal, stamp (IK, 96).

وقب

waqabah see jūnah.

وقع

waqīʿah see wafīʿah.

tawqīʿ 1. writing something down, taking something down in writing (SL, I, 10) 2. royal edict, decree (EI, X, 392-393) 3. motto; autograph, signature (EI, X, 392; LC, 28; KM, IV, sifr 13, 6: al-tawqīʿ an yulḥiq fī al-kitāb shayʿan baʿda al-farāgh minhu; FK, II, no.1393/5: naqaltu min khaṭṭ al-muṣannif wa-waqqaʿa ʿalayhi bi-khaṭṭih hādha ṣaḥīḥ; KF, I, 124, 125) 4. gloss, apostil (usually signed) (AD, 189; LC, 28; AD, 189).

(qalam) **al-tawqīʿ, al-tawāqīʿ, al-tawqīʿāt** – smaller version of the

thuluth script (characterised by a liberal use of hairlines, *tashīrāt*) (AS, 146; JM, 43-46, 73-77; LM, 47: *wa-al-tawāqīf yuktab bi-hi al-tawāqīf al-kibār allatī lil-umarāʾ wa-al-quḍāh wa-al-akābir*; EI, IV, 1123- in Persia, 1125- in Turkey).

al-tawqīf al-muṭlaq – regular size *tawqīf* script (SA, III, 100; AS, 146).

(qalam) al-tawāqīf al-riqāʿīyah – smaller version of *tawqīf* script (AS, 146; LM, 69).

(qalam) al-tawāqīf al-thuluthīyah – larger version of *tawqīf* script (AS, 146; LM, 63).

وقف

waqf 1. also **ʿalāmat al-waqf** – pause-mark or abbreviation (written above the line in the text of the Qurʾān, e.g. م = *lāzim*, ج = *jāʾiz*) (KH, 38) 2. endowment, *wakf* 3. reading, perusal (from *waqaftu ʿalā* – ‘I have read’), a standard opening phrase of reading notes and blurbs, *taqrīz* (q.v.) (BL, 187).

waqfiyah, tawqīf (KF, II, 473) – endowment certificate or statement; bequest note (OS, 90; LC, 29; KF, II, 428-442).

wāqif – donor (of a *wakf*) (e.g. KF, II, 441).

mawqūf 1. unfinished stroke (e.g. *al-bāʾ al-mawqūfah*, see SA, III, 61; KH, 38) 2. **al-mawqūf** – object of the endowment (e.g. number of volumes and titles of the books) (OS, 90).

al-mawqūf ʿalayhi – beneficiary or usufructuary (of a *wakf*).

tawqīf (pl. *tawqīfāt*) 1. marginal note, side-head (preceded by the word *ʿqif* (also *qif ʿalā*) or its stylised form, *logograph*, which resembles two unpointed *bā*’s or *tā*’s. It was used extensively in Maghrebi manuscripts for *notabilia*.) (LC, 28), comp. *taʾammul* 2. overlining (TP, 55).

وكت

wakt – letter pointing (KM, IV, *sifr* 13, 6: *wakata al-kitāb waktan naqaṭahu*).

وهم

wahm – mistake, error (IK, 95; AA, 122).

ihām – omission (IK, 95; AA, 123).

لا

al-lām alif al-muḥaqqaqah – the lām alif ligature characterized by a loop at the base (SA, III, 95-96; SA, III, 58: wa-al-lām alif al-muḥaqqaqah kulluhā mufattaḥah lā yajūz fīhā al-ṭams bi-ḥāl; AS, 146).

al-lām alif al-mukhaffafah – the lām alif ligature characterized by joining the foot of the alif to the extremity of lām on the base line (SA, III, 96).

al-lām alif al-warrāqīyah – the lām alif ligature characterized by its triangular base (لا) and used in the Mamluk period exclusively in the rectilinear family of scripts (muḥaqqaq, maṣāḥif, rayḥān, naskh) (SA, III, 97: wa-lā yakūn hādhā al-shakl illā fī qalam al-naskh wa-mā shākalahu wa-fī qalam al-muḥaqqaq wa-mā shābahah; MJ, 236; AS, 146).

ي

al-yā' al-rāji'ah see rāji'ah.

يبس

yābis – rectilinear, ant. of raṭb (of a letter or script) (AS, 144).

al-aqlām al-yābisah – rectilinear scripts (such as al-muḥaqqaq and al-rayḥān) (SA, III, 11; UD, 19; AS, 144; LM, 45), comp.mabsūṭ.

يد

yad (pl. aydin, ayādin) – hand; used in the expressions such as **‘alā yad, fī yad, bi-yad** and **‘an yad** (copied by, in the hand of) (OT, 42), comp. yamīn and khaṭṭ.

يرع

yarā'ah – reed; reed pen (IK, 86; UA, 393; DM; KD, II, 701: fa-idhā lam yakun mabrīyan fa-huwa yarā'ah wa-al-jam' yarā').

يَمَن

yamīn – right hand (e.g. CM, no.39: katabahu mu'allifuhu bi-yamīnihi al-dāthirah).

maymūn(ah) – one of the honorifics (epithets) of the words kitāb, risālah, nuskhah and the like (CI, II, 65: al-nuskhah al-mubārah al-maymūnah).

ABBREVIATIONS

1. Sources/References

- A -

AA = Muḥammad ibn Yaḥyá al-Šūlī. *Adab al-kuttāb*, ed. Muḥammad Bahjah al-Atharī. Baghdad/Cairo, 1341 A.H.

AB = Johannes Pedersen. *Al-Kitāb al-‘Arabī mundhu nash’atih ḥattā ‘aṣr al-ṭibā‘ah*, transl. Ḥaydar Ghaybah. Damascus, 1989.

AC = Adam Gacek. “Arabic calligraphy and the ‘Herbal’ of al-Ghāfiqī: a survey of Arabic manuscripts at McGill University”. *Fontanus: from the collections of McGill University*, 2 (1989): 37-53.

AD = E. Fagnan. *Additions aux dictionnaires arabes*. Algiers, 1923.

AE = Adolf Grohmann. *Arabische Paläographie*. Vol.1. Wien, 1967.

AF = Oleg F. Akimushkin and Anatol. A. Ivanov. “The art of illumination”. *The arts of the book in Central Asia*, ed. B. Gray. Paris/London, 1979: 35-57.

AG = Adam Gacek. “Arabic bookmaking and terminology as portrayed by Bakr al-Ishbīlī in his ‘Kitāb al-taysīr fī ṣinā‘at al-tasfīr’”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 5 (1990-91): 106-113.

AH = ‘Ābid Sulaymān al-Mashūkhī. *Anmāṭ al-tawthīq fī al-makhṭūṭ al-‘Arabī fī al-qarn al-tāsi‘ ‘ashar*. Riyad, 1414/1994.

AI = ‘Abd al-Karīm ibn Muḥammad al-Sam‘ānī. *Adab al-implā’ wa-al-istimplā’*, ed. Max Weisweiler. Beirut, 1981.

AJ = J. von Karabacek. “Das arabische Papier”. *Mittheilungen aus der Sammlung der Papyrus Erzherzog Rainer*, 2-3 (1887): 87-159.

AK = Muḥammad al-Manūnī. “Alāmat al-kitābah al-‘Arabīyah fī al-

makḥṭūṭāt: al-naḡṭ wa-al-shakl wa-ishārāt ukhrā". *Al-Maṣādir al-'Arabīyah li-ta'rīkh al-Maghrib: al-fatrah al-mu'āṣirah 1790-1930*, by Muḥammad al-Manūnī. Rabat, 1989: 2, 349-360.

AL = *Kitāb alf laylah wa-laylah*, ed. Muḥsin Maḥdī. Leiden, 1984.

AM = Adam Gacek. *Arabic lithographed books in the Islamic Studies Library, McGill University. Descriptive catalogue*. Montreal, 1996.

AN = Richard Lemay. "Arabic numerals". *Dictionary of the Middle Ages*. New York, 1982: 1, 382-398.

AO = Adrian Brockett. "Aspects of the physical transmission of the Qur'ān in 19th-century Sudan: script, decoration, binding and paper". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 2 (1987): 45-67.

AP = Nabia Abbott. "Arabic paleography: the development of early Islamic scripts". *Ars Islamica*, 8 (1941): 65-104.

AQ = David James. *After Timur: Qur'ans of the 15th and 16th centuries A.D.* London/Oxford, 1992.

AR = Ḥusayn 'Alī Maḥfūz. "Al-'Alāmāt wa-al-rumūz 'inda al-mu'al-lifīn al-'Arab qadīman wa-ḥadīthan". *Al-Turāth al-sha'bī*, 1, nos.4-5 (1963-4): 22-37 [436-451].

AS = Adam Gacek. "Arabic scripts and their characteristics as seen through the eyes of Mamluk authors". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 4 (1989): 144-149.

AT = Niḡāl 'Abd al-'Alī Amīn. "Adawāt al-kitābah wa-mawādduhā fī al-ūṣūr al-Islāmīyah". *Al-Mawrid*, 15, no.4 (1986): 131-137.

AV = François Déroche. *The Abbasid tradition: Qur'ans of the 8th to the 10th centuries AD*. London/Oxford, 1992.

AW = Nabil F. Safwat. *The art of the pen: calligraphy of the 14th to 20th centuries*. London/Oxford, 1996.

- B -

BA = Maḥmūd Shukrī al-Ālūsī al-Baghdādī. *Bulūgh al-arab fī maʿrifat aḥwāl al-ʿArab*. Beirut, Dār al-Kutub al-ʿIlmīyah, [198?].

BL = Franz Rosenthal. “‘Blurbs’ (taqrīḏ) from fourteenth-century Egypt”. *Oriens*, 27-28 (1981): 177-196.

- C -

CA = Adam Gacek. “A collection of Qurʾanic codices”. *Fontanus: from the collections of McGill University*, 4 (1991): 35-53.

CD = Arthur J. Arberry. *The Chester Beatty Library. A handlist of the Arabic manuscripts*. Dublin, 1958.

CI = Adam Gacek. *Catalogue of Arabic manuscripts in the library of the Institute of Ismaili Studies*. London, 1984-85.

CL = Jan Just Witkam. *Catalogue of Arabic manuscripts in the Library of the University of Leiden and other collections in the Netherlands*. Leiden, 1982 - .

CM = Adam Gacek. *Arabic manuscripts in the Libraries of McGill University: union catalogue*. Montreal, 1991.

CT = Pierre A. MacKay. “Certificates of transmission on a manuscript of the ‘Maqāmāt’ of Ḥarīrī (MS.Cairo, Adab 105)”. *Transactions of the American Oriental Society*, N.S. 61, no.4 (1971).

CW = A.Z. Iskandar. *A catalogue of Arabic manuscripts on medicine and science in the Wellcome Historical Medical Library*. London, 1967.

- D -

DA = A. De Biberstein Kazimirski. *Dictionnaire arabe-français*. Paris, 1960.

DB = R. Blachère, M. Chouémi and C. Denizeau. *Dictionnaire*

arabe-français-anglais: langue classique et moderne. Paris, 1967- .

DC = A.-L. de Premare. *Dictionnaire arabe-français*. Paris, 1993 - .

DD = ‘Abd al-Qādir ibn Muḥammad al-Anṣārī al-Jazīlī. *Al-Durar al-farā’id al-munazzamah fī akhbār al-ḥājj wa-ṭarīq Makkah al-Mu‘azzamah*, ed. Ḥamd al-Jāsir. Riyad, Dār al-Yamāmah, 1983.

DE = Martin Hinds and El-Said Badawi. *A dictionary of Egyptian Arabic: Arabic-English*. Beirut, 1986.

DF = Muḥammad ibn Sayf al-Dīn Aydamur. *Al-Durr al-farīd wa-al-bayt al-qāṣid*. Frankfurt, 1989.

DG = Werner Diem. *A dictionary of the Arabic material of S.D. Goitein's 'A Mediterranean society'*. Wiesbaden, 1994.

DH = Aḥmad ibn al-Rashīd ibn al-Zubayr. *Kitāb al-dhakhā’ir wa-al-tuḥaf*. Kuwait, 1984.

DM = Hans Wehr. *A dictionary of modern written Arabic*, ed. J.M. Cowan, 4th ed. Ithaca, NY, 1994.

DP = Adam Gacek. “The diploma of the Egyptian calligrapher Ḥasan al-Rushdī”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 4 (1989): 44-55.

DQ = François Déroche. “Deux fragments coraniques maghrébins anciens au Musée des arts turc et islamique d’Istanbul”. *Revue des études islamiques*, 59 (1991): 229-235.

DR = Donald P. Little. “Documents related to the estates of a merchant and his wife in late fourteenth century Jerusalem”. *Mamlūk studies review*, 2 (1998): 93-193.

DS = Aḥmad ibn ‘Alī al-Qalqashandī. *Ḍaw‘ al-ṣubḥ al-musaffar*, ed. Maḥmūd Salāmah. Cairo, 1906.

DT = Tawfik Canaan. “The decipherment of Arabic talismans”. *Beryus. Archeological studies*, 4, fasc.1 (1937): 69-110; 5, fasc.2 (1938): 141-151.

DW = Manijeh Bayani, Anna Cantadini and Tim Stanley. *The decorated word: Qur'ans of the 17th to 19th centuries*. Part 1. London/Oxford, 1999.

- E -

EA = J.S. Meisami and P. Starkey, eds. *Encyclopedia of Arabic literature*. New York, 1998.

EI = *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*. New ed. Leiden, 1960 - .

EM = Ayman Fu'ād Sayyid. "Early methods of book composition: al-Maqrīzī's draft of the 'Kitāb al-khiṭaṭ'". *The codicology of Islamic manuscripts*. London, 1995: 93-101.

EP = François Déroche. "L'emploi du parchemin dans les manuscrits islamiques: quelques remarques liminaires". *The codicology of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the second Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation, 1993*. London, 1995: 17-57.

ER = *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, ed. E. Yarshater. London (later Costa Mesa, Calif.), 1982 - .

- F -

FD = Ibrāhīm Ibrāhīm Murūwah. *Fī al-makhṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah: qarāʾāt taḥbīqīyah*. Beirut/Damascus, 1997.

FI = M.S. Dimand. *Al-Funūn al-Islāmīyah*, transl. Aḥmad Muḥammad ʿĪsā. Cairo, n.d.

FJ = ʾĪtimād Yūsuf al-Quṣayrī. *Fann al-tajlīd ʾinda al-Muslimīn*. Baghdad, 1979.

FK = Ramzan Şeşen et al. *Catalogue of manuscripts in the Köprülü Library*. Istanbul, 1986.

FM = Ibrāhīm Zāhidah. "Fahrasat al-makhṭūṭāt". *Al-Mawrid*, 5 (1976): 164-168.

FN = Ibn al-Nadīm. *Fihrist lil-Nadīm*. Beirut, Dār al-Maʿrifah, 1978 (reprint of the Cairo edition of 1929).

FT = Oktay Aslanapa. *Funūn al-Turk wa-ʿamāʾiruhum*, transl. Aḥmad Muḥammad ʿIsā. Istanbul, 1987.

FZ = Muḥammad ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz Marzūq. *Al-Funūn al-zakhrafiyah al-Islāmīyah fī al-ʿaṣr al-ʿUthmānī*. Cairo, 1987.

- G -

GA = *Grundriss der arabischen Philologie*. Band I: *Sprachwissenschaft*, herausgegeben von W. Fischer. Wiesbaden, 1982.

GL = W. Wright. *A Grammar of the Arabic language*. 3rd ed. Cambridge, 1967.

- H -

HB = Ahmed-Chouqui Binebine. *Histoire des bibliothèques au Maroc*. Rabat, 1992.

HD = A.U. Kaziev (Gaziev). *Khudozhestvenno-tekhicheskie materialy i terminologiya srednovekovoi knizhnoi zhivopisi, kalligrafii i perepletnogo iskustva*. Baku, 1966.

HI = Muḥammad Murtaḍā al-Zabīdī. “Ḥikmat al-ishrāq ilā kuttāb al-āfāq”. *Nawādir al-makhṭūʾāt*, ed. ʿAbd al-Salām Hārūn. Cairo, 1954: 5, 50-99.

HN = ʿĀyidah Ibrāhīm Naṣīr. *Ḥarakat nashr al-kutub fī Miṣr fī al-qarn al-tāsiʿ ʿashar*. Cairo, 1994.

HT = Adam Gacek. “Ibn Abī Ḥamīdah’s didactic poem for book-binders”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 6 (1991): 41-58.

- I -

IA = Adam Gacek. "Instructions on the art of bookbinding attributed to the Rasulid ruler of Yemen al-Malik al-Muẓaffar". *Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997: 57-63.

IB = G. Bosch, J. Carswell and G. Petherbridge. *Islamic bindings and bookmaking: a catalogue of an exhibition, The Oriental Institute, Univ. of Chicago, May 18 - August 18, 1981*. Chicago, 1981.

ID = Ja'far ibn 'Alī al-Dimashqī. *Al-Ishārah ilā maḥāsin al-tijārah*, ed. Fahmī Sa'd. Beirut, 1983.

IH = Aḥmad al-Ḥusaynī. *Ijāzāt al-ḥadīth allatī katabahā Muḥammad Bāqir al-Majlisī al-Iṣbahānī*. Qum, 1401 AH [1989 or 1990].

IJ = Jan Just Witkam. "Human element between text and reader: the ijāza in Arabic manuscripts". *The codicology of Islamic manuscripts*. London, 1995: 123-136.

IK = 'Abd Allāh ibn Muḥammad ibn al-Sīd al-Baṭalyawsī. *Al-Iqtidāb fī sharḥ adab al-kuttāb*. Beirut, 1973.

IM = 'Iyāḍ ibn Mūsā al-Yaḥsubī. *Al-Ilmā' ilā ma'rifat uṣūl al-riwāyah wa-taqyīd al-samā'*, ed. Aḥmad Ṣaqr. Cairo/ Tunis, 1389/1970.

IN = Aḥmad ibn Ma'mūn al-Balghīthī. *Al-Ibtihāj bi-nūr al-Sirāj*. Cairo, 1319 A.H.

IP = Ḥusayn 'Alī Maḥfūz. "Ilm al-makḥṭūṭāt". *Al-Mawrid*, 5 (1976): 144-145.

IR = Sha'bān ibn Muḥammad al-Āthārī al-Qurashī. "Al-'Ināyah al-rabbānīyah fī al-ṭarīqah al-Sha'bānīyah", ed. Hilāl Nājī. *Al-Mawrid*, 8, no.2 (1979): 221-284.

IT = Muḥammad Marāyātī. *Ilm al-ta'miyah wa-istikhrāj al-mu'ammā 'inda al-'Arab*. Damascus, 1987? - .

IW = Muhammad Faris Jamil. "Islamic wiraqah 'stationery' during the early Middle Ages". Ph.D., University of Michigan, 1985.

- J -

JA = al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādī. *Al-Jāmi' li-akhḫāq al-rāwī wa-ādāb al-sāmi'*. Riyad, 1983.

JL = 'Abd al-Laṭīf Ibrāhīm. "Jildat muṣḥaf bi-Dār al-Kutub al-Miṣrīyah". *Majallat Kullīyat al-Ādāb* (Cairo), 20, no.1 (1958): 81-106, 6 pl.

JM = Muḥammad ibn Ḥasan al-Ṭībī. *Jāmi' maḥāsīn kitābat al-kuttāb*, ed. Ṣalāḥ al-Dīn al-Munajjid. Beirut, 1962.

JN = Jamāl al-Dīn ibn al-Muṭahhar al-Ḥillī. *Al-Jawhar al-naḍīd fī sharḥ manṭiq al-Tajrīd*. Qum, 1363 [1984].

- K -

KA = Suhaylah Yāsīn al-Jubūrī. *Al-Khaṭṭ al-'Arabī wa-taṭawwuruh fī al-ʿuṣūr al-'Abbāsīyah*. Baghdad, 1962.

KB = Aḥmad ibn al-Ḥājī al-'Ayyāshī Sukayrij. *Kashf al-ḥijāb 'aman talāqā ma'a al-Shaykh al-Tijānī min al-aṣḥāb*. S.l., s.n., 1961.

KC = Muḥammad al-Manūnī. "Al-Khizānah al-Maghribīyah fī 'aṣr al-Sulṭān al-Ḥasan al-awwal". *Al-Manāhil*, 38 (1989): 7-103.

KD = Abū Hilāl al-'Askarī. *Kitāb al-talkhīṣ fī ma'rīfat asmā' al-ashyā'*, ed. 'Izzat Ḥasan. Damascus, 1969.

KF = Ayman Fu'ād Sayyid. *Al-Kitāb al-'Arabī al-makḥṭūṭ wa-'ilm al-makḥṭūṭāt* (= *Le manuscrit arabe et la codicologie*). Cairo, 1997.

KG = Ja'far ibn Khidr al-Janāḥī. *Kashf al-ghīṭā'*. [Tehran?], 1317 [1889] (lithographed).

KH = Muḥammad ibn Sa'īd Sharīfī. *Khuṭūṭ al-maṣāḥif 'inda al-Mashāriqah wa-al-Maghāribah min al-qarn al-rābi' ilā al-'āshir al-hijrī*. Algiers, 1982.

KI = Zakī Muḥammad Ḥasan. “Al-Kitāb qabla ikhtirā‘ al-ṭibā‘ah”. *Al-Kitāb*, 2 (1946): 9-18.

KJ = ‘Uthmān al-Ka‘āk. “al-Khiṭāṭah al-Tūnisīyah”. *Majallat al-maktabah al-‘Arabīyah* (Cairo), 1, no. 1 (1963): 26-48; 1, no.3 (1964): 19-33.

KK = Abū al-Qāsim ‘Abd Allāh al-Baghdādī. “Kitāb al-kuttāb wa-ṣifat al-dawāh wa-al-qalam wa-taṣrīfuhā”, ed. Hilāl Nājī. *Al-Mawrid*, 2, no.2 (1973): 43-78.

KL = G. Fehervari and Y.H. Safadi. *1400 years of Islamic art: a descriptive catalogue*. London, 1981.

KM = ‘Alī ibn Ismā‘īl ibn Sīdah. *Kitāb al-mukhaṣṣaṣ*. Cairo, 1316-21 A.H.

KN = ‘Uthmān ibn Sa‘īd al-Dānī. *Al-Muqni‘ fī rasm maṣāḥif al-amṣār*, ed. Muḥammad Ṣādiq Qamḥawī. Cairo, 1978.

KR = Sihām Muḥammad al-Mahdī. *Dirāsāt al-makhṭū‘āt al-Islāmīyah bayna i’tibārāt al-māddah wa-al-bashar: a‘māl al-Mu’tamar al-Thānī li-Mu’assasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, ed. Rashīd al-‘Inānī. London, 1997: 77-91.

KS = Yūsuf al-Kattānī. “Khatamāt al-Ṣaḥīḥ al-Bukhārī”. *Da‘wat al-ḥaq*, no.240 (1984): 61-68.

KT = ‘Abd Allāh ibn Abī Dā‘ūd al-Sijistānī. “Kitāb al-maṣāḥif”. *Materials for the history of the text of the Qur’ān*, by Arthur Jeffery. Leiden, 1937: 125-161.

KU = ‘Abd Allāh ibn Ja‘far ibn Durustūyah (Durustawayh). *Kitāb al-kuttāb*, ed. Ibrāhīm al-Samarrā‘ī and ‘Abd al-Ḥusyan al-Fatī. Kuwait, 1977.

KZ = Asad ibn Mūsā. *Kitāb al-zuhd*, ed. Raif Georges Khoury. Wiesbaden, 1976.

- L -

LA = *Lughat al-‘Arab*. Baghdad, 1911-1931.

LB = Jan Just Witkam. “Lists of books in Arabic manuscripts”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 5 (1990-91): 123-136.

LC = Adam Gacek. “The language of catalogues of Arabic manuscripts”. *MELA Notes*, 48 (1989): 21-29.

LD = P.S. van Koningsveld and Q. Samarrai. *Localities and dates in Arabic manuscripts. Descriptive catalogue of a collection of Arabic manuscripts in the possession of E.J. Brill*. Leiden, 1978 (catalogue no.500).

LE = M. Ben Cheneb. “Liste des abréviations employées par les auteurs arabes”. *Revue africaine*, 302-303 (1920): 134-138.

LL = Edward William Lane. *Arabic-English lexicon*. Rev. ed. Cambridge, 1984.

LM = Ḥusayn ibn Yāsīn ibn Muḥammad al-Kātib. *Lamḥat al-mukhtaṭif fī šinā‘at al-khaṭṭ al-ṣalīf*, ed. Hayā Muḥammad al-Dawsarī. Kuwait, 1992.

LS = Frederick de Jong and Jan Just Witkam. “The library of šayḫ Kālīd al-Šahrazūrī al-Naqšabandī”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 2 (1987): 68-87.

LT = Muḥammad al-Manūnī. “Lamḥat ‘an ta’rīkh al-khaṭṭ al-‘Arabī fī al-gharb al-Islāmī ilā al-qarn 19”. *Al-Maṣādir al-‘Arabīyah li-ta’rīkh al-Maghrib: al-fatrah al-mu‘āširah, 1790-1930*, by Muḥammad al-Manūnī. Rabat, 1989: 2, 361-382.

- M -

MA = Muḥammad ibn Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥājǵ al-‘Abdarī al-Fāsī. *Al-Madkhal*. Cairo, 1929.

MB = al-Malik al-Muẓaffar Yūsuf ibn ‘Umar al-Ghassānī. *Al-Mukh-*

tarāʿ fī funūn min al-ṣunaʿ, ed. Muḥammad ʿĪsā Ṣāliḥīyah. Kuwait, 1989.

MC = Nājī Zayn al-Dīn. *Muṣawwar al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī*. Beirut, 1980.

MD = Muḥammad ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz Marzūq. “Al-Muṣḥaf al-sharīf: dirāsah fannīyah”. *Majallat al-Majmaʿ al-ʿIlmī al-ʿIrāqī*, 20 (1970): 88-137.

ME = A. Lamare. “Le muṣḥaf de la Mosquée de Cordoue”. *Journal asiatique*, 230 (1938): 551-575.

MF = al-Ḥasan ibn ʿAbd al-Raḥīm al-Rāmahurmuzī. *Al-Muḥaddith al-fāṣil bayna al-rāwī wa-al-wāʿī*, ed. Muḥammad ʿAjjāj al-Khaṭīb. Beirut, 1391/1971.

MG = Jalāl al-Dīn ʿAbd al-Raḥmān al-Suyūtī. *Al-Muzhir fī ʿulūm al-lughah wa-anwāʾihā*, ed. Muḥammad Aḥmad Jād al-Mawlā. Cairo, n.d.

MH = ʿUthmān ibn al-Ṣalāḥ al-Shahrazūrī. *Muqaddimat Ibn al-Ṣalāḥ fī ʿulūm al-ḥadīth*. Damascus, 1972.

MI = Muḥammad Riḍā al-Māmaqānī. *Muʿjam al-rumūz wa-al-ishārāt*. Beirut, 1992.

MJ = Muḥammad ibn Aḥmad al-Ziftāwī. “Minḥāj al-iṣābah fī maʿrifat al-khuṭūṭ wa-ālāt al-kitābah”, ed. Hilāl Nājī. *Al-Mawrid*, 15, no.4 (1986): 185-248.

MK = Etan Kohlberg. *A medieval Muslim scholar at work: Ibn Ṭāwūs and his library*. Leiden, 1992.

ML = ʿAbd al-Raḥīm ibn ʿAlī ibn Shīth al-Qurashī. *Maʿālim al-kitābah wa-maghānim al-iṣābah*. Beirut, 1913.

MM = ʿAbd al-Bāsiṭ al-ʿAlmawī. *Al-Muʿd fī adab al-muʿfīd wa-al-mustafīd*. Damascus, 1349 [1930].

MN = ʿAfīf al-Bahnassī. *Muʿjam muṣṭalaḥāt al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī wa-al-khaṭṭātīn*. Beirut, 1995.

MO = David James. *The master scribes: Qur'ans of the 11th to 14th centuries*. London/Oxford, 1992.

MP = Martin Levey. "Mediaeval Arabic bookmaking and its relation to early chemistry and pharmacology". *Transactions of the American Philosophical Society*, N.S., 52, pt.4 (1962).

MQ = Aḥmad Rizq Muṣṭafá al-Sawāhili. "Min qaḍāyā al-ḥarf al-ʿArabī: al-taṣḥīf wa-al-taḥrīf". *Ālam al-kutub*, 14, no.6 (1993): 641-649.

MR = Badr al-Dīn Muḥammad ibn Jamāʿah al-Kinānī. *Al-Manhal al-rāwī fī mukhtaṣar ʿulūm al-ḥadīth al-nabawī*, ed. Muḥyī al-Dīn ʿAbd al-Raḥmān Ramaḍān. Damascus, 1986.

MS = Muḥammad al-Manūnī. "Taʾrīkh al-muṣḥaf al-sharīf bi-al-Maghrib". *Majallat Maʿhad al-Makḥṭūʿāt al-ʿArabīyah*, 15, no.1 (1969): 3-47.

MT = Adam Gacek. "Makḥṭūʿāt ṭibbīyah ʿArabīyah fī Maktabat al-Dirāsāt al-Sharqīyah al-Ifriqīyah", transl. ʿAdnan Jawwād al-Ṭumʿah. *Al-Mawrid*, 18, no.2 (1989): 201-203.

MU = Yāqūt ibn ʿAbd Allāh al-Ḥamawī. *Muʿjam al-udabāʾ*. Cairo, 1936-38.

MV = François Déroche. "Les manuscrits arabes datés du IIIe/IXe siècle". *Revue des études islamiques*, 55/57 (1987/89): 343-379.

MW = Ibrāhīm al-Samarrāʾī. "Al-Mukhtaṣarāt wa-al-rumūz fī al-turāth al-ʿArabī". *Majallat Majmaʿ al-Lughah al-ʿArabīyah al-Urdunī*, 32 (1987): 105-114.

MY = François Déroche. "Maîtres et disciples: la transmission de la culture calligraphique dans le monde musulman". *Revue du monde musulman et de la Méditerranée*, 75/76 (1995): 81-90.

MZ = Rudolf Sellheim. *Materialien zur arabischen Literaturgeschichte*. Wiesbaden/ Stuttgart, 1976-87.

- N -

NA = Aḥmad ibn ‘Abd al-Wahhāb al-Nuwayrī. *Nihāyat al-arab fī funūn al-adab*. Cairo, 1342/1923 - .

NC = Adam Gacek. “Al-Nuwayrī’s classification of Arabic scripts”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 2 (1987): 126-130.

ND = J. Sadan. “Nouveaux documents sur scribes et copistes”. *Revue des études islamiques*, 45 (1977): 1-87.

NH = Ibrāhīm Shabbūh. “ Naḥwa mu’jam ta’rīkhī li-muṣṭalaḥ wa-nuṣūṣ funūn šinā’at al-makḥṭūṭ al-‘Arabī”. *Šiyānah wa-ḥifẓ al-makḥṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah: a’māl al-Mu’tamar al-Thālith li-Mu’assasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, 18- 19 Nūfimbir 1995, ed. Ibrāhīm Shabbūh. London, 1418/1998: 341-393.

NI = ‘Abbās al-‘Azzāwī. “Nuṣūṣ fī ijāzāt al-khaṭṭātīn”. *Al-Mawrid*, 1, nos.3-4 (1971-72): 180-186.

NM = ‘Abd al-‘Azīz al-Šāwirī. “Nadwah: al-makḥṭūṭ al-‘Arabī wa-‘ilm al-makḥṭūṭ al-‘Arabī”. *Ālam al-kutub*, 13, no.2 (1992): 679-683.

NO = Dimitri Gutas. “Notes and texts from Cairo manuscripts, II: texts from Avicenna’s library ...”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 2 (1987): 8-17.

NS = S.A. Bonebakker. “Notes on some old manuscripts of the ‘Adab al-kātib’ of Ibn Qutaybah, the ‘Kitāb aṣ-šinā’atayn’ of Abū Hilāl al-‘Askarī and the ‘Maṭal as-sā’ir’ of Ḍiyā’ al-Dīn ibn al-Aṭīr”. *Oriens*, 13-14 (1960-61): 159-194.

NT = Aḥmad ibn Muḥammad al-Maqqarī. *Nafḥ al-ṭīb min ghuṣn al-Andalus al-raṭīb*. Cairo, 1367/1949.

NW = Muḥammad ibn Abī al-Khayr al-Ḥasanī al-Dimashqī. *Al-Nujūm al-shāriqāt fī dhikr ba’d al-šanā’i’ al-muḥtāj ilayhā fī ‘ilm al-miqāt (!)*. Damascus, 1928.

NZ = Aḥmad Shawqī Binbīn. “Nizām al-ta’qībāh”. *Fann fahrasat al-*

makhṭūṭāt: madkhal wa-qaḍāyā, by Fayṣal al-Ḥafyān. Cairo, 1999: 65-72.

- O -

OD = François Déroche. "O. Houdas et les écritures maghrébines". *Al-Makhṭūṭ al-ʿArabī wa-ʿilm al-makhṭūṭāt* (= *Le manuscrit arabe et la codicologie*). Rabat, 1994 : 75-81.

OH = J. Derek Latham. "Observations on the text and translation of al-Jarsīfī's Treatise on 'Hisba'". *Journal of Semitic studies*, 5 (1960): 124-143.

OM = Adam Gacek. "On the making of local paper: a thirteenth century Yemeni recipe". *Revue des mondes musulmans et de la Méditerranée* (forthcoming).

OS = Adam Gacek. "Ownership statements and seals in Arabic manuscripts". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 2 (1987): 88-95.

OT = Adam Gacek and Ali Yaycioğlu. "Ottoman-Turkish manuscripts in the Islamic Studies Library and other libraries of McGill University". *Fontanus: from the collections of McGill University*, 10 (1998): 41-63.

- P -

PA = Yves Porter. *Peinture et arts du livre: essai sur la littérature technique indo-persane*. Paris/Teheran, 1992.

PK = S.H. Alič. "Problem kratica u arapskim rukopisima sa spiskom arapskih kratica iz 16 vjeka". *Prilozi Orientalnu Filologiju*, 26 (1976): 199-212.

PT = Terence Walz. "The paper trade of Egypt and the Sudan in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries". *Modernization in the Sudan: essays in honour of Richard Hill*, ed. M.W. Daly. New York, 1985: 29-48.

- Q -

QF = Ṣalāḥ al-Dīn al-Munajjid. *Qawā'id fahrasat al-makḥṭū'āt al-'Arabīyah*. Beirut, 1973.

QS = Muḥammad Sa'īd al-Qāsimī. *Qāmūs al-ṣinā'āt al-Shāmīyah*. Paris, 1960.

- R -

RA = William L. Hanaway and Brian Spooner. *Reading nasta'liq: Persian and Urdu hands from 1500 to the present*. Costa Mesa, 1995.

RI = W. Bull. "Rebinding Islamic manuscripts, a new direction". *Bookbinder*, 1 (1987): 21-38.

RN = Nabia Abbott. *The rise of the North Arabic script and its kur'ānic development*. Chicago, 1938.

- S -

SA = Aḥmad ibn 'Alī al-Qalqashandī. *Ṣubḥ al-a'shā fī ṣinā'at al-inshā'*. Cairo, 1383/1963 (reprint of 'al-Ṭab'ah al-Amīriyah', 1913-1920).

SD = R. Dozy. *Supplément aux dictionnaires arabes*. 3rd ed. Paris, 1967.

SJ = Ibrāhīm Shabbūḥ. "Sijill qadīm li-Maktabat Jāmi' Qayrawān". *Majallat Ma'had al-Makḥṭū'āt al-'Arabīyah*, 2 (1956): 339-372.

SK = Abū Ja'far Aḥmad ibn Muḥammad al-Naḥḥās. *Ṣinā'at al-kuttāb*, ed. Badr Aḥmad Ḍayyif. Beirut, 1410/1990.

SL = Nabia Abbott. *Studies in Arabic literary papyri*. Chicago, 1957-72.

SM = Ibn al-Baṣṭī. "Sharḥ al-manẓūmah al-mustaṭābah fī 'ilm al-kitābah", ed. Hilāl Nājī. *Al-Mawrid*, 15, no.4 (1986): 259-270.

SS = Aḥmad Khān. “Samāʿāt muʿallafāt al-Ṣaghānī al-lughawīyah”. *Majallat Maʿhad al-Makḥṭūʿāt al-ʿArabīyah*, 41, no.1 (1997): 55-90.

ST = Aḥmad ibn Muḥammad al-Sufyānī. *Ṣināʿat tasfīr al-kutub wa-ḥall al-dhahab*, ed. P. Ricard. Paris, 1925.

- T -

TA = Yvette Sauvan. “Un traité à l’usage des scribes à l’époque nasride”. *Les manuscrits du Moyen Orient*, ed. François Déroche. Paris/Istanbul, 1989: 49-50.

TB = Yaḥyá ibn Sharaf al-Nawawī. *Al-Tibyān fī ādāb ḥamlat al-Qurʿān*. Damascus, 1965.

TC = Muḥammad al-Manūnī. “Taqnīyāt iʿdād al-makḥṭūʿ al-Maghribī”. *Al-Makḥṭūʿ al-ʿArabī wa-ʿilm al-makḥṭūʿāt* (= *Le manuscrit arabe et la codicologie*). Rabat, 1994: 11-32.

TD = ʿAbd al-Ḥayy al-Kattānī. *Kitāb al-tarāṭīb al-idārīyah wa-al-ʿamālāt wa-al-ṣināʿāt wa-al-matājir wa-al-ḥālah al-ʿilmīyah*. Rabat, 1346-49 A.H.

TE = Adam Gacek. “Some technical terms relative to the execution of Arabic manuscripts”. *MELA notes*, 50-51 (1990): 13-18.

TF = Murād al-Rammāḥ. “Tasāfīr Maktabat al-Qayrawān al-ʿatīqah”. *Dirāsāt al-makḥṭūʿāt al-Islāmīyah bayna iʿtibārāt al-māddah wa-al-bashar: aʿmāl al-Muʿtamar al-Thānī li-Muʿassasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, ed. Rashīd al-ʿInānī. London, 1997: 135-150.

TH = Aḥmad Shākir. *Taṣḥīḥ al-kutub wa-ṣunʿ al-fahāris al-muʿjamah wa-kayfiyyat dabṭ al-kitāb wa-sabq al-Muslimīn wa-al-Ifranji fī dhālik*. Beirut, 1995.

TI = Ṭāhir ibn Ṣāliḥ al-Jazāʾirī. *Tashīl al-majāz ilā fann al-muʿammā wa-al-alghāz*. Damascus, 1303 A.H.

TK = Muḥammad ibn Muḥammad al-Qalalūsī. *Tuḥaf al-khawāṣṣ fī ṭuraf al-khawāṣṣ*. MS (Paris, Bibliothèque nationale, arabe 6844).

TL = Burhān al-Dīn al-Zarnūjī. *Ta'īīm al-muta'allim ṭarīq al-ta'allum*, ed. Marwān Qabbānī. Beirut, 1981.

TM = Badr al-Dīn Muḥammad ibn Jamā'ah al-Kinānī. *Tadhkirat al-sāmi' wa-al-mutakallim fī adab al-'ālim wal-muta'allim*. Hyderabad, 1353/1934.

TN = 'Abd al-Salām Hārūn. *Tahqīq al-nuṣūṣ wa-nashruhā*. Kuwait, n.d.

TP = Adam Gacek. "Technical practices and recommendations recorded by classical and post-classical Arabic scholars concerning the copying and correction of manuscripts". *Les manuscrits du Moyen Orient*, ed. F. Déroche. Paris/Istanbul, 1989: 51-60, pl. xx-xxxii. [Includes a facsimile of Chapter 6 from 'al-Durr al-naḍīd fī ādāb al-mufīd wa-al-mustafīd' by Badr al-Dīn al-Ghazzī.]

TQ = al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādī. *Taqyīd al-'ilm*, ed. Yūsuf al-'Ishsh. Damascus, 1949.

TS = Bakr ibn Ibrāhīm al-Ishbīlī. "Kitāb al-taysīr fī ṣinā'at al-tasfīr", ed. 'Abd Allāh Kannūn. *Revista del Instituto de Estudios Islámicos en Madrid*, 7-8 (1959-60): 1-42.

TT = 'Abd al-Hādī al-Faḍlī. *Tahqīq al-turāth*. Jedda, 1982.

TU = 'Abd al-Raḥmān ibn Yūsuf ibn al-Ṣā'igh. *Tuhfat ūlī al-albāb fī ṣinā'at al-khaṭṭ wa-al-kitāb*, ed. Hilāl Nājī. Tunis, 1967.

TW = Muḥammad al-Manūnī. *Ta'rīkh al-wirāqah al-Maghribīyah: ṣinā'at al-makḥṭūṭ al-Maghribī min al-'aṣr al-wasīṭ ilā al-fatrah al-mu'āṣirah*. Rabat, 1991.

- U -

UA = Nūr al-Dīn al-'Usaylī. "Urjūzah fī ālāt dawāt al-kātib". *Al-Durar al-farā'id al-munazzamah fī akhbār al-ḥājj wa-ṭarīq Makkah al-Mu'azzamah*, by 'Abd al-Qādir ibn Muḥammad al-Anṣārī al-Jazīlī, ed. Ḥamd al-Jāsir. Riyad, Dār al-Yamāmah, 1983: 1, 392-393.

UD = ‘Abd Allāh al-Hītī. *Al-‘Umdah: risālah fī al-khaṭṭ wa-al-qalam*, ed. Hilāl Nājī. Baghdad, 1970.

UI = *The unique Ibn al-Bawwab manuscript: complete facsimile edition of the earliest surviving naskhi Qur’an*, Chester Beatty Library, Dublin. Graz, 1983.

UK = al-Mu‘izz ibn Bādīs. “Umdat al-kuttāb wa-‘uddat dhawī al-albāb”, ed. ‘Abd al-Sattār al-Ḥalwājī and ‘Alī ‘Abd al-Muḥsin Zakī. *Majallat Ma’had al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah*, 17 (1971): 43-172.

US = Adam Gacek. “The use of ‘kabīkaj’ in Arabic manuscripts”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 1 (1986): 49-53.

- V -

VA = Wilhelm Ahlwardt. *Verzeichnis der arabischen Handschriften*. Hildesheim/New York, 1980.

- W -

WA = Muḥammad al-Manūnī. “Al-Wirāqah al-‘Alawīyah ‘abra sab‘at ‘uqūd min al-mi’ah al-hijrīyah al-thālithah ‘ashrata”. *Da‘wat al-ḥaqq*, 23, no.4 (1982): 10-24.

WB = Muḥammad al-Manūnī. “Al-Wirāqah al-Maghribīyah fī ‘ahd al-Sulṭān al-‘Alawī Muḥammad al-Thālith”. *Da‘wat al-ḥaqq*, 18, no.2 (1977): 45-56.

WM = Aḥmad ibn Yaḥyá al-Wansharīsī. *Al-Mi‘yār al-mu‘rib wa-al-jāmi‘ al-mughrib*. Beirut, 1981-83.

WR = Muḥammad al-Manūnī. “Al-Wirāqah al-Maghribīyah fī ‘aṣr al-‘Alawī al-awwal”. *Da‘wat al-ḥaqq*, 16, no.10 (1975): 80-92.

WS = Ḥabīb Zayyāt. *Al-Wirāqah wa-ṣinā‘at al-kitābah wa-mu‘jam al-sufun*. Beirut, 1992.

- Y -

YM = Sulaymān al-Balkhī. *Yanābī' al-mawaddah li-dhī al-qurbā*. Tehran, 1308 [1890-1] (lithographed).

- Z -

ZM = Farīd Shāfī'ī. "Zakhārif muṣḥaf bi-Dār al-Kutub al-Miṣrīyah". *Majallat Kullīyat al-Ādāb* (Cairo), 17, no.1 (1955): 43-48, 6 pl.

2. Technical terms in the glossary

ع = a'lá Allāh maqāmahu
 الخ = ilá ākhirih
 لم / لم = āmīn
 انشه / انشد = in shā'a Allāh (istithnā')
 اه = intahá
 ب = ba'du; bāb; bayān; Rajab
 ت = ta'līqah
 تع / تعد = ta'ālá
 ث = tathlīth
 ج / ج / ج = Jumādá al-Ūlá
 ج / ج = Jumādá al-Ākhirah
 ج / ج = juz'; jazmah; jawāb;
 jā'iz (see under waqf)
 جش = jalla sha'nuh (tajlīl)
 ح = ḥa'il (taḥwīl, ḥaylūlah)
 د / حر = ḥasbunā Allāh (ḥasbalah)
 د / حش = ḥāshiyah
 خ = ta'khīr (mu'akhhkar);
 nuskhah (ukhrá)
 خ / د = nuskhah (ukhrá)
 د خ = nuskhah-badal
 خ ل = nuskhah-badal; nuskhah-aṣl
 خف = mukhaffaf
 ذ = Dhū al-Ḥijjah

ذ = Dhū al-Qa'dah
 ر = Rabī' al-Thānī, Rajab
 ر = Rabī' al-Awwal
 ر = Rabī' al-Thānī
 ر / رض / رضه = raḍiya Allāh 'anhu (tarḍiyah)
 ره = raḥimahu Allāh (tarḥīm);
 raḍiya Allāh 'anhu (tarḍiyah);
 numrah
 ره / رم = raḥimahu Allāh (tarḥīm)
 ز = zā'idah
 س = qaddasa Allāh sirrahu or rūḥahu (taqdīs); su'āl
 الش = al-shāriḥ
 ش = sharḥ; Sha'bān; Shawwāl
 شا = in shā'a Allāh (istithnā')
 شع = Sha'bān
 ص = aṣl; ṣaḥīḥ; ṣāhib; ṣawāb (ṣawābuhu); ṣallá Allāh 'alayhi (ṣalwalah); Ṣafar
 صح = ṣaḥīḥ
 صل = aṣl
 ص / صلعم / صلعم / صلعه / صلعم = ṣallá Allāh 'alayhi (ṣalwalah)
 ض = bayāḍ; raḍiya Allāh

‘anhu (tarḍiyah); ḍabbah (taḍ-bīb)

ط = ṭurrah; faqaṭ

طه / طر = ṭāba Allāh tharāhu

طع / طعه / طعه = aṭāla Allāh ‘umrahu

ظ = ḡann ; ḡāhir; unḡur

ع / عه = ma‘ṭūfah; ta‘shīrah; sa-mā‘; ‘ūriḍa; ‘an fulān; far‘; raj‘;

la‘allahu; rukū‘

ع الله = la‘anahu Allāh

ع / عه / عه / عه =

‘alayhi al-salām (taslīmah)

عج / عج = ‘azza wa-jalla

عج = ‘ajjala Allāh farajahu

عط / عط = ma‘ṭūfah

ع ١ / ع ١ = Rabī‘ al-Awwal

ع ٢ = Rabī‘ al-Thānī

عه = la‘allahu

غ = ghalāṭ

فيه / ف = fā‘idah

فت = fa-ta‘ammal(hu); fa-tadab-bar(hu)

فصل / فصل = fā‘idat al-aṣl

فقی = fa-qāla

فیق = fa-yuqāl

ق = qāla; qabla; taqdīm (mu-qaddam); waraqah

ق / قد / قد / قد = qaddasa Allāh sirrahu or rūḡahu (taq-dīs)

قع = Dhū al-Qa‘dah

قه = qawluhu

ك / ك = kurrās(ah); kadhā; kata-ba(hu)

كه = katabahu

ل = badal (baddilhu); aṣl; Shawwāl

لع = la‘anahu Allāh

م = matn; tamma; malzamah; Muḡarram; lāzim (see under waqf)

المج = al-muḡashshī

مخ = mu‘akhkhar muqaddam

المصد = al-muṣannif

مض = Ramaḍān

معط = ma‘ṭūfah

مم = muqaddam mu‘akhkhar

ن = bayān; nuskhah (ukhrá); Ramaḍān

نخ / نخ = nuskhah (ukhrá)

ه = hāmish

ه / ه = ta‘līqah

ه / هی = intahá

و = waraqah

یق = yuqāl

This page intentionally left blank

PART TWO

BIBLIOGRAPHY

This page intentionally left blank

The present bibliography, apart from a number of entries in Turkish and Persian, includes the research published in Arabic and European languages on various aspects of the Arabic manuscript tradition. It does not, however, reproduce all the entries found in the bibliographies listed below in Section I.1. The bibliography has been arranged by subject with the result that some entries are repeated in the various sections due to their broader coverage.

Arabic manuscripts cannot be studied in isolation. Indeed, many practices and phenomena connected with Arabic manuscripts are also to be found in the Hebrew, Greek and Latin manuscript traditions. It is therefore appropriate to mention here a number of important references dealing with the codicologies and palaeographies of the latter. Their usefulness for the study of Arabic manuscripts will be evident for anyone who consults them.

Ancient and medieval book materials and techniques, ed. M. Maniaci and P. Munafò. Vatican City, 1993. 2 vols.

Archéologie du livre médiéval: exposition organisée par le Centre national de la recherche scientifique et la Bibliothèque nationale. Paris, 1988.

Beit-Arié, Malachi. *Hebrew codicology: tentative typology of technical practices employed in Hebrew dated medieval manuscripts*. Paris, 1976.

——— *The makings of the medieval Hebrew book: studies in palaeography and codicology*. Jerusalem, 1993.

Bischoff, Bernhard. *Latin palaeography: Antiquity and the Middle Ages*. Transl. by Dáibhí Ó Cróinín and David Ganz. Cambridge, 1990.

Boyle, Leonard. *Medieval Latin palaeography: a bibliographical introduction*. Toronto, 1984.

Bozzolo, Carla. *Pour une histoire du livre manuscrit au Moyen Age: trois essais de codicologie quantitative*. Paris, 1983.

Cockerell, Sydney M. *Bookbinding, and the care of books: a text-book for book-binders and librarians*. 5th ed. London/New York, 1953 (repr. 1979).

Codicologica: towards a science of handwritten books, ed. A. Gruys and J.P. Gumbert. Leiden, 1976-1980. 5 vols.

Dain, Alphonse. *Les manuscrits*. Paris, 1997.

- Les débuts du codex*, ed. A. Blanchard. Turnhout, 1989.
- Delamare, François and Guineau, Bernard. *Les matériaux de la couleur*. Paris, 1999.
- Diringer, David. *The hand-produced book*. New York, 1953.
- Dukan, M. *La réglure des manuscrits hébreux au Moyen-Age*. Paris, 1988.
- Gallo, Italo. *Greek and Latin papyrology*. London, 1986.
- Glaister, Geoffrey Ashall. *Encyclopedia of the book*. 2nd ed. New Castle, Del., 1996.
- Glenisson, Jean. *Le livre au Moyen Age*. Paris, 1988.
- Grujjs, M. Albert. "Paléographie, codicologie et archéologie du livre. Questions de méthodologie et de terminologie". *La paléographie hébraïque médiévale, Paris, 11-13 septembre 1972*. Paris, 1974 : 19-25.
- Johnston, Edward. *Writing & illuminating, & lettering*. London/New York, 1977.
- Kristeller, Paul O. "Tasks and problems of manuscripts research". *Codicologica*, 1 (1976): 84-90.
- Lemaire, Jacques. *Introduction à la codicologie*. Louvain-la-Neuve, 1989.
- Maniaci, M. *Terminologia del libro manuscritto*. Rome, 1996.
- Les manuscrits datés: premiers bilans et perspectives (= Die datierten Handschriften: erste Bilanz und Perspektiven)*. Neuchâtel/Neuenburg, 1983. Paris, 1985.
- Murdoch, John E. *Album of science: Antiquity and the Middle Ages*. New York, 1984.
- Muzerelle, Denis. *Vocabulaire codicologique: répertoire méthodique des termes français relatifs aux manuscrits*. Paris, 1985.
- Pigments et colorants de l'Antiquité et du Moyen-Age: teinture, peinture, enluminure, études historiques et physico-chimiques*. Paris, 1990.
- Recherches de codicologie comparée: la composition du codex au Moyen-Age en Orient et en Occident*, ed. P. Hoffmann. Paris, 1998.
- Reynolds, L.D. and Wilson, N.G. *Scribes and scholars: a guide to the transmission of Greek and Latin literature*. 2nd ed. Oxford, 1974.
- Roberts, C. H. "The codex". *Proceedings of the British Academy*, 40 (1954): 169-204.
- Roberts, C.H. and Skeat, T.C. *The birth of the codex*. London, 1983.

- Shailor, Barbara A. *The medieval book: illustrated from the Beinecke Rare Book and Manuscript Library, Yale University*. Toronto, 1991.
- Sirat, Colette. *Du scribe au livre: les manuscrits hébreux au Moyen Age*. Paris, 1994.
- Les techniques de laboratoire dans l'étude des manuscrits*. Paris, 13-15 septembre 1972. Paris, CNRS, 1974.
- Thompson, E. Maunde. *An introduction to Greek and Latin palaeography*. Oxford, 1912.
- Les tranchefiles brodées: études historique et technique*. Paris, 1989.
- Turner, Eric G. *The typology of the early codex*. [Philadelphia], 1977.
- West, Martin L. *Textual criticism and editorial technique applicable to Greek and Latin texts*. Stuttgart, 1972.
- Wouters, A. "From papyrus roll to papyrus codex: some technical aspects of the ancient book fabrication". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 5 (1990-91): 9-19.

I. GENERAL AND INTRODUCTORY STUDIES

I. 1. Bibliographies

- ‘Abd al-Hādī, Maḥammad Faṭḥī. *Al-Turāth al-‘Arabī al-Islāmī: biblyūj-rāfiyah bi-al-intāj al-fikrī al-‘Arabī min 1882 ilā 1998*. London, Mu‘assasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī. 1419/1999.
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān, ‘Abd al-Jabbār. *Kashshāf al-dawriyāt al-‘Arabīyah*. Baghdad, 1989. 4 vols.
- Dhayyāb, Miftāḥ Muḥammad. "Ḥarakat al-ta’līf wa-al-kutub wa-al-maktabāt". *Majallat Kullīyat al-Da‘wah al-Islāmīyah* (Tripoli, Libya), 6 (1989): 367-398.
- Endress, Gerhard. "Handschriftenkunde". *Grundriss der arabischen Philologie*. Band I: *Sprachwissenschaft*, herausgegeben von W. Fischer. Wiesbaden, 1982: 306-315.
- Gacek, Adam. "A select bibliography of Arabic language publications concerning Arabic manuscripts". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 1 (1986): 106-108.
- "Arabic language publications on manuscripts (Part I)". *Nouvelles des manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, VII/1 (1998): 3-8.
- "Arabic language publications on manuscripts (Part II)". *Nouvelles des manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, VII/2 (1998): 2-7.
- Index Islamicus on CD-ROM*. London/New York, 1998.

I. 2. Periodicals

- ‘Ālam al-makhṭūṭāt wa-al-nawādir*. Riyad, 1 (1996) – .
- Fichier des manuscrits moyen-orientaux datés (FiMMOD)*. (Published in loose-leaf format within *Nouvelles des manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*), ed. François Déroche. Paris, 1991- .
- Majallat Ma’had al-Makhṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah*. Cairo, 1 (1955) – .
- Manuscripta Orientalia. International journal for Oriental manuscript research*. St.Petersburg/Helsinki, 1, no.1 (1995) – .
- Manuscripts of the Middle East: a journal devoted to the study of hand written materials of the Middle East*, ed. J.J. Witkam. Leiden, 1 (1986) – .
- Nouvelles des manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. François Déroche et al. Paris, 1991– .

I. 3. Conference proceedings and composite works

- Aḥammīyat al-makhṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah. A’māl al-Mu’tamar al-Iftitāḥī li-Mu’assasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*. London, 1992.
- The book in the Islamic world: the written word and communication in the Middle East*, ed. George N. Atiyeh. Albany, NY, 1995.
- The codicology of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Second Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation, 1993*, ed. Y. Dutton. London, 1995.
- The conservation and preservation of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Third Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation 18th-19th November 1995*, ed. Yusuf Ibish and George Atiyeh. London, 1996.
- Dirāsāt al-makhṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah bayna i’tibārāt al-māddah wa-al-bashar. A’māl al-Mu’tamar al-Thānī li-Mu’assasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, ed. Rashīd al-‘Inānī. London, 1997.
- Editing Islamic manuscripts on science. Proceedings of the Fourth Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation, 29th-30th November 1997*, ed. Yusuf Ibish. London, 1420/1999.
- Fann fahrasat al-makhṭūṭāt: madkhal wa-qaḍāyā*, ed. Fayṣal al-Ḥafyān. Cairo, Ma’had al-Makhṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah, 1999.
- “Livres et lecture dans le monde ottoman”, thème sous la responsabilité de Frédéric Hitzel. *Revue des mondes musulmans et de la Méditerranée*, 87/88 (1999).

- Al-Makhṭūṭ al-ʿArabī wa-ʿilm al-makhṭūṭāt* (= *Le manuscrit arabe et la codicologie*). Rabat, 1994.
- Al-Makhṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah fī al-Gharb al-Islāmī: waḍʿīyat al-majmūʿat wa-āfāq al-baḥṡ* (= *Manuscripts arabes en occident musulman*). Casablanca, Muʾassasat al-Malik ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz, 1990.
- Les manuscrits du Moyen-Orient: essais de codicologie et de paléographie. Actes du colloque d'Istanbul (Istanbul, 26-29 mai 1986)*, ed. F. Déroche. Istanbul/Paris, 1989.
- Le papier au moyen âge: histoire et techniques*, ed. M. Zerdoun Bat-Yehouda. Turnhout, 1999.
- “Patrimoine manuscrit et vie intellectuelle de l’Asie centrale islamique”, sous la direction de Ashirbek Muminov, Francis Richard et Maria Szuppe. *Cahiers d’Asie centrale*, 7 (1999).
- Recherches de codicologie comparée: la composition du codex au Moyen Age en Orient et en Occident*. Paris, 1998.
- Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997.
- The significance of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Inaugural Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation (30th November – 1st December 1991)*, ed. John Cooper. London, 1992.
- Ṣināʿat al-makhṭūṭ al-ʿArabī al-Islāmī min al-tarmīm ilā al-tajlīd: al-dawrah al-tadrībīyah al-dawlīyah al-ūlā*, Dubayy, *al-Imārāt al-ʿArabīyah al-Muttaḥidah*, min 26 Dhū al-Ḥijjah 1417 h. ilā 9 Muḥarram 1418 h. *al-muwāfiq* 3 Māyū 1997 m. ilā 15 Māyū 1997 m. Dubai, Markaz al-Jumʿah al-Majīd lil-Thaqāfah wa-al-Turāth, [1997].
- Ṣiyānah wa-ḥifẓ al-makhṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah. Aʿmāl al-Muʾtamar al-Thālīth li-Muʾassasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, 18-19 Nov. 1995, ed. Ibrāhīm Shabbūh. London, 1998.
- Taḥqīq makhṭūṭāt al-ʿulūm fī al-turāth al-Islāmī: abḥāth al-Muʾtamar al-Rābiʿ li-Muʾassasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, 29-30 Nov. 1997, ed. Ibrāhīm Shabbūh. London, 1999.
- Al-Tajārīb al-ʿArabīyah fī fahrasat al-makhṭūṭāt*, ed. Fayṣal al-Ḥafyān. Cairo, Maʾhad al-Makhṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah, 1998.
- “La tradition manuscrite en écriture arabe”, thème sous la responsabilité de Geneviève Humbert. *Revue des mondes musulmans et de la Méditerranée*, (forthcoming).

Al-Turāth al-ʿilmī al-ʿArabī: manāhij taḥqīqih wa-ishkālāt nashrih, ed. Fayṣal al-Ḥafyān. Cairo, Maʿhad al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah, 2000.

I. 4. General studies and surveys

- ʿAbd al-Hādī, ʿAdnān. “Tadwīn al-makḥṭūṭ al-ʿArabī fī al-ʿaṣr al-ʿUthmānī, 922-1225”. *Ālam al-kutub*, 11, no.2 (1990): 189-197.
- Akimushkin, Oleg F., Khalidov, Anas B. and Rezyan, Efim A. “The triumph of the qalam”. *Pages of perfection. Islamic paintings and calligraphy from the Russian Academy of Sciences, St. Petersburg*. Lugano/Milan, 1995: 35-75.
- al-ʿAlī, Ṣāliḥ Aḥmad. “Al-Tadwīn wa-zuhūr al-kutub al-muṣannafah fī al-ʿuhūd al-Islāmīyah al-ūlā”. *Majallat al-Majmaʿ al-ʿIlmī al-ʿIrāqī*, 31, no.2 (1980): 3-46.
- Amān, Muḥammad Muḥammad. *Al-Kutub al-Islāmīyah*. Tarjamah wa-taʿlīq Saʿd ibn ʿAbd Allāh al-Ḥubayʿān. Riyad, Maktabat al-Malik Fahd al-Waṭanīyah, 1411/ 1990. [Based on his “Islamic books”, *Encyclopaedia of Library and Information Science*. New York, 1968-83: 13, 90-111.]
- Arnold, T.W. and Grohmann, Adolf. *The Islamic book: a contribution to its art and history from the VIIth to the XIIIth century*. [Florence], 1929.
- ʿAṭāʾ Allāh, Samīr. *Taʾrīkh wa-fann ṣināʿat al-kitāb*. Beirut, Dār ʿAṭāʾ Allāh, 1993.
- ʿAṭīyah, Muḥyī al-Dīn. *Al-Kitāb al-Islāmī*. Kuwait, Dār al-Buḥūth al-ʿIlmīyah, 1982.
- Bencherifa (Binsharīfah), Mohamed. “Problems of attribution in historical and geographical works”. *The codicology of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Second Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation, 1993*, ed. Y. Dutton. London, 1995: 103-121.
- “Zāhirat al-makḥṭūṭāt majhūlat al-muʿallif: al-makḥṭūṭāt al-taʾrīkhīyah wa-al-jughrafiyah mithālan”. *Dirāsāt al-makḥṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah bayna iʿtibārāt al-māddah wa-al-bashar. Aʿmāl al-Muʿtamar al-Thānī li-Muʿassasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, ed. Rashīd al-ʿInānī. London, 1997: 207-227.
- Bielawski, Józef. *Książka w świecie Islamu*. Warsaw, 1961.
- Binbīn, Aḥmad Shawqī. *Dirāsāt fī ʿilm al-makḥṭūṭāt wa-al-baḥṭh al-bibliyūghrafī*. Rabat, Jāmiʿat Muḥammad al-Khāmis, Kulliyat al-Ādāb wa-al-ʿUlūm al-Insānīyah, 1993.

- Bin Zuwaytīn, al-Shādhilī. *Ta'rikh al-kitāb bi-Tūnis qadīman wa-ḥadīthan, khaṭṭan wa-nasākhatan, ṭibā'an wa-nashran, ishāratan wa-tawzī'an* Tunis, 1997.
- Déroche, François et al. *Manuel de codicologie des manuscrits en écriture arabe*. Paris, Bibliothèque nationale de France, 2000.
- Endress, Gerhard. "Handschriftenkunde". *Grundriss der arabischen Philologie*, Band I: *Sprachwissenschaft*, herausgegeben von W. Fischer. Wiesbaden, 1982: 271-291.
- al-Ḥalwājī, 'Abd al-Sattār. *Al-Makhṭūṭ al-'Arabī*. Cairo, Dār al-Thaqā-fah, 1986. [2nd revised ed.: Jeddah, Maktabat Miṣbāḥ, 1989.]
- . "Al-Makhṭūṭāt al-'Arabīyah bayna al-ta'līf wa-al-implā". *Majallat Kullīyat al-Lughah al-'Arabīyah* (Riyad), 4 (1974): 303-311.
- Ḥammūdah, Maḥmūd 'Abbās. *Ta'rikh al-kitāb al-Islāmī al-makhṭūṭ*. Cairo, Dār Gharīb, 1994.
- al-Jubūrī, Yaḥyá Wahīb. *Al-Kitāb fī al-ḥaḍārah al-Islāmīyah* (=The book in Islamic civilization). Beirut, Dār al-Gharb al-Islāmī, 1998.
- al-Ka'āk, 'Uthmān. "Al-Khiṭāṭ al-Tūnisīyah". *Majallat al-Maktabah al-'Arabīyah* (Cairo), 1, no.1 (1963): 26-48; 1, no.3 (1964): 19-33.
- al-Kattānī, Muḥammad Ibrāhīm. "Al-Kitāb al-Maghribī wa-qīmatuh". *Al-Baḥṭh al-'ilmī*, 4-6 (1965): 9-57.
- Khalidov, A. B. *Arabskie rukopisi i arabskaia rukopisnaia traditsiia*. Moscow, 1985.
- Koningsveld, P.S. van. "Andalusian-Arabic manuscripts from Christian Spain: a comparative intercultural approach". *Israel Oriental studies*, 12 (1992): 75-110.
- . "Andalusian-Arabic manuscripts in Christian Spain: some supplementary notes". *Festgabe für Hans-Rudolf Singer zum 65. Geburtstag*. Frankfurt am Main, 1991: 811-823.
- Krachkovskii, I.Y. *Among Arabic manuscripts*. Transl. by Tatiana Minorsky. Leiden, 1953.
- al-Kūtī, Aḥmad. "Al-Kitābah 'inda al-'Arab fī al-jāhilīyah wa-ṣadr al-Islām". *Majallat Majma' al-Lughah al-'Arabīyah bi-Dimashq*, 61, no.2 (1986): 348-361.
- al-Maḥāsīnī, Samā' Zakī. *Dirāsāt fī al-makhṭūṭāt al-'Arabīyah*. Riyad, Maktabat al-Malik al-Fahd al-Waṭanīyah, 1999.
- al-Manūnī, Muḥammad. *Ta'rikh al-wirāqah al-Maghribīyah: ṣinā'at al-makhṭūṭ al-'Arabī min al-'aṣr al-wasīṭ ilā al-fatrah al-*

- mu'āṣirah*. Rabat, Jāmi'at Muḥammad al-Khāmis, Kullīyat al-Ādāb wa-al-'Ulūm al-Insānīyah, 1991.
- *Qabas min 'aṭā' al-makhṭūṭ al-Maghribī* (= *Quintessence des manuscrits marocains*). Beirut, Dār al-Gharb al-Islāmī, 1999. 4 vols. in 3.
- Maqdisī, Jūrj. "Al-Ḥifāz 'alā al-turāth wa-al-da'wah ilā dirāsatiḥ". *Ahammīyat al-makhṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah. A'māl al-Mu'tamar al-Iftitāḥī li-Mu'assasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*. London, 1992: 17-22.
- Murūwah, Ibrāhīm Ibrāhīm. *Fī al-makhṭūṭāt al-'Arabīyah: qirā'at taṭbī-qīyah*. Beirut/ Damascus, Dār al-Fikr, 1997.
- al-Musfir, 'Abd al-'Azīz ibn Muḥammad. *Al-Makhṭūṭ al-'Arabī wa-shay' min qaḍāyāḥ*. Riyadh, Dār al-Mirrīkh, 1999.
- Nasr, Sayyid Husayn. "Ahammīyat al-makhṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah". *Ahammīyat al-makhṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah. A'māl al-Mu'tamar al-Iftitāḥī li-Mu'assasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*. London, 1992: 29-42.
- "The significance of Islamic manuscripts". *The significance of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Inaugural Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation (30th November – 1st December 1991)*, ed. John Cooper. London, 1992: 7-17.
- Orsatti, Paola. "Il manoscritto come specchio di una cultura: il caso dell'Islam". *Gazette du livre médiéval*, 24 (1994): 1-7.
- "Le manuscrit islamique: caractéristiques matérielles et typologie". *Ancient and medieval book materials and techniques*, ed. M. Maniaci and P. Munafò. Vatican City, 1993: 2, 269-331.
- Pedersen, Johannes. *The Arabic book*. Transl. [from the Danish *Den Arabiske Bog*] by G. French, ed. R. Hillenbrand. Princeton, 1984. [Also translated from the English into Arabic: *al-Kitāb al-'Arabī mundhu nash'atih ḥattā 'aṣr al-ṭibā'ah*, tarjamat Ḥaydar Ghaybah. Damascus, al-Ahālī, 1409/1989.]
- Piemontese, Angelo Michele. "Islamic manuscripts in the West". *The significance of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Inaugural Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation (30th November – 1st December 1991)*, ed. John Cooper. London, 1992: 45-54.
- Rosenthal, Franz. "'Of making many books there is no end': the classical Muslim view". *The book in the Islamic world: the written word and communication in the Middle East*, ed. George N. Atiyeh. Albany, N.Y., 1995: 33-55.

- Sadan, J. "Genizah and Genizah-like practices in Islamic and Jewish traditions". *Bibliotheca Orientalis*, 43, 1-2 (1986), 36-58.
- Sayyid, Aymān Fu'ād. *Al-Kitāb al-ʿArabī al-makhṭūṭ wa-ʿilm al-makhṭūṭāt* (= *Le manuscrit arabe et la codicologie*). Cairo: al-Dār al-Miṣrīyah al-Lubnānīyah, 1997. 2 vols.
- . "Šināʿat al-kitāb al-ʿArabī al-makhṭūṭ". *Annales islamologiques* (= *Hawliyyāt Islāmīyah*), 31, (1997): 1-39.
- Sellheim, Rudolf. "Kitāb". *EI*, new ed., 5: 207-208.
- Shākīr, Maḥmūd Abū Fahr. "Dhikrīyāt maʿa muḥibbī al-makhṭūṭāt". *Aḥammīyat al-makhṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah. Aʿmāl al-Muʿtamar al-Ifṭitāhī li-Muʿassasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*. London, 1992: 23-28.
- Sharpe, J.L. "Books and book-making". *Encyclopedia of Arabic literature*, ed. J.S. Meisami and P. Starkey. London/New York, 1988: 1, 154-160.
- al-Shaybānī, Muḥammad ibn Ibrāhīm. *Al-Makhṭūṭ al-ʿArabī wa-al-Islāmī: fawāʿid, qīmah, ṣiyānah*. Kuwait, Markaz al-Makhṭūṭāt wa-al-Turāth wa-al-Wathāʾiq, 1999.
- Witkam, J.J. and Sukanda-Tessier, Viviane. "Nuskha". *EI*, new ed., 8: 149-154.
- Zaydān, Yūsuf. *Al-Turāth al-majhūl: iṭlāl al-ʿalā ʿilam al-makhṭūṭāt*. Cairo, Dār al-Amīn, 1996.
- Ždralović, Muhamed. *Bosansko-Hercegovacki prepisivači djela u arabičkim rukopisima*. Sarajevo, Svjetlost, 1988. 2 vols.

I. 5. Selected studies of one or more manuscripts

- Abbott, Nabia. "A ninth-century fragment of the 'Thousand Nights': new light on the early history of the Arabian Nights". *Journal of Near Eastern studies*, 8 (1949): 129-164, pl. XV-XVIII.
- Arberry, A.J. "Two rare manuscripts". *Journal of Arabic literature*, 1 (1970): 112-113.
- Birnbaum, Eleazar. "Kātib Chelebi (1609-1657) and alphabetization: a methodological investigation of the autographs of his 'Kashf al-ẓunūn' and 'Sullam al-wuṣūl'". *Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997: 235-263.
- Bivar, A.D.H. "A possible Fulani autograph in the Library of SOAS". *Threefold wisdom: Islam, the Arab world and Africa. Papers in honour of Ivan Hrbek*. Prague, 1993: 39-46.
- Bonebakker, S.A. "Notes on some old manuscripts of the *Adab al-*

- kātib* of Ibn Qutayba, the *Kitāb aṣ-ṣināʿatayn* of Abū Hilāl al-ʿAskarī and the *Maṭal as-sāʾir* of ʿĪyāʾ ad-Dīn ibn al-Aṭīr". *Oriens*, 13-14 (1960-61): 159-194.
- Daiber, Hans. "An Arabic manuscript library: some important discoveries". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 2 (1987): 18-36.
- De Blois, François. "The oldest known Fāṭimid manuscript from Yemen". *Proceedings of the Seminar for Arabian studies*, 14 (1984): 1-7.
- Déroche, François. "A propos du manuscrit 'arabe 6726', Bibliothèque nationale, Paris (al-Aṣmaʿī, Taʾrīkh mulūk al-ʿArab al-awwalīn)". *Revue des études islamiques*, 58 (1990): 209-212.
- Géhin, Paul. "Un manuscrit bilingue grec-arabe, BnF, Supplément grec 911 (année 1043)". *Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997: 161-175.
- Hartmann, Angelika. "Codicologie comme source biographique: à propos d'un autographe inédit d'Ibn al-Ġauzī". *Les manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche. Istanbul/Paris, 1989: 23-30.
- . "Bemerkungen zu Handschriften ʿUmar as-Suhrawardī, echten und vermeintlichen Autographen". *Der Islam*, 60, no.1 (1983): 112-142, 6 pl.
- Humbert, Geneviève. "Copie 'à la pecia' à Bagdad au IXe siècle?". *Gazette du livre médiéval*, no.12 (1988): 12-15.
- . "Le Kitāb de Sībawayhi d'après l'autographe d'un grammairien andalou du XIIe siècle". *Al-Makḥṭūṭ al-ʿArabī wa-ʿilm al-makḥṭūṭāt* (= *Le manuscrit arabe et la codicologie*). Rabat, 1994: 9-20.
- Koningsveld, P.S. van. *The Latin-Arabic glossary of the Leiden University Library. A contribution to the study of Mozarabic manuscripts and literature*. Leiden, 1977.
- Lévi-Provençal, E. "Un manuscrit de la bibliothèque du calife al-Ḥakam II". *Hespéris*, 18 (1934): 198-200.
- . "Note sur l'exemplaire du 'Kitāb al-ibar' offert par Ibn Ḥaldūn à la bibliothèque d'al-Ḳarawīyīn à Fèz". *Journal asiatique*, 203 (1923): 161-168.
- Mingana, A. *An important manuscript of the traditions of Bukhārī: with nine facsimile reproductions*. Cambridge, 1936.
- Muranyi, Miklos. "Über ein Muwaṭṭaʾ-Fragment in der Zāwiya al-Nāṣiriyya in Tamagrūt (Marokko)". *Die Welt des Orients*, 29 (1998): 149-157.

- Palmer, H. R. "Two Sudanese manuscripts of the 17th century". *Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies. London Institution*, 5 (1928-30): 541-560.
- Ritter, Hellmut. "Autographs in Turkish libraries". *Oriens*, 6 (1953): 63-90.
- Sayyid, Aymān Fu'ād. "Early methods of book composition: al-Maqrīzī's draft of 'Kitāb al-khiṭaṭ'". *The Codicology of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Second Conference of Al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation, 4-5 Dec.1993*. London, 1995: 93-101.
- . "Ṭarīqat al-ta'līf 'inda al-qudamā' min khilāl musawwadat al-Maqrīzī li-Kitāb al-khiṭaṭ". *Dirāsāt al-makhṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah bayna i'tibārāt al-māddah wa-al-bashar. A'māl al-Mu'tamar al-Thānī li-Mu'assasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, ed. Rashīd al-'Inānī. London, 1997: 153-162.
- Schacht, J. "On some manuscripts in the libraries of Kairouan and Tunis". *Arabica*, 14 (1967): 225-258.
- . "Sur quelques manuscrits de la bibliothèque de la mosquée d'al-Qarawīyyīn". *Etudes d'orientalisme dédiées à la mémoire de Lévi-Provençal*. Paris, 1962: 1, 271-284.
- Sellheim, R. "Neue Materialien zur Biographie des Yāqūt". *Schriften und Bilder: drei orientalistische Untersuchungen*. Wiesbaden, 1967: 41(87)-72(118), Taf. VII(XI)-XXX(XXXIV).
- Sidarus, Adel. "Un recueil original de philologie gréco-copto-arabe: la Scala Copte 43 de la Bibliothèque nationale de France". *Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997: 293-326.
- Stern, S.M. "A manuscript from the Library of the Ghaznawid Amīr 'Abd al-Rashīd". *Paintings from Islamic lands*, ed. R. Pinder-Wilson. Oxford, 1969: 7-31.
- . "Some noteworthy manuscripts of the poems of Abu'l-'Alā' al-Ma'arrī". *Oriens*, 7 (1954): 322-347.[Reprinted in his *History and culture in the medieval Islamic world*. London, 1984.]
- Vajda, G. "Trois manuscrits de la bibliothèque du savant damascain Yūsuf ibn 'Abd al-Hādī". *Journal asiatique*, 270 (1982): 229-256.
- Witkam, J.J. "Les autographes d'al-Maqrīzī". *Al-Makhṭūṭ al-'Arabī wa-ilm al-makhṭūṭāt (= Le manuscrit arabe et la codicologie)*. Rabat, 1994: 89-98.

- “Ḥasan Kāfī al-Aqḥiṣārī and his ‘Nizām al-‘ulamā’ ilā k̲ātām al-anbiyā’: a facsimile edition of MS Bratislava TF 136”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 4 (1989): 85-114.
- “The ‘Kitāb Qam’ al-wāṣīn fī ḍamm al-barrāṣīn’ by Nūr al-Dīn ‘Alī b. al-Ġazzār: a facsimile edition of the unique manuscript”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 1 (1986): 86-99.
- “Manuscripts & manuscripts”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 1 (1986): 111-117; 2 (1987): 111-125; 4 (1988): 155-180.

I. 6. Manuscript production and culture (wirāqah)

- ‘Abd al-Wahhāb, Ḥasan Ḥusnī. “Al-‘Ināyah bi-al-kutub wa-jam’uhā fī Ifrīqīyah al-Tūnisīyah (min al-qarn al-thālith ilā al-khāmis lil-hijrah)”. *Majallat Ma’had al-Makhṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah*, 1 (1955): 72-90.
- Akhtar, Ahmadmian. “The art of waraqat during the Abbasid period”. *Islamic culture*, 9 (1935): 131-143.
- “More about the art of waraqat”. *All-India Oriental Conference*, 9 (1937): 294-310.
- Déroche, François. “Copier des manuscrits: remarques sur le travail du copiste”. *Revue des mondes musulmans et de la Méditerranée* (forthcoming).
- Jamil, Muhammad Faris. “Islamic wiraqah ‘stationery’ during the early Middle Ages (bookmaking, Muslim bookproducing)”. Ph.D. diss., University of Michigan, 1985.
- Karbāj, Jūrj. “Al-Wirāqah wa-al-warrāqūn ‘inda al-‘Arab”. *Āfāq ‘Arabīyah*, 9 (1984): 66-71.
- al-Manūnī, Muḥammad. “Shawāhid min izdihār al-wirāqah fī Sabtah al-Islāmīyah”. *Majallat Kullīyat al-Ādāb bi-Tiṭwān*, 3 (1989): 117-119.
- *Ta’rīkh al-wirāqah al-Maghribīyah. Ṣinā‘at al-makhṭūṭ al-‘Arabī min al-‘aṣr al-wasīṭ ilā al-fatrah al-mu‘āṣirah*. Rabat, Jāmi‘at Muḥammad al-Khāmis, Kullīyat al-Ādāb wa-al-‘Ulūm al-Insānīyah, 1991.
- “Al-Wirāqah al-‘Alawīyah ‘abra sab‘at ‘uqūd min al-mi‘ah al-hijrīyah al-thālithah ‘ashrata”. *Da‘wat al-ḥaqq*, 23, no.4 (1982): 10-24; 24, no.246 (1985): 133-151.
- “Al-Wirāqah al-Maghribīyah fī ‘ahd al-Sulṭān al-‘Alawī Muḥammad al-Thālith”. *Da‘wat al-ḥaqq*, 18, no.2 (1977): 45-56.

- “Al-Wirāqah al-Maghribīyah fī al-‘aṣr al-‘Alawī al-awwal”. *Da‘wat al-ḥaqq*, 16, no.10 (1975): 80-92.
- “Al-Wirāqah al-Maghribīyah min al-fatḥ al-Islāmī ḥattā nihāyat al-Dawlah al-Waṭṭāsīyah”. *Al-Baḥth al-‘ilmī*, 16 (1970): 37-65.
- “Al-Wirāqah al-Maghribīyah: al-Dawlah al-Sa‘dīyah”. *Al-Baḥth al-‘ilmī*, 18 (1971): 17-47.
- “Al-Wirāqah al-Maghribīyah fī al-‘aṣr al-‘Alawī al-rābi’”. *Al-Manāhil*, 26 (1987): 37-90.
- al-Namlah, ‘Alī ibn Ibrāhīm. *Al-Wirāqah wa-ashhar a‘lām al-war-rāqīn: dirāsah fī al-nashr al-qadīm wa-naql al-ma‘lūmat*. Riyad, Maktabat al-Malik Fahd al-Waṭanīyah, 1415/1995.
- al-Nāṣirī, Aḥmad ‘Alī. “Al-Warrāqūn wa-al-nassākhūn wa-dawruhum fī al-ḥaḍārah al-‘Arabīyah al-Islāmīyah”. *Al-Dārah*, 14, no.4 (1989): 178-195.
- Ṭayyib, As‘ad. “Min aḥwāl al-nussākh fī turāthinā al-‘Arabī al-Islāmī”. *Turāthunā*, 29 (1412 A.H.):90-104.
- Zayyāt, Ḥabīb. “Al-Wirāqah wa-al-warrāqūn fī al-Islām”. *Al-Mashriq*, 41 (1947): 305-350.
- Ždralović, Muhamed. *Bosansko-Hercegovacki prepisivači djela u arabičkim rukopisima*. Sarajevo, Svjetlost, 1988. 2 vols.

I. 7. Libraries (selected bibliographies and studies)

- Auchterlonie, J.P.C. “Libraries”. *Arab Islamic bibliography: the Middle East Library Committee guide*, ed. D. Grimwood-Jones et al. Hassocks, England, 1977: 235-265.
- Binebine, Ahmed Chouqui. *Histoire des bibliothèques au Maroc*. Rabat, 1992.
- Binbīn, Aḥmad Shawqī. “Zāhirat waqf al-kutub fī ta’rīkh al-khizānah al-Maghribīyah”. *Majallat Majma‘ al-Lughah al-‘Arabīyah bi-Dimashq*, 63, no.3 (1988): 409-436.
- De Jong, Frederick and Witkam, Jan Just. “The library of ṣayk Kālīd al-Šāhrazūrī al-Naqšabandī (d.1242/1827): a facsimile of the inventory of his library (MS Damascus, Maktabat al-Asad, no.259)”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 2 (1987): 68-87.
- Deverdun, G. “Un registre d’inventaire et de prêt de la bibliothèque de la mosquée ‘Ali ben Youssef à Marrakech daté de 1111 H.-1700 J.C.”. *Hespéris*, 31 (1944): 55-59.

- Eche, Yussef. *Les bibliothèques arabes publiques et semi-publiques en Mesopotamie, en Syrie et en Egypte au moyen âge*. Damascus, 1967.
- Endress, Gerhard. "Handschriftenkunde". *Grundriss der arabischen Philologie*. Band I: *Sprachwissenschaft*, herausgegeben von W. Fischer. Wiesbaden, 1982: 306-308.
- Gacek, Adam. "The ancient 'sijill' of Qayrawan". *MELA notes*, no.46 (1989): 26-29.
- Ḥammādah, Muḥammad Māhir. *Al-Maktabāt fī al-Islām: nash'atuhā wa-taṭawwuruhā wa-maṣā'iruhā*. Beirut, Mu'assasat al-Risālāh, 1978.
- Heffening, W. and Pearson, J.D. "Maktaba". *EI*, new ed., 6: 197-200.
- Ibrāhīm, 'Abd al-Laṭīf. *Dirāsāt fī al-kutub wa-al-maktabāt al-Islāmīyah*. Cairo, Maṭba'at Jāmi'at al-Qāhirah, 1962.
- al-Manūnī, Muḥammad. "Al-Khizānah al-Maghribīyah fī 'aṣr al-Sulṭān al-Ḥasan al-Awwal". *Al-Manāhil*, 38 (1989): 7-103.
- Muminov, Ashirbek and Ziyadov, Shavasil. "L'horizon intellectuel d'un érudit du XVe siècle: nouvelles découvertes sur la bibliothèque de Muḥammad Pârsâ". *Cahiers de l'Asie centrale*, 7 (1999): 77-98.
- Richter-Bernburg, L. "Libraries, medieval". *Encyclopaedia of Arabic literature*, ed. J.S. Meisami and P. Starkey. New York, 1998: 2, 470-471.
- Sā'ātī, Yaḥyā Maḥmūd. *Al-Waqf wa-binyat al-maktabah al-'Arabīyah: istibtān lil-mawrūth al-thaqāfī*. Riyadh, Markaz al-Malik Fayṣal lil-Buḥūth wa-al-Dirāsāt al-Islāmīyah, 1996.
- Sayyid, Ayman Fu'ād. "Khizānat kutub al-Fāṭimīyīn: hal baqiya minhā shay'?" *Majallat Ma'had al-Makhtūṭāt al-'Arabīyah*, 42, no.1 (1998): 7-32.
- Sayyid, Fu'ād. "Naṣṣān qadīmān fī i'ārat al-kutub". *Majallat Ma'had al-Makhtūṭāt al-'Arabīyah*, 4, no. 1 (1958): 125-136. [Contains Jalāl al-Dīn al-Suyūṭī's *Badhl al-majhūd fī khizānat Maḥmūd*.]
- Shabbūh, Ibrāhīm. "Sijill qadīm li-maktabat Jāmi' al-Qayrawān". *Majallat Ma'had al-Makhtūṭāt al-'Arabīyah*, 2 (1956): 339-372.
- Sibai, Mohamed Makki. *Mosque libraries: an historical study*. London/New York, 1987.
- Wasserstein, David. "The library of al-Ḥakam II al-Mustanṣir and the culture of Islamic Spain". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 5 (1990-91): 99-105.

I. 8. History of manuscripts (ownership statements, seal impressions, waqf-statements, etc.)

- Afshar, Iraj. "Arz (عرض) dans la tradition bibliothéconomique irano-indienne". *Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997: 331-343.
- Allan, J. and Sourdel, D. "Khātām, khātim". *EI*, new ed., 4: 1102-1105.
- Binbīn, Aḥmad Shawqī. "Zāhirat waqf al-kutub fī ta'rīkh al-khizānah al-Maghribīyah". *Majallat Majma' al-Lughah al-'Arabīyah bi-Dimashq*, 63, no.3 (1988): 409-436.
- Deny, J. and Nizami, K.A. "Muhr". *EI*, new ed. 7: 472-473.
- Deverdun, Gaston and Ghiati, Mhammed ben Abdeslem. "Deux taḥbīs almohades (milieu du XIIIe s. J.-C.)". *Hespéris*, 41 (1954): 411-423.
- Gacek, Adam. "Ownership statements and seals in Arabic manuscripts". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 2 (1987): 88-95. [Persian translation by Nūsh Āfrīn Anṣārī (Muḥaqqiq), *Āyinah-i pizhūhish*, 13-14 (1371), 711-718 (33-40).]
- Hammer-Purgstall, J. *Abhandlung über die Siegel der Araber, Perser und Türken*. Vienna, 1849.
- Kalus, Ludvik. *Catalogue des cachets, bulles et talismans islamiques*. Paris, 1981.
- . *Catalogue of Islamic seals and talismans*. Oxford, 1986.
- . "Islamic art, VIII, 14. Seals". *The dictionary of art*, ed. J. Turner. New York, 1996: 16, 542-543.
- Rosenthal, Franz. "'Blurbs' (taqrīz) from fourteenth-century Egypt". *Oriens*, 27-28 (1981): 177-196.
- al-Qaḥṭānī, Rāshid ibn Sa'd. "Ṣafaḥāt al-'anāwīn fī al-makhṭūṭāt al-'Arabīyah". *Ālam al-makhṭūṭāt wa-al-nawādir*, 2, no.2 (1997-8): 365-383.
- Sā'ātī, Yaḥyá Maḥmūd. *Al-Waqf wa-binyat al-maktabah al-'Arabīyah: istibṭān lil-mawrūth al-thaqāfī*. Riyadh, Markaz al-Malik Fayṣal lil-Buḥūth wa-al-Dirāsāt al-Islāmīyah, 1996: 130-171 and 31 illus. (in particular).
- Shishin (Şeşen), Ramaḍān. "Aḥammīyat ṣafaḥat al-'unwān (al-zahrīyah) fī tawṣīf al-makhṭūṭāt". *Dirāsāt al-makhṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah bayna i'tibārāt al-māddah wa-al-bashar. A'māl al-Mu'tamar al-Thānī li-Mu'assasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, ed. Rashīd al-'Inānī. London, 1997: 179-196.

Wenzel, Marian. *Ornament and amulet: rings of the Islamic lands*. London/Oxford, 1993 (*The Nasser D. Khalili Collection of Islamic Art*, XVI).

I. 9. Popular culture in manuscripts

Canaan, Tawfik. "The decipherment of Arabic talismans". *Berytus. Archaeological studies*, 4, fasc.1 (1937):69-110; 5, fasc.2 (1938):141-151.

Casanova, M. "Alphabets magiques arabes". *Journal asiatique*, série II, 18 (1921): 37-55; 19 (1922): 250-262.

Dawkins, J. McG. "The seal of Solomon". *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, (1944): 145-150.

Fahd, T. "Tamīma". *EI*, new ed., 10: 177-178.

Gacek, Adam. "The use of 'kabīkaj' in Arabic manuscripts". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 2 (1987): 49-53. [Persian translation by Nūsh Āfrīn Anṣārī (Muḥaqqiq), *Kitābdārī*, 14 (1989): 5-12; Turkish translation by A. Yaycioğlu, *Kebikeç*, 5 (1997): 5-8.]

MacDonald, D.B. "Budūh". *EI*, new ed., suppl.3-4: 153-154.

Matton, Sylvain. *La magie arabe traditionnelle*. Paris, 1977. [Contains Ibn Waḥḥīyah's *Shawq al-mustahām fī ma'rifat rumūz al-aqlām*.]

Piemontese, Angelo M. "Aspetti magici e valori funzionali della scrittura araba". *La Ricerca folklorica*, 5 (1984): 27-55.

Pollock, James. "Kabi:kaj to book pouches. Library preservation, magic and technique in Syria of the 1880's and the 1980's West". *MELA notes*, 44 (1988): 8-10.

Saidan, A.S. "Magic squares in an Arabic manuscript". *Journal for the history of Arabic science*, 4, no.1 (1980): 87-88.

"Tilsam". *EI*, new ed., 10: 500-502.

Winkel, H.A. *Siegel und Charaktere in der mohammedanischen Zauberei*. Tübingen, 1930.

I. 10. Forgeries

ʿAbd al-Majīd, Rashīd et al. *Al-Tazwīr wa-taṭbīq al-makhṭūṭāt*. Baghdad, 1941.

Denny, Walter B. "Islamic art, IX. Forgeries". *The dictionary of art*, ed. J. Turner. New York, 1996: 16, 545-546.

- Duda, Dorothea. "Alte Restaurierungen und Fälschungen bei orientalischen Handschriften". *Les manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche. Istanbul/Paris, 1989: 39-43.
- "Forgeries of art objects and manuscripts". *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, ed. E. Yarshater, 10: 90-100.
- Frye, Richard N. "Islamic book forgeries from Iran". *Islamwissenschaftliche Abhandlungen Fritz Meier zum sechzigsten Geburtstag*, herausgegeben von R. Gramlich. Wiesbaden, 1974: 106-109.
- Gacek, Adam. "Tazwīr". *EI*, new ed., 10: 408-409 or 10: 437-438 (French).

I. 11. Terminology

- al-Bahnassī, 'Afīf. *Mu'jam al-muṣṭalaḥāt al-khaṭṭ al-'Arabī wa-al-khaṭṭātīn*. Beirut, Maktabat Lubnān, 1995.
- Gacek, Adam. "The language of catalogues of Arabic manuscripts". *MELA notes*, no.48 (1989): 21-29.
- "Some technical terms relative to the execution of Arabic manuscripts". *MELA notes*, nos.50-51 (1990): 13-18.
- Maḥfūz, Ḥusayn 'Alī. "Ilm al-makhṭūṭāt". *Al-Mawrid*, 5 (1976): 144-145.
- Mihdād, al-Zabīr. "Al-Muṣṭalaḥ al-tarbawī fī al-turāth al-'Arabī". *Al-Lisān al-'Arabī*, 44 (1997): 233-274.
- Shabbūḥ, Ibrāhīm. "Naḥwa mu'jam ta'rīkhī li-muṣṭalaḥ wa-nuṣūṣ funūn ṣinā'at al-makhṭūṭ al-'Arabī". *Ṣiyānah wa-ḥifẓ al-makhṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah. A'māl al-Mu'tamar al-Thālith li-Mu'assasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, Lundun 18-19 Nūfimbir 1995, ed. Ibrāhīm Shabbūḥ. London, 1998: 341-393.

II. WRITING SURFACES, MATERIALS AND IMPLEMENTS

II. 1. General studies

- Acar, M. Şinasi. *Türk hat sanatı: araç, gereç ve formlar* (= *Turkish calligraphy: materials, tools and forms*. Istanbul, Antik A.Ş., 1999. [Text in Turkish and English.]
- Amīn, Niḍāl 'Abd al-'Ālī. "Adawāt al-kitābah wa-mawādduhā fī al-ūṣūr al-Islāmīyah". *Al-Mawrid*, 15, no.4 (1986): 131-140.

- Būbū, Mas'ūd. "Min ta'rīkh al-lughah al-'Arabīyah: adawāt al-kitābah wa-al-wirāqah". *Dirāsāt ta'rīkhīyah* (Damascus), 17, nos.55-56 (1996): 53-62.
- al-Dimashqī, Muḥammad ibn Abī al-Khayr. *Al-Nujūm al-shāriqāt fī dhikr ba'ḍ al-ṣanā'ī' al-muhtāj ilayhā fī 'ilm al-miqāt* (!). Aleppo, Maṭba'at Muḥammad Rāghib al-'Ilmīyah, 1928.
- Ghédirah, A. "Ṣaḥīfa". *EI*, new ed., 8: 834-835.
- Grohmann, A. *Arabische Paläographie*. Teil 1. Wien, 1961: 66-131.
- Ibn Bādīs, al-Mu'izz. "Umdat al-kuttāb wa-'uddat dhawī al-albāb", ed. 'Abd al-Sattār al-Ḥalwajī and 'Alī 'Abd al-Muḥsin Zakī. *Majallat Ma'had al-Makhtūṭāt al-'Arabīyah*, 17 (1971).
- *Umdat al-kuttāb wa-'uddat dhawī al-albāb: fīhi ṣifāt al-khaṭṭ wa-al-aqlām wa-al-midād wa-al-liyaq wa-al-ḥibr wa-al-aṣbāgh wa-ālāt al-tajlīd*, ed. Najīb Māyil Haravī and 'Iṣām Makkīyah. Mashhad, Majma' al-Buḥūth al-Islāmīyah, 1989.
- Ibn Qutaybah, 'Abd Allāh ibn Muslim. *Risālat al-khaṭṭ wa-al-qalam al-mansūbah ilā Ibn Qutaybah*, ed. Ḥātim Ṣāliḥ al-Ḍāmin. Beirut, Mu'assasat al-Risālah, 1989.
- "Risālat Ibn Qutaybah fī al-khaṭṭ wa-al-qalam", ed. Hilāl Nājī. *Al-Mawrid*, 19, no.1 (1990):156-170.
- Janert, Klaus Ludwig. *Bibliographie mit Berichten über die mündliche und schriftliche Textweitergabe sowie die Schreibmaterialien in Indien*. Bonn, 1995 –.
- al-Kurdī, Muḥammad Ṭāhir. *Husn al-du'ābah fīmā warada fī al-khaṭṭ wa-adawāt al-kitābah*. Cairo, Muṣṭafā al-Bābī al-Ḥalabī, 1938.
- al-Malik al-Muẓaffar, Yūsuf ibn 'Umar. *Al-Mukhtara' fī funūn min al-ṣuna'*. Kuwait, Mu'assasat al-Shirā' al-'Arabī, 1989.
- al-Manūnī, Muḥammad. "Taqnīyāt i'dād al-makhtūṭ al-Maghribī". *Al-Makhtūṭ al-Arabī wa-'ilm al-makhtūṭāt* (= *Le manuscrit arabe et la codicologie*). Rabat, 1994: 11-32.
- Naṣṣār, Diyā' Muḥammad Ḥasan. "Ma'a ālāt al-khaṭṭ al-'Arabī". *Al-Turāth al-sha'bī*, no.4 (1976): 99-106.
- Porter, Yves. "Une traduction persane du traité d'Ibn Bādīs: 'Umdat al-kuttāb (ca.1025)". *Les manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche. Istanbul/Paris, 1989: 61-67.
- Rahman, P.I.S.M. "Calligrapher's tools and materials". *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bangladesh*, 20, no.1 (1975): 83-90.
- "Risālah fī ṣinā'at al-kitābah", ed. 'Abd al-Laṭīf al-Rāwī and 'Abd al-Ilāh Nabhān. *Majallat Majma' al-Lughah al-'Arabīyah bi-Dimashq*, 62, no.4 (1987): 760-795; 63, no.1 (1988): 50-65.

- Sadan, J. "Nouveaux documents sur scribes et copistes". *Revue des études islamiques*, 45 (1977): 41-87. [Contains *al-bāb al-thānī fī dhikr al-khaṭṭ wa-al-qalam* by Ibn Qutaybah, both original text and translation.]
- Sauvan, Yvette. "Un traité à l'usage des scribes à l'époque nasride". *Les manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche. Istanbul/Paris, 1989: 49-50.
- Thackston, Wheeler M. "Treatise on calligraphic arts: a disquisition on paper, colors, inks, and pens by Sami of Nishapur". *Intellectual studies on Islam. Essays written in honor of Martin B. Dickson*, ed. Michel M. Mazzaoui. Salt Lake City, Utah, 1990: 219-228.

II. 2. Papyrus

- Grohmann, Adolf. "Aperçu de papyrologie arabe". *Etudes de papyrologie*, 1 (1932): 23-95.
- "Arabische Papyruskunde". *Arabische Chronologie. Arabische Papyruskunde*, by Adolf Grohmann. Leiden/Köln, 1966: 49-118, 10 pl. (*Handbuch der Orientalistik*. Abt.1, Erg.2).
- Hüttermann, A. et al. "Making of papyrus: an ancient biotechnology or Pliny was right indeed". *Naturwissenschaften*, 82, Heft 9 (1995): 414-416.
- Khan, Geoffrey. "Arabic papyri". *The codicology of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Second Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation*, 1993. London, 1995: 1-16.
- "Al-Bardīyāt al-ʿArabīyah". *Dirāsāt al-makḥṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah bayna iʿtibārāt al-māddah wa-al-bashar. Aʿmāl al-Muʿtamar al-Thānī li-Muʿassasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, ed. Rashīd al-ʿInānī. London, 1997: 57-76.
- *Bills, letters and deeds: Arabic papyri of the 7th to 11th centuries*. London/ Oxford, 1993: 11-22 [in particular].
- Khoury, R.G. "Papyrus". *EI*, new ed., 8: 261-265.
- "Papyruskunde". *Grundriss der arabischen Philologie*. Band I: *Sprachwissenschaft*, herausgegeben von W. Fischer. Wiesbaden, 1982: 251-270.
- Rāgīb, Yūsuf. "Les plus anciens papyrus arabes". *Annales islamologiques* (= *Ḥawlīyāt Islāmīyah*), 30 (1996): 1-19.
- Sellheim, R. "Ḳirṭās". *EI*, new ed., 5:173-174.

II. 3. Parchment

Déroche, François. "L'emploi du parchemin dans les manuscrits islamiques: quelques remarques liminaires". *The codicology of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Second Conference of Al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation*, 1993. London, 1995: 17-57.

———. "Istikhḍām al-raqq fī al-makḥṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah: mulāḥaẓāt tamhīdīyah". *Dirāsāt al-makḥṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah bayna i'tibārāt al-māddah wa-al-bashar. A'māl al-Mu'tamar al-Thānī li-Mu'assasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, ed. Rashīd al-'Inānī. London, 1997: 93-134.

Endress, G. "Pergament in der Codicologie des islamisch-arabischen Mittelalters". *Pergament: Geschichte, Struktur, Restaurierung, Herstellung*, ed. P. Rück. Sigmaringen, 1991: 45-46.

Grohmann, A. "Ḍjild". *EI*, new ed., 2: 540-541.

Khoury, R.G. and Witkam, J.J. "Raḳḳ". *EI*, new ed., 8: 407-410.

Reed, Ronald. *The nature and making of parchment*. Leeds, 1975.

al-Zayyāt, Ḥabīb. "Al-Julūd wa-al-ruqūq wa-al-ṭurūs fī al-Islām". *Al-Kitāb*, 4 (1947): 1358-1366.

II. 4. Paper (for decorated paper see VII. 7.)

a) Non-watermarked paper and paper in the Islamic world

- Bibliography

Le Léannec-Bavavéas, Marie-Thérèse. *Les papiers non-filigranés médiévaux de la Perse à l'Espagne: bibliographie 1950-1995*. Paris, 1998.

- Papermaking recipes and ethics

Gacek, Adam. "On the making of local paper: a thirteenth century Yemeni recipe". *Revue des mondes musulmans et de la Méditerranée* (forthcoming).

Ibn al-Ḥājj al-Fāsī, Muḥammad ibn Muḥammad. *Al-Madkhal*. Cairo, 1929: 4, 79-83.

Ibn Bādīs, al-Mu'izz. "'Umdat al-kuttāb wa-'uddat dhawī al-albāb", ed. 'Abd al-Sattār al-Ḥalwajī and 'Alī 'Abd al-Muḥsin Zakī. *Majallat*

Maḥad al-Makḥūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah, 17 (1971): 147-152. [For translations of the chapter on papermaking see: Karabacek, "Neue Quellen"; Briquet, "Le papier arabe"; Levey, "Mediaeval Arabic bookmaking"; Irigoin, "Les papiers non filigranés".]

Richard, Francis. "Une recette en persan pour colorer le papier". *Revue des mondes musulmans et de la Méditerranée* (forthcoming).

Tawfīq, Barwīn Badrī. "Risālatān fī šināʿat al-makḥūṭ al-ʿArabī". *Al-Mawrid*, 14, no.4 (1985): 275-286 ['fī ʿamal al-khāghad al-baladī'].]

al-Wansharīsi, Aḥmad ibn Yaḥyá. *al-Miʿyār al-muʿrib wa-al-jāmiʿ al-mughrib*. Beirut, Dār al-Gharb al-Islāmī, 1981: 1, 75-104. [Includes a fragment of Ibn Marzūq's *Taqrīr al-dalīl al-wāḍiḥ al-maʿlūm ʿalá jawāz al-naskḥ fī kāghad al-Rūm*.]

Zayyāt, Ḥabīb. *Al-Wirāqah wa-šināʿat al-kitābah wa-muʿjam al-sufun*. Beirut, Dār al-Ḥamrāʾ, 1992. [Contains an edition of the chapter on papermaking by Ibn Bādīs, pp.79-81.]

- Studies

Afshār, Īraj. "The use of paper in Islamic manuscripts as documented in classical Persian texts". *The codicology of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Second Conference of Al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation*, 1993. London, 1995: 77-91.

——— "Istikhdam al-waraq fī al makḥūṭāt al-Islāmīyah: kamā sajjalathu al-nuṣūṣ al-Fārisīyah al-qadīmah". *Dirāsāt al-makḥūṭāt al-Islāmīyah bayna iʿtibārāt al-māddah wa-al-bashar. Aʿmāl al-Muʿtamar al-Thānī li-Muʿassasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, ed. Rashīd al-ʿInānī. London, 1997: 35-55.

Babinger, Franz. *Zur Geschichte der Papiererzeugung im osmanischen Reiche*. Berlin, 1931.

Baker, Don. "Arab papermaking". *The paper conservator*, 15 (1991): 28-35.

——— "A note on the expression '... a manuscript on Oriental paper'". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 4 (1989): 67-68.

Bavavéas, M. Th. and Humbert, G. "Une méthode de description du papier non filigrané (dit 'oriental')". *Gazette du livre médiéval*, 17 (1990): 24-30.

Beit-Arié, M. "Quantitative typology of Oriental paper patterns". *Le papier au moyen âge: histoire et techniques*, ed. M. Zerdoun Bat-Yehouda. Turnhout, 1999: 41-53.

- "The Oriental Arabic paper". *Gazette du livre médiéval*, 28 (1996), 9-12.
- Björkman, W. "Kaṭṭ". *EI*, new ed., 4: 741-743.
- Bloom, Jonathan M. "Paper in Fatimid Egypt". *L'Egypte fatimide: son art et son histoire. Actes du colloque organisé à Paris les 28, 29 et 30 mai 1998*, ed. Marianne Barrucand. Paris, 1999: 395-401.
- "Revolution by the ream: a history of paper". *Aramco world*, 50, no.3 (May/June) 1999: 26-39.
- Bockwitz, Hans Heinrich. "Ein Papierfund aus dem Anfang des 8. Jahrhunderts am Berge Mugh bei Samarkand". *Papiergeschichte*, 5 (1995): 42-44.
- "Zu Karabacek's Forschungen über das Papier im islamischen Kulturkreis". *Buch und Schrift*, N.F., 1 (1938): 83-86.
- "Zur Geschichte des Papiers: die Erfindung und Ausbreitung im Fernen Osten". *Einführung in die Papierkunde*, by Fritz Hoyer. Leipzig, 1941: 1-42.
- Briquet, C.-M. "Le papier arabe au moyen âge et sa fabrication". *Briquet's Opuscula*, ed. E.J. Labarre. Hilversum, 1955: 162-169.
- "Recherches sur les premiers papiers employés en Occident et en Orient du Xe au XIVe siècle". *Briquet's Opuscula*, ed. E.J. Labarre. Hilversum, 1955: 129-161.
- Canat, Paul et al. "Une enquête sur le papier de type 'arabe occidental' ou 'espagnol non filigrané'". *Ancient and medieval book materials and techniques*, ed. M. Maniaci and P. Munafò. Vatican City, 1993: 1, 313-393.
- Déroche, F. "Islamic art, III, 5. Paper". *The dictionary of art*, ed. J. Turner. New York, 1996: 16, 351-354.
- Huart, Cl. and Grohmann, A. "Kāghad, kāghid". *EI*, new ed., 4: 419-420.
- Humbert, Geneviève. "Un papier fabriqué vers 1350 en Egypte". *Le papier au moyen âge: histoire et techniques*, ed. M. Zerdoun Bat-Yehouda. Turnhout, 1999: 61-73.
- "Les papiers 'arabes': un état de la recherche". *Revue des mondes musulmans et de la Méditerranée* (forthcoming).
- "Papiers non filigranés utilisés au Proche-Orient jusqu'en 1450: essai de typologie". *Journal asiatique*, 286, no.1 (1998): 1-54.
- Hunter, Dart. *Papermaking: the history and technique of an ancient craft*. New York, 1978.
- Irigoin, Jean. "Papiers orientaux et papiers occidentaux". *La paléographie grecque et byzantine*. Paris, 1997: 45-54.

- “Les premiers manuscrits grecs écrits sur papier et le problème de bombycin”. *Scriptorium*, IV/1 (1950): 194-204.
- “Les papiers non filigranés: état présent des recherches et perspectives d’avenir”. *Ancient and medieval book materials and techniques*, ed. M. Maniaci and P. Munafò. Vatican City, 1993: 1, 265-312.
- “Papiers orientaux et papiers occidentaux: les techniques de confection de la feuille”. *Bollettino dell’Istituto Centrale per la Patologia del Libro*, 42 (1988): 57-79.
- “Les types des formes utilisés dans l’Orient méditerranéen (Syrie, Egypte) du XIe au XIVe siècle”. *Papiergeschichte*, 13/1-2 (1963): 18-21.
- Jones, Russell. “European and Asian papers in Malay manuscripts: a provisional assessment”. *Bijdragen tot de taal-, land- en volkenkunde*, 149 (1993): 475-502.
- “From papermill to scribe: the lapse of time”. *Papers from the III European Colloquium on Malay and Indonesian Studies, Naples, 2-4 June 1981*, ed. Luigi Santa Maria et al. Naples, 1988: 153-169.
- Kâğıtçı, Mehmed Ali. “Beitrag zur türkischen Papiergeschichte”. *Papiergeschichte*, 13/4 (1963): 37-44.
- “A brief history of papermaking in Turkey”. *The paper maker* 34 (1965): 41-51.
- *Historical study of paper industry in Turkey* (= *Historique de l’industrie papetière en Turquie*). [Istanbul], 1976. [Text in English and French.]
- Karabacek, J. von. “Das arabische Papier”. *Mittheilungen aus der Sammlung der Papyrus Erzherzog Rainer*, 2-3 (1887): 87-178.
- *Arab paper, 1887*. Additional notes by D. Baker. Transl. by D. Baker and S. Dittmar. London, Islington Books, 1991.
- “Neue Quellen zur Papiergeschichte”. *Mittheilungen aus der Sammlung der Papyrus Erzherzog Rainer*, 4 (1888): 75-122.
- Le Léannec-Bavavéas, Marie-Thérèse. “Zigzag et filigrane sont-ils incompatibles? Enquête dans les manuscrits de la Bibliothèque nationale de France”. *Le papier au moyen âge: histoire et techniques*, ed. M. Zerdoun Bat-Yehouda. Turnhout, 1999: 119-134.
- Macfarlane, N. *Handmade papers of India*. Winchester, Alembic Press, 1987. [In particular: pp. [9-15]: ‘Islamic paper in India’ and pp. [17-23]: ‘The making of Islamic paper’.]

- Porter, Yves. "Notes sur la fabrication du papier dans le monde iranien médiéval (VIIIe-XVIe siècle)". *Le papier au moyen âge: histoire et techniques*, ed. M. Zerdoun Bat-Yehouda. Turnhout, 1999: 19-30.
- Premchand, Neeta. *Off the deckle edge: a paper making journey through India*. Bombay, 1995.
- Quraishi, Salim. "A survey of the development of papermaking in Islamic countries". *Bookbinder*, 3 (1989): 29-36.
- Qureshi, Salimuddin. "Paper making in Islamic countries". *Pakistan library bulletin*, 21, no.2 (1990): 1-11.
- Rantoandro, Gabriel. "Contribution à la connaissance du 'papier antemoro' (sud-est de Madagascar)". *Archipel*, 26 (1983): 86-116.
- Richard, Francis. "Le papier utilisé dans les manuscrits persans du XVe siècle de la Bibliothèque nationale de France". *Le papier au moyen âge: histoire et techniques*, ed. M. Zerdoun Bat-Yehouda. Turnhout, 1999: 31-40.
- Şābāt, Khalīl. "Taṭawwur ṣinā'at al-waraq fī Miṣr". *Majallat Kullīyat al-Ādāb* (Cairo), 19, no.1 (1957): 245-261.
- Sistach, M. Carme. "Les papiers non filigranés dans les archives de la Couronne d'Aragon du XIIe au XIVe siècle". *Le papier au moyen âge: histoire et techniques*, ed. M. Zerdoun Bat-Yehouda. Turnhout, 1999: 105-118.
- Soteriou, Alexandra. *Gift of conquerors: hand papermaking in India*. New Delhi, Mappin, 1999.
- Tschudin, Peter F. "Zu Geschichte und Technik des Papiers in der arabischen Welt". *International paper history (IPH)*, 8, no.2 (1998): 20-24.
- Valls i Subirà, Oriol. "Arabian paper in Catalonia: notes on Arabian documents in the Royal Archives of the kings of Aragon in Barcelona". *The paper maker*, 32, no.1 (1963): 21-30.
- . *The history of paper in Spain*. Transl. by Sarah Nicholson. Madrid, 1978-82. 3 vols.
- Vidal, L. and Bouvier, R. "Le papier de Khanbaligh et quelques autres anciens papiers asiatiques". *Journal asiatique*, 206 (1925): 159-170.
- Walz, Terence. "A note on the Trans-Saharan paper trade in the 18th and 19th centuries". *Research bulletin. Centre of Arabic Documentation. Institute of African Studies* (Ibadan), 13, nos. 1-2 (1980-82): 42-47.
- . "The paper trade of Egypt and the Sudan in the 18th and 19th

centuries". *Modernization in the Sudan*, ed. M.W. Daly. New York, 1985: 29-49.

Zayyāt, Ḥabīb. *Al-Wirāqah wa-ṣināʿat al-kitābah wa-muʿjam al-sufun*. Beirut, Dār al-Ḥamrā', 1992.

b) Watermarked paper and filigranology

Bogdán, István. "La datation du papier à partir des ses propriétés matérielles". *Avant-texte, texte, après-texte*, by L. Hay and P. Nagy. Paris/Budapest, 1982: 27-40.

Briquet, C.M. *Les filigranes. Dictionnaire historique des marques du papier dès leur apparition vers 1282 jusqu'en 1600*. Amsterdam, 1968. 4 vols.

Churchill, W.A. *Watermarks in paper in Holland, England and France, etc. in the XVII & XVIII centuries and their interconnection*. Amsterdam, 1935. [Repr. 1967.]

Eineder, Georg. *The ancient paper-mills of the former Austro-Hungarian Empire and their watermarks*. Hilversum, 1960 (*Monumenta Chartae Papyraceae Historiam Illustrantia*, VIII).

Heawood, Edward. *Watermarks, mainly of the 17th and the 18th centuries*. Hilversum, 1960 (*Monumenta Chartae*, I).

Hills, Richard L. "The importance of laid and chain line spacing". *Le papier au moyen âge: histoire et techniques*, ed. M. Zerdoun Bat-Yehouda. Turnhout, 1999: 149-163.

Horst, K. van der. "The reliability of watermarks". *Gazette du livre médiéval*, 15 (1989): 15-19.

Irigoin, Jean. "La datation par les filigranes du papier". *Codicologica*, 5 (1980): 9-36.

Labarre, E.J. "English index to Briquet's watermarks". *The Briquet album*. Hilversum, 1952: 138-145 (*Monumenta Chartae*, II).

——— (ed.). *The Nostitz papers: notes on watermarks found in the German imperial archives of the 17th & 18th centuries, and essays showing the evolution of a number of watermarks*. Hilversum, 1956 (*Monumenta Chartae*, V).

Mošin, Vladimir. *Anchor watermarks*. Amsterdam, 1973 (*Monumenta Chartae*, XIII).

Mošin, Vladimir and Traljič, Seid. *Filigranes des XIIIe et XIVe siècles*. Zagreb, 1957. 2 vols.

Nikolaev, V. *Watermarks of the Ottoman Empire*. Sofia, 1954.

- Piccard, Gerhard. *Wasserzeichenkartei Piccard im Hauptstaatsarchiv Stuttgart: Findbuch*. Stuttgart, 1961 – .
- Shorter, A.H. *Paper mills and paper makers in England, 1495-1800*. Hilversum, 1957 (*Monumenta Chartae*, VI).
- Stevenson, Allan H. "Watermarks are twins". *Studies in bibliography*, 4 (1952): 57-91.
- Uchastkina, Zoia Vasilevna and Simmons, J.S.G. *A history of Russian hand paper-mills and their water-marks*. Hilversum, 1962 (*Monumenta Chartae*, IX).
- Valls i Subirà, Oriol. *Paper and watermarks in Catalonia*. Amsterdam, 1970 (*Monumenta Chartae*, XII). 2 vols.
- Velkov, Asparukh and Andreev, Stefan. *Vodni znatsi v osmanoturskite dokumenti, I: tri luni (= Filigranes dans les documents ottomans, I: trois croissants)*. Sofia, SS. Cyril and Methodius National Library, 1983.
- Weiss, Karl Th. *Handbuch der Wasserzeichenkunde*. Leipzig, 1962.
- Zonghi, Aurelo et al. *Zonghi's watermarks*. Hilversum, 1953 (*Monumenta Chartae*, III).

II. 5. Inks, inkwells, pens and other writing accessories

- Abouricha, Nouredin. "L'encre au Maghreb". *Nouvelles des manuscrits du Moyen Orient*, III/1 (1993): 3-4.
- Baer, E. "Dawāt". *EI*, new ed., suppl. 3-4: 203-204.
- Derman, M. Uğur. "The mistar, the ruler and scissors for paper". *İlgi*, 27 (1979): 32-35.
- "The tools of Turkish calligraphy". *İlgi*, 19 (1974): 40-43; 22 (1976): 36-39; 23 (1976): 33-35; 24 (1976): 33-35.
- Dukan, Michèle. "De la difficulté à reconnaître des instruments de réglure: planche à régler (mastara) et cadre-patron". *Scriptorium*, 40, no.2 (1986): 257-261.
- Greenfield, Jane. "Notable bindings XVII". *The Yale University Library gazette*, 72, nos. 3-4 (1998): 168-170. [On miştarah.]
- Huart, Cl. and Grohmann, A. "Kalam". *EI*, new ed., 4: 471.
- Kalus, Ludvik et Naffah, Christine. "Deux écritoirs mameloukes des collections nationales françaises". *Revue des études islamiques*, 51 (1983): 89-145.
- Komaroff, Linda. "Dawāt". *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, ed. E. Yarshater, 7: 137-139.

- Levey, Martin. *Medieval Arabic bookmaking and its relation to early chemistry and pharmacology*. Philadelphia, 1962. [Contains translations of *Umdat al-kuttāb* of Ibn Bādīs and *Šināʿat tasfīr al-kutub wa-ḥall al-dhahab* of Aḥmad al-Sufyānī.]
- Lucas, A. "The inks of ancient and modern Egypt". *Analyst*, 47 (1922): 9-14.
- Qāshā, Suhayl. "Al-Ḥibr wa-adawāt al-kitābah fī al-turāth al-ʿArabī". *Al-Turāth al-shaʿbī*, no.5 (1978): 5-36.
- Shabbūḥ (Chabbouh), Ibrāhīm. "Maṣdarān jadīdān ʿan šināʿat al-makḥṭūṭ: ḥawla funūn tarkīb al-midād". *Dirāsāt al-makḥṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah bayna ʿitibārāt al-māddah wa-al-bashar. Aʿmāl al-Muʿtamar al-Thānī li-Muʿassasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, ed. Rashīd al-ʿInānī. London, 1997: 15-34.
- "Two new sources on the art of mixing ink". *The codicology of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Second Conference of Al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation, 1993*. London, 1995: 59-76.
- Talbot, Roseline. "La restauration des encres métallo-galliques". *Avant-texte, texte, après-texte*, by L. Hay and P. Nagy. Paris/Budapest, 1982: 69-73.
- Tawfīq, Barwīn Badrī. "Midād al-dhahab, šināʿatuh fī al-ʿuṣūr al-Islāmīyah". *Al-Mawrid*, 18, no.1 (1989): 137-141.
- (ed.). "Risālah fī šināʿat al-aḥbār wa-al-liyaq". *Majallat al-maktabah al-ʿArabīyah* (Baghdad), 2 (1982): 149-163.
- "Risālatān fī šināʿat al-makḥṭūṭ al-ʿArabī". *Al-Mawrid*, 14, no.4 (1985): 269-274 [ʿanwāʿ al-liyaq wa-kayfīyat aʿmālīhā].
- "Šināʿat al-aḥbār wa-al-liyaq wa-al-aṣbāgh: fuṣūl min makḥṭūṭat ʿQaṭf al-azhārʾ lil-Maghribī". *Al-Mawrid*, 12, no.3 (1983): 251-278.
- ʿUbaydī, Šāliḥ Ḥasan. "Al-Dawāh wa-al-qalam fī al-āthār al-ʿArabīyah al-Islāmīyah fī al-ʿaṣr al-ʿAbbāsī". *Majallat Kullīyat al-Ādāb* (Baghdad), 28 (1980): 637-658.
- al-ʿUsaylī, Nūr al-Dīn. "Urjūzah fī ālāt dawāt al-kātib". *Al-Durar al-farāʿid al-munaẓẓamah fī akhbār al-ḥajj wa-ṭarīq Makkah al-muʿaẓẓamah*, by ʿAbd al-Qādir al-Anṣārī al-Jazīlī. Riyad, 1983: 1, 392-393.
- Witkam, J.J. "Midād". *EI*, new ed., 6: 1031.
- Zerdoun Bat-Yehouda, Monique. *Les encres noires au Moyen Age (jusqu'à 1600)*. Paris, 1983: 123-141 [in particular].

- “La fabrication des encres noires d’après les textes”. *Codicologica*, 5 (1980): 52-58.

III. TEXTBLOCK (QUIRES, SIGNATURES AND FOLIATION)

- Binbīn, Aḥmad Shawqī. “Nizām al-ta‘qībāh”. *Fann fahrasat al-makḥṭūṭāt: madkhal wa-qadāyā*, ed. Fayṣal al-Ḥafyān. Cairo, Maḥad al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah, 1999: 65-72.
- “Al-Ta‘qībāh fī al-makḥṭūṭ al-‘Arabī”. *Ālam al-kutub*, 14, no.5 (1993): 519-523.
- Déroche, François. “L’emploi du parchemin dans les manuscrits islamiques, quelques remarques liminaires”. *The codicology of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Second Conference of Al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation*, 1993. London, 1995: 17-57.
- Déroche, François and Richard, Francis. “Du parchemin au papier: remarques sur quelques manuscrits du Proche-Orient”. *Recherches de codicologie comparée: la composition du codex au Moyen Age en Orient et en Occident*, ed. Ph. Hoffmann. Paris, 1998: 183-197.
- Guesdon, Marie-Geneviève. “L’assemblage des cahiers: remarques à propos d’un échantillon de manuscrits arabes récemment catalogués”. *Al-Makḥṭūṭ al-‘Arabī wa-‘ilm al-makḥṭūṭāt* (= *Le manuscrit arabe et la codicologie*). Rabat, 1994: 57-67.
- “La numérotation des cahiers et la foliotation dans les manuscrits arabes datés jusqu’en 1450”. *Revue des mondes musulmans et de la Méditerranée* (forthcoming).
- “Les réclames dans les manuscrits arabes datés à 1450”. *Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997: 65-75.
- Humbert, Geneviève. “Le ġuz’ dans les manuscrits arabes médiévaux”. *Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997: 77-86.
- Keller, Adriaan. “Codicologia comparativa de los manuscritos medievales españoles, latinos, árabes y hebreos”. *Estudios sobre Alfonso VI y la reconquista de Toledo. Actas del II Congreso Internacional de Estudios Mozárabes, Toledo, 20-26 Mayo 1985*. Toledo, 1987-89: 3, 207-218.
- Orsatti, Paola. “Le manuscrit islamique: caractéristiques matérielles et typologie”. *Ancient and medieval book materials and tech-*

niques, ed. M. Maniaci and P. Munafò. Vatican City, 1993: 2, 269-331.

Ritter, H. "Griechisch-koptische Ziffern in arabischen Manuskripten". *Rivista degli studi orientali*, 16 (1936): 212-214.

Troupeau, G. "A propos des chiffres utilisés pour le foliotage des manuscrits arabes". *Arabica*, 21 (1974): 84.

IV. THE TEXT, ITS COMPOSITION AND ARRANGEMENT

IV. 1. Types of compositions, their parts, etc.

al-ʿAmad, Hānī. *Muqawwimāt manāhij al-taʿlīf al-ʿArabī fī muqaddimāt al-muʿallifīn*. Amman, al-Jāmiʿah al-Urdunīyah, 1987.

Ambros, Arne A. "Beobachtungen zu Aufbau und Funktionen der gereimten klassisch-arabischen Buchtitel". *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes*, 80 (1990): 13-57.

——— "Unwān: literary aspects of book titles". *EI*, new ed., 10: 871-872.

Arazi, A. and Ben Shammai, H. "Mukhtaṣar". *EI*, new ed., 7: 536-540.

Arazi, A. et al. "Risāla". *EI*, new ed., 8: 532-544.

Barabanov, A.M. "Poyasnitel'nie znachki v arabskikh rukopisyakh i dokumentakh Severnogo Kavkaza". *Sovetskoe Vostokovedenie*, 3 (1945): 183-214.

Bonebakker, S.A. "Ibtidā". *EI*, new ed., 3: 1006.

——— "Intihā". *EI*, new ed., 3: 1246.

Carmona González, Alfonso. "La estructura del título en los libros árabes medievales". *Estudios románicos*, 4 (1987-9): 181-187.

——— "Sobre la estructura convencional del título en los libros árabes". *Al-Qanṭara, revista de estudios árabes*, 21, fasc.1 (2000): 85-96.

Carra de Vaux, B. and Gardet, L. "Basmala". *EI*, new ed., 1: 1084-1085.

Fekete, Lajos. "Tamma und seine synonyme". *Trudy Dvadsat' pjatogo Mezhdunarodnogo Kongressa Vostokovedov, Moskva 9-16 avgusta 1960 g.* Moscow, 1963: 2, 374-377.

Freimark, P. "Muḥaddima". *EI*, new ed., 7: 495-496.

——— "Das Vorwort als literarische Form in der arabischen Literatur". Ph.D. diss., Münster (Westfalen), 1967.

Gilliot, Cl. "Sharḥ". *EI*, new ed., 9: 317-320.

- Gimaret, D. "Shahāda". *EI*, new ed., 9: 201.
 Macdonald, D.B. "Hamdala". *EI*, new ed., 3: 122-123.
 Rippin, A. "Taṣliya". *EI*, new ed., 10: 358-359.
 Rosenthal, F. "Hāshiya". *EI*, new ed., 3: 268-269.
 ——— "Ta'lik". *EI*, new ed. 10: 165.
 Wensinck, A.J. and Rippin, A. "Tashahhud". *EI*, new ed., 10: 340-341.

IV. 2. Page lay-out (mise en page)

- Bakhti, M. "Réglure et mise en page des manuscrits maghrébins datés: essai de définition des pratiques observables sur quelques exemples datés du XIVe s.". Doctoral thesis, EPHE (Paris), 1985.
 Polosin, Val. V. "Arabic manuscripts: text density and its convertibility in copies of the same work". *Manuscripta Orientalia*, 3, no.2 (1997): 3-17.
 ——— "Ṣaḥīfat al-makḥūṭ al-ʿArabī ka-mawḍūʿ lil-baḥṡ wa-al-waṣf". *Al-Makḥūṭ al-ʿArabī wa-ʿilm al-makḥūṭāt* (= *Le manuscrit arabe et la codicologie*). Rabat, 1994: 57-60.

IV. 3. Colophon and scribal verses

- al-Abbās, Aḥmad al-Muṭaṣim et al. "A colophon from eighteenth-century Sinnār". *Bulletin d'information. Fontes Historiae Africanae*, 6 (1981): 13-165.
 Hunwick, J.O. "West African Arabic manuscript colophons". *Bulletin d'information. Fontes Historiae Africanae*, 7/8 (1982/3): 51-58; 9/10 (1984/5): 49-69.
 ——— "West African Arabic manuscript colophons II: a sixteenth-century Timbuktu copy of the Muḥkam of Ibn Sīda". *Bulletin d'information. Fontes Historiae Africanae*, 9/10 (1984/85): 49-69.
 Koningsveld, P.S. van and al-Samarrai, Q. *Localities and dates in Arabic manuscripts. Descriptive catalogue of a collection of Arabic manuscripts in the possession of E.J. Brill*. Leiden, 1978 (Catalogue no.500).
 Şeşen, Ramazan. "Esquisse d'une histoire du développement des colophons dans les manuscrits musulmans". *Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997: 189-221.

- Troupeau, Gérard. "Les colophons des manuscrits arabes chrétiens". *Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997: 224-231.
- Weisweiler, Max. "Arabische Schreiberverse". *Orientalische Studien Enno Littmann zu seinem 60. Geburtstag am 16. September 1935 überreicht...*, herausgegeben von R. Paret. Leiden, 1935: 101-120.

IV. 4. Dates, dating and numerals

a) Bibliography, chronology

- Grohmann, Adolf. "Arabische Chronologie". *Arabische Chronologie. Arabische Papyrskunde*, by Adolf Grohmann. Leiden/Köln, 1966: 1-48 (*Handbuch der Orientalistik*. Abt.1, Erg.2).
- al-Ḥajjirī, 'Abd Allāh. "Al-Arqām al-'Arabīyah: qā'imah bībliyūghrā-fīyah mukhtārah". *Ālam al-kutub*, 19, no.5-6 (1998): 531-534.
- Horovitz, J. "Zu den Ehrennamen der islamischen Monate". *Der Islam*, 13 (1923): 281.
- Littmann, Enno. "Über die Ehrennamen und Neubenennungen der islamische Monate". *Der Islam*, 8 (1918): 228-236.
- "Ta'rikh". *EI*, new ed., 10: 257-302.

b) Alpha-numerical and numerical systems

- al-Bakrī, Muḥammad Ḥamdī. "Rumūz al-a'dād fī al-kitābāt al-'Arabīyah". *Majallat Kullīyat al-Ādāb* (Cairo), 16, no.2 (1954): 73-84.
- Farrāj, 'Abd al-Rahmān. "Al-Arqām fī intāj al-fikr al-'Arabī: qā'imah wirāqīyah". *Ālam al-kutub*, 19, no.5-6 (1998): 535-541.
- Ifrah, Georges. *Histoire universelle des chiffres*. Paris, 1981: 298-305, 317-320, 453-503 [in particular].
- Irani, Rida A.K. "Arabic numeral forms". *Centaurus*, 4 (1955-56): 1-12.
- Labarta, Ana and Barceló, Carmen. *Números y cifras en los documentos arábigohispanos*. Cordoba, 1988.
- Lemay, R. "Arabic numerals". *Dictionary of the Middle Ages*, ed. J.R. Strayer. New York, 1982-89: 1, 382-398.
- al-Munīf, 'Abd Allāh ibn Muḥammad. "Al-Arqām al-'Arabīyah: namādhij min al-makhtūṭāt al-Maghribīyah". *Ālam al-kutub*, 19, no.5-6 (1998): 474-485.

Souissi, M. "Ḥisāb al-ghubār". *EI*, new ed., 3: 468-469.

Welborn, M.C. "Ghubār numerals". *Isis*, 17 (1932): 260-263.

c) Abjad, ḥisāb al-jummal, chronograms

Ahmad, Qeyamuddin. "A note on the art of composing chronograms". *Islamic culture*, 46 (1972): 163-169.

Bruijn, J.T.P. de. "Chronograms". *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, ed. E. Yarshater, 5: 550-551.

Colin, G. "Ḥisāb al-djummal". *EI*, new ed., 3: 468.

Gwarzo, Hassan Ibrahim. "The theory of chronograms as expanded by the 8th century Katsina astronomer-mathematician Muhammad b. Muhammad". *Research bulletin. Centre for Arabic Documentation. Institute of African Studies* (Ibadan), 3, no.2 (1967): 116-123.

Schanzlin, G.L. "The abjad notation". *Muslim world*, 24 (1934): 257-261.

al-Tāzī, 'Abd al-Hādī. "Tartīb al-ḥurūf al-abjadīyah bayna al-mashāriqah wa-al-maghāribah". *Majallat Majma' al-Lughah al-'Arabiyah* (Cairo), 56 (1985): 197-198.

Weil, Gotthold and Colin, Georges S. "Abjad". *EI*, new ed., 1: 97-98.

d) Greek (Coptic) numerals

Ritter, H. "Griechisch-koptische Ziffern in arabischen Manuskripten". *Rivista degli studi orientali*, 16 (1936): 212-214.

Troupeau, G. "A propos des chiffres utilisés pour le foliotage des manuscrits arabes". *Arabica*, 21 (1974): 84.

e) Rūmī (Fāsī) numerals

Colin, Georges S. "De l'origine grecque des 'chiffres de Fès' et de nos 'chiffres arabes'". *Journal asiatique*, 222 (1933): 193-215.

Fāsī, Muḥammad. "Ḥisāb al-qalam al-Fāsī". *Da'wat al-ḥaqq*, no.269 (1988): 180-182.

Rey, Abel. "A propos de l'origine grecque des 'chiffres de Fès' et de nos 'chiffres arabes'". *Revue des études grecques*, 48 (1935): 525-539.

Sánchez Pérez, José A. "Sobre las cifras rummies". *Al-Andalus*:

revista de las escuelas de estudios árabes de Madrid y Granada, 3 (1935): 97-125.

Sukayrij, Aḥmad ibn al-Ḥājj al-‘Ayyāshī. *Irshād al-muta‘allim wa-al-nāsī fī ṣīfat ashkāl al-qalam al-Fāsī*. Fez, 1317 A.H. (lithographed). [Printed with *al-Rawḍah al-yūni‘ah*.]

Viala, M. E. *Le mécanisme du partage des successions en droit musulman, suivie de l'exposé des 'signes de Fèz'*. Algiers, 1917. [Contains a translation of *Irshād al-muta‘allim wa-al-nāsī* of Sukayrij, see above.]

f) Dating by fractions

Dietrich, A. "Zur Datierung durch Brüche in arabischen Handschriften". *Nachrichten der Akademie der Wissenschaften in Göttingen*, Band I, Phil. Hist. Klasse, nr.2 (1961): 27-33.

Ḥasan, Ja‘far Hādī. "Ṭarīqat ta’rīkh Ibn Kamāl Bāshā fī al-makhṭūṭ al-Islāmī". *Ālam al-kutub*, 7, no.2 (1986): 164-170.

——— "Namūdhaj min al-ta’rīkh bi-al-kusūr fī al-makhṭūṭ al-‘Arabī". *Majallat Ma‘had al-Makhṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah*, 32, no.2 (1988): 393-402.

Mawālīdī, Muṣṭafá. "Ḥall ta‘miyat al-ta’rīkh bi-al-kusūr". *Majallat Ma‘had al-Makhṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah*, 39, no.2 (1996): 213-255.

Ritter, Hellmut. "Philologika XII: Datierung durch Brüche". *Oriens*, 1 (1948): 237-247.

Ṣadrī Afandī. "Sharḥ ta’rīkh Ibn Kamāl Pāshā". *Catalogue of Arabic manuscripts in the Library of the Institute of Ismaili Studies*, by A. Gacek. London, 1984-1985: 2, 178 (facsimile).

g) Calendars, conversion tables, dynasties

Bacharach, J.A. *A Near East studies handbook*. 3rd ed. Seattle, 1984.

Bosworth, Clifford Edmund. *The new Islamic dynasties: a chronological and genealogical manual*. Edinburgh, 1996.

"Calendars". *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, ed. E. Yarshater, 4: 668-675 (in particular).

Freeman-Grenville, G.S.P. *The Muslim and Christian calendars, being tables for the conversion of Muslim and Christian dates from the Hijra to the year A.D. 2000*. London, 1977.

Mayr, J. and Spuler, B. (eds). *Wüstenfeld-Mahler'sche Vergleichungs-*

Tabellen zur muslimischen und iranischen Zeitrechnung mit Tafeln zur Umrechnung orient-christlicher Ären. Wiesbaden, 1961.

“Ta’rīkh”. *EI*, new ed., 10: 257-302.

IV. 5. Abbreviations

“Abbreviations”. *EI*, new ed., suppl., fasc.1-2, p.2.

‘Alawān, Muḥammad Bāqir. “Thalāth arājīz fī rumūz ‘al-Jāmi’ al-ṣaghīr”. *Majallat Ma’had al-Makhṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah*, 18 (1972): 151-158.

Alič, Salih H. “Problem kratica u arapskim rukopisima (sa spiskom arapskih kratica iz 16. vjeka)”. *Prilozi za orientalnu filologiju*, 26 (1976):199-212.

Ben Cheneb, M. “Liste des abréviations employées par les auteurs arabes”. *Revue africaine*, nos.302-303 (1920): 134-138.

Fekete, Lajos. “Tamma und seine synonyme”. *Trudy Dvadtsat’ pjatogo Mezhdunarodnogo Kongressa Vostokovedov, Moskva 9-16 avgusta 1960 g.* Moscow, 1963: 2, 374-377.

Gacek, Adam. *Catalogue of Arabic manuscripts in the library of the Institute of Ismaili Studies.* London, 1984-1985: 2, xiv.

Maḥfūz, Ḥusayn ‘Alī. “Al-‘Alāmāt wa-al-rumūz ‘inda al-mu’allifīn al-‘Arab qadīman wa-ḥadīthan”. *Al-Turāth al-sha’bī*, no.1 (1963/64): 23-27 [436-451]. Also: Baghdad, Maṭba‘at al-Ma‘ārif, 1964.

al-Māmaqānī, Muḥammad Riḍā. “Mu’jam al-rumūz wa-al-ishārāt”. *Turāthunā*, 2, no.1 (1407 H): 159-171; 2, nos 2-3 (1407 H): 164-219.

——— *Mu’jam al-rumūz wa-al-ishārāt.* Beirut, Dār al-Mu’arrikh al-‘Arabī, 1992.

Quiring-Zoeche, Rosemarie. “How al-Buḥārī’s ‘Ṣaḥīḥ’ was edited in the Middle Ages: ‘Alī al-Yūnīnī and his ‘Rumūz’”. *Bulletin d’études orientales*, 50 (1998): 191-222.

al-Samarrāī, Ibrāhīm. “Al-Mukhtaṣarāt wa-al-rumūz fī al-turāth al-‘Arabī”. *Majallat Majma‘ al-Lughah al-‘Arabīyah al-Urdunī*, 32 (1987): 105-114.

IV. 6. Arabic nomenclature

- Ašraf, A. "Alqāb va 'Anāwīn". *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, ed. E. Yarshater, 1: 898-906.
- Beeston, A.F.L. *Arabic nomenclature: a summary guide for beginners*. Oxford, 1971.
- Bosworth, C.E. "Laḡab". *EI*, new ed., 5: 618-631.
- Bruijn, J.T.P. de. "Takḡalluṣ". *EI*, new ed., 10: 123.
- "Ibn". *EI*, new ed., 3: 669-670.
- "Ism". *EI*, new ed., 4: 179-181.
- "Nisba". *EI*, new ed., 8: 53-56.
- Rosenthal, F. "Nasab". *EI*, new ed., 7: 967-968.
- Schimmel, Annemarie. *Islamic names*. Edinburgh, 1989.
- Sublet, Jacqueline. *Le voile du nom: essai sur le nom propre arabe*. Paris, 1991.
- Wensinck, A.J. "Kunya". *EI*, new ed., 5: 395-396.

IV. 7. Transcription, corrections and etiquette

- al-ʿAmad, Hānī. *Adab al-kitābah wa-al-taʿlīf ʿinda al-ʿArab: naẓrah ʿammah*. Amman, al-Jāmiʿah al-Urdunīyah, 1986.
- Arḡilah, ʿAbbās. "Al-Qaḍī ʿIyāḍ wa-naẓratuh fī manhaj taḡqīq al-makḡūṭāt". *Ālam al-kutub*, 26, no.1 (1995): 19-26.
- al-Balghīthī, Aḡmad ibn al-Maʿmūn. *Al-Ibtihāj bi-nūr al-Sirāj*. Cairo, 1319 A.H.: 1, 211-257 [in particular].
- Gacek, Adam. "Technical practices and recommendations recorded by classical and post-classical Arabic scholars concerning the copying and correction of manuscripts". *Les manuscrits du Moyen Orient*, ed. F. Déroche. Paris/Istanbul, 1989: 51-60. [Contains a facsimile reproduction of Chapter Six of *al-Durr al-naḡīd fī āḍāb al-mufīd wa-al-mustafīd* by Badr al-Dīn al-Ghazzī, pl. XX-XXXII.]
- Ibn al-Ḥājj al-Fāsī, Muḡammad ibn Muḡammad. *Al-Madkhal*. Cairo, al-Maṭbaʿah al-Miṣrīyah, 1348/1929, 4: 79-93.
- Juynboll, G.H.A. "Mustamlī". *EI*, new ed., 7: 725-726.
- al-Khulī, Muḡammad Mursī. "Naṣṣ fī ḡabṭ al-kutub wa-taṣḡḡihā wa-dhikr al-rumūz wa-al-iṣṭilāḡāt al-wāridah fīhā lil-ʿAllāmah Badr al-Dīn al-Ghazzī". *Majallat Maʿhad al-Makḡūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah*, 10 (1964): 167-184.
- al-Manūnī, Muḡammad. "Alāmat al-kitābah al-ʿArabīyah fī al-

- makhṭūṭāt: al-nuqaṭ, al-shakl wa-ishārāt ukhrā". *Al-Maṣādir al-Arabīyah li-ta'riḫ al-Maghrib, al-fatrah al-mu'āṣirah, 1790-1930*, by Muḥammad al-Manūnī. Rabat, 1989: 2, 349-360.
- al-Mashūkhī, 'Ābid Sulaymān. *Anmāṭ al-tawthīq fī al-makhṭūṭ al-Arabī fī al-qarn al-tāsi' al-hijrī*. Riyad, Maktabat al-Malik Fahd al-Waṭanīyah, 1414/1994.
- "Naskh al-makhṭūṭāt". *Ālam al-kutub*, 15, no.3 (1994): 322-326.
- Rosenthal. F. "Muḳābala". *EI*, new ed., 7: 490-491.
- "Ta'lik". *EI*, new ed., 10: 165.
- "Taṣḥīf". *EI*, new ed., 10: 347-348.
- *The technique and approach of Muslim scholarship*. Rome, 1947. [Contains a translation of Chapter Six of *al-Mu'd fī adab al-mufīd wa-al-mustafīd* by 'Abd al-Bāsiṭ al-'Almawī.]
- al-Sam'ānī, 'Abd al-Karīm ibn Muḥammad. *Adab al-implā' wa-al-istimplā'*. Beirut, Dār al-Kitāb al-'Arabī, 1981.
- *Die Methodik des Diktatkollegs (Adab al-implā' wa'l-istimplā')*, herausgegeben von Max Weisweiler. Leiden, 1952.
- al-Sarāqabī, Walīd Muḥammad. "Mafhūm al-taṣḥīf: dirāsah fī ta'sīl al-muṣṭalah". *Ālam al-kutub*, 17, no.1 (1996): 29-33.
- al-Sawāhīlī, Aḥmad Rizq Muṣṭafā. "Min qaḍāyā al-ḥarf al-'Arabī, al-taṣḥīf wa-al-taḥrīf". *Ālam al-kutub*, 14, no.6 (1993): 641-649.
- Sayf, Aḥmad Muḥammad Nūr. *In'āyat al-muḥaddithīn bi-tawthīq al-marwīyāt wa-athar dhālika fī taḥqīq al-makhṭūṭāt*. Damascus, Dār al-Ma'mūn lil-Turāth, 1987.
- Sayyid, Ayman Fu'ād. "Manāhij al-'ulamā' al-Muslimīn fī al-baḥth min khilāl al-makhṭūṭāt". *Majallat Ma'had al-Makhṭūṭāt al-Arabīyah*, 43, no.2 (1999): 99-131.
- Shākir, Aḥmad. *Taṣḥīḥ al-kutub wa-ṣun' al-fahāris al-muḥjamah wa-kayfiyat ḍabt al-kitāb wa-sabq al-Muslimīn wa-al-Ifranj fī dhālik*. Beirut: Dār al-Jīl, 1995.
- Weisweiler, Max. "Das Amt des Mustamlī in der arabischen Wissenschaft". *Oriens*, 4 (1951): 27-57.
- al-Yūsī, al-Ḥasan ibn Ma'sūd. *Qānūn yashtamil 'alā aḥkām al-'ilm wa-aḥkām al-'ālim wa-al-muta'allim*. Fez, 1310 A.H. (lithographed), malzamah 24: 1-7.

V. TRANSMISSION OF KNOWLEDGE

V. 1. General studies

- Berkey, Jonathan Porter. *The transmission of knowledge in medieval Cairo: a social history of Islamic education*. Princeton, N.J., 1992.
- Leder, Stefan. "Authorship and transmission in unauthored literature". *Oriens*, 31 (1988): 67-81.
- "Riwāya". *EI*, new ed., 8: 545-547.
- Makdisi, George. *The rise of colleges: institutions of learning in Islam and the West*. Edinburgh, 1981.
- *The rise of humanism in classical Islam and the Christian West with special reference to scholasticism*. Edinburgh, 1990.
- "Madrasa and university in the Middle Ages". *Studia Islamica*, 32 (1970): 255-264.
- Messick, Brinkley. *The calligraphic state. Textual domination and history in a Muslim society*. Berkeley/Oxford, 1993.
- Nasr, Seyyed Hossein. "Oral transmission and the book in Islamic education: the spoken and the written word". *Journal of Islamic studies*, 3, no.1 (1992): 1-14.
- Reichmuth, Stefan. "Murtaḍā az-Zabīdī (d.1791) in biographical and autobiographical accounts: glimpses of Islamic scholarship in the 18th century". *Die Welt des Islams*, 39, no.1 (1999): 64-102.
- Schoeler, Gregor. "Die Frage der schriftlichen oder mündlichen Überlieferung der Wissenschaften im frühen Islam". *Der Islam*, 62 (1985): 210-230.
- "Weiteres zur Frage der schriftlichen oder mündlichen Überlieferung der Wissenschaften im Islam". *Der Islam*, 66 (1989): 38-67.
- Sellheim, R. *Al-ʿIlm wa-al-ʿulamāʾ fī ʿuṣūr al-khulafāʾ*. Beirut, 1972.
- Sizkīn (Sezgin), Fuʿād. "Aḥammīyat al-isnād fī al-ʿulūm al-ʿArabīyah wa-al-Islāmīyah". *Muḥāḍarāt fī taʾrīkh al-ʿulūm al-ʿArabīyah wa-al-Islāmīyah* (= *Vorträge zur Geschichte der arabisch-islamischen Wissenschaften*), by Fuʿād Sizkīn. Frankfurt am Main, 1984.
- Vajda, Georges. "De la transmission orale du savoir dans l'Islam traditionnel". *L'Arabisant*, 4 (1975): 2-8.
- *La transmission du savoir en Islam (VII-XVIIIe siècles)*, ed. N. Cottart. London, 1983.

V. 2. Transmission of individual works

- Fück, Johann. "Beiträge zur Überlieferungsgeschichte von Buḥārī's Traditionssammlung". *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, 92 (1938): 60-87.
- Humbert, Geneviève. *Les voies de la transmission du Kitāb de Ṣībawayh*. Leiden, 1995.
- al-Kattānī, Yūsuf. "Khatamāt Ṣaḥīḥ al-Bukhārī". *Daʿwat al-ḥaqq*, 240 (1984): 61-68.
- Lévi-Provençal, E. "La recension maghribine du Ṣaḥīḥ d'al-Boḥārī". *Journal asiatique*, 202 (1923): 209-233.
- Quiring-Zoche, Rosemarie. "How al-Buḥārī's 'Ṣaḥīḥ' was edited in the Middle Ages: 'Alī al-Yūnīnī and his 'Rumūz'". *Bulletin d'études orientales*, 50 (1998): 191-222.
- Robson, J. "The transmission of Abū Dāwūd's 'Sunan'". *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London*, 14 (1952): 579-588.
- . "The transmission of Muslim's 'Ṣaḥīḥ'". *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland*, (1949): 46-60.
- . "The transmission of Tirmīdhī's 'Jāmi'". *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London*, 16 (1954): 258-270.
- Schacht, Joseph. "Deux éditions inconnues du 'Muwaṭṭa'". *Studi orientalistici in onore di Giorgio Levi della Vida*. Rome, 1956: 2, 477-492.
- Vajda, Georges. "La transmission de la 'Kifāya fī maʿrifat uṣūl 'ilm al-riwāyah' d'al-Ḥaṭīb al-Baḡdādī". *Arabica*, 4 (1957): 304-307.
- . "La transmission de l'éloge de Zayn al-ʿĀbidīn". *Journal asiatique*, 244 (1956): 433-437.
- . "La transmission de la maṣyāḥa (Anṣal al-maqāṣid wa-aḍab al-mawārid) d'Ibn al-Buḥārī d'après le manuscrit Reisülküttab 262 de la Bibliothèque Süleymaniye d'Istanbul". *Rivista degli studi orientali*, 48 (1973-74): 55-74.

V. 3. Ijāzāt and samāʿāt (for *ijāzāt* in calligraphy see the section on calligraphy below)

- Aḥmad, Aḥmad Ramaḍān. *Al-Ijāzāt wa-al-tawḥīqāt al-maktūbah fī al-ʿulūm al-naqlīyah wa-al-ʿaqlīyah min al-qarn 4 h./10 m. ilā*

- 10 h./16 m. Cairo, Wizārat al-Thaqāfah, Hay'at al-Āthār al-Miṣrīyah, 1986.
- Bāshā, 'Umar Mūsā "Dawr al-'ilm: al-ijāzāt al-'ilmīyah". *Al-Turāth al-'Arabī*, 4 (1981): 82-103.
- Ben Shemesh, A. *Taxation in Islam*. Leiden, 1967. [Vol.1 contains 25 pages of specimens of *samā'āt*.]
- Ebied, R.Y. and Young, M.J.L. "An early eighteenth-century ijāzah issued in Damietta". *Le Muséon*, 87 (1974): 445-465.
- "New light on the origin of the term 'baccalaureate'". *Islamic quarterly*, 18, nos.1-2 (1974): 3-7.
- Gleave, Robert. "The ijāza from Yūsuf al-Baḥrānī (d.1186/1772) to Sayyid Muḥamad Maḥdī Baḥr al-'Ulūm (d.1212/1797-8)". *Iran. Journal of the British Institute of Persian Studies*, 32 (1994): 115-123.
- al-Ḥusaynī, Aḥmad. *Ijāzat al-ḥadīth allatī katabahā Shaykh al-muḥaddithīn ... Muḥammad Bāqir al-Majlisī al-Isfahānī, 1037-1110 h.* Qum, Maktabat Ayat Allāh Mar'ashī al-Āmmah, 1410 A.H.
- Ibn Ṭūlūn al-Dimashqī, Muḥammad ibn 'Alī et al. *Nawādir al-ijāzāt wa-al-samā'āt: 'alayhā khuṭūṭ kibār al-ḥuffāz wa-al-muḥaddithīn al-Makkīyīn wa-al-Miṣrīyīn wa-al-Shāmīyīn (= Rare licenses and hearings)*, ed. Muṭī' al-Ḥāfiẓ. Damascus, Dār al-Fikr/Beirut, Dār al-Fikr al-Mu'āṣir, 1998.
- al-Jalālī al-Ḥusaynī, Muḥammad Riḍā. "Dīwān al-ijāzāt al-manẓūmah". *Turāthunā*, 35-36 (1414 A.H.): 270-372.
- Jallāb, Ḥasan. "Al-Ijāzāt al-'ilmīyah 'alā 'ahd al-Dawlah al-'Alawīyah: ijāzat al-Shaykh al-Murābiṭ al-Dalālī li-Abī 'Alī al-Yūsī". *Da'wat al-ḥaqq*, 326 (1997): 97-102.
- al-Jawharjī, Muḥammad 'Adnān. "Al-Ijāzah wa-ahammīyatuhā fī al-makḥṭūṭ al-'Arabī". *Al-Baṣā'ir* (Cyprus), 26 (1994): 75-96.
- Khān, Aḥmad. "Samā'āt mu'allafāt al-Ṣaghānī al-lughawīyah". *Majallat al-Maḥad al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-'Arabīyah*, 41, no.1 (1997): 55-90.
- Koningsveld, P.S. van. "Ten Arabic manuscript-volumes of historical contents acquired by the Leyden University Library after 1957". *Studies on Islam. A symposium on Islamic studies organized in cooperation with the Accademia dei Lincei in Rome, Amsterdam, 18-19 October 1973*. Amsterdam, 1974:92-110. [Contains a number of specimens of *samā'āt*.]
- Lecomte, Gérard. "A propos de la résurgence des ouvrages d'Ibn Qutayba sur le ḥadīṭ aux VIe/XIIe et VIIe/XIIIe siècles. Les

- certificats de lecture du 'K. Ġarīb al-ḥadīṭ' et de 'K. Iṣlāḥ al-ḡalaṭ fī ġarīb al-ḥadīṭ' li-Abī 'Ubayd al-Qāsim b. Sallām". *Bulletin d'études orientales*, 21 (1968): 347-409.
- "Bedeutung der 'Randzeugnisse' (samā'āt) in den alten arabischen Handschriften". *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, Suppl.1, Teil 2 (1969): 562-566.
- Leder, Stefan. "Dokumente zum Ḥadīṭ in Schrifttum und Unterricht aus Damascus im 6./12. Jhdt.". *Oriens*, 34 (1994): 57-75.
- Leder, Stefan, Sawwās, Yāsīn Muḥammad and Sāgharjī, Ma'mūn. *Mu'jam al-samā'āt al-Dimashqīyah: les certificats d'audition à Damas, 550-750/1155-1349*. Damas: Institut français, 1996 – .
- MacKay, Pierre A. "Certificates of transmission on a manuscript of the 'Maqāmāt' of al-Ḥarīrī (MS. Cairo, Adab 105)". *Transactions of the American Philosophical Society*, n.s., 61, no.4 (1971).
- al-Maslūtī, Muṣṭafá. "Al-Ijāzah al-'ilmīyah wa-ishāmuḥā fī al-ḥarakah al-fikrīyah bi-al-Maghrib". *Majallat Dār al-Ḥadīth al-Ḥasanīyah*, 7 (1989): 238-252.
- Michaux-Bellaire, E. "Essai sur les samā's ou la transmission orale". *Hespéris*, 4 (1924): 345-355.
- al-Munajjid, Ṣalāḥ al-Dīn. "Ijāzāt al-samā' fī al-makḥṭūṭāt al-qadīmah". *Majallat Ma'had al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-'Arabīyah*, 1, no.1 (1955): 232-251.
- Nashabi, Hisham. "The 'ijāza': academic certificate in Muslim education". *Hamdard Islamicus*, 8, no.1 (1985): 7-20.
- al-Sammānī al-Ḥā'irī, Muḥammad. "Al-Ijāzāt 'inda 'ulamā' al-Imāmīyah". *Turāthunā*, 2, no.1 (1407 A.H): 172-182; 3, no.1 (1408 A.H): 107-114.
- "Al-Ijāzah al-kabīrah lil-Sayyid 'Abd Allāh al-Jazā'irī". *Turāthunā*, 1, no.2 (1406 A.H): 115-117.
- Sayyid, Ayman Fu'ād. "Al-Samā' wa-al-qirā'ah wa-al-munāwalah wa-quyūd al-al-muqābalah wa-al-mu'araḍah". *Fann fahrasat al-makḥṭūṭāt: madkhal wa-qaḍāyā*, ed. Fayṣal al-Ḥafyān. Cairo, Ma'had al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-'Arabīyah, 1999: 73-101.
- Sellheim, R. "Samā'". *EI*, new ed., 8: 1019-1020.
- Shishin (Şeşen), Ramaḍān. "Aḥammīyat ṣafḥat al-'unwān (al-ẓahrīyah) fī tawṣīf al-makḥṭūṭāt". *Dirāsāt al-makḥṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah bayna i'tibārāt al-māddah wa-al-bashar. A'māl al-Mu'tamar al-Thānī li-Mu'assasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, ed. Rashīd al-'Inānī. London, 1997: 179-196.

- Stewart, Devin J. "Ejāza". *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, ed. E. Yarshater, 8: 273-275.
- Vajda, Georges. *Les certificats de lecture et de transmission dans les manuscrits arabes de la Bibliothèque nationale de Paris*. Paris, 1957.
- . "Idjāza". *EI*, new ed., 3: 1020-1021.
- . "Un opuscule inédit d'as-Silafī". *La transmission du savoir en Islam (VIIe-XVIIIe siècles)*. London, 1983: 85-92.
- . "Quelques certificats de lecture dans les manuscrits arabes de la Bibliothèque nationale de Paris". *Arabica*, 1, no.3 (1954): 337-342.
- Witkam, Jan Just. "The human element between text and reader. The ijāza in Arabic manuscripts". *The codicology of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Second Conference of Al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation*, 1993. London, 1995: 123-136.
- . "Al-ʿUnṣūr al-basharī bayna al-naṣṣ wa-al-qārī: al-ijāzah fī al-makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah". *Dirāsāt al-makḥṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah bayna iʿtibārāt al-māddah wa-al-bashar. Aʿmāl al-Muʿtamar al-Thānī li-Muʿassasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, ed. Rashīd al-ʿInānī. London, 1997: 163-177.

VI. ARABIC ALPHABET, SCRIPTS AND PALAEOGRAPHY

VI. 1. Albums and exhibition catalogues

- Ahlwardt, Wilhelm. *Zwölf arabische Schrifttaffeln*. Berlin, 1899. [Also in: idem, *Verzeichnis der arabischen Handschriften*. Hildesheim/ New York, 1981, vol.10.]
- Amīnī, Fakhr al-Dīn Naṣrī. *Ganjīnah-i khuṭūṭ-i ʿulamāʾ-i aʿlām va dānishmandān-i kirām va shuʿarā-yi ʿizām va khūshnavīsān-i chīrahdašt va muʿāṣirān*. Tajrīsh (Iran), 1409 [1988 or 9]. 3 vols.
- Arberry, A.J. *Specimens of Arabic and Persian palaeography*. London, 1939.
- [Cheikho (Shaykhū), Louis]. *Kitāb maʿrīḍ al-khuṭūṭ al-ʿArabīyah*. (= *Spécimens d'écritures arabes pour la lecture des manuscrits anciens et modernes*). 2nd ed. Beirut, 1888.
- Fichier des manuscrits moyen-orientaux datés (FiMMOD)*, ed. François Déroche. Paris, 1991-.
- King Faisal Center for Research and Islamic Studies. *Al-Khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī min khilāl al-makḥṭūṭāt*. Riyadh, 1986.

- *Arabic calligraphy in manuscripts*. Riyad, 1986.
- Moritz, Bernhard. *Arabic palaeography: a collection of Arabic texts from the first century of the Hijra till the year 1000*. Cairo, 1905.
- al-Munajjid, Ṣalāḥ al-Dīn. *Al-Kitāb al-ʿArabī al-makḥṭūṭ ilā al-qarn al-ʿāshir al-hirjī* (= *Le Manuscrit arabe jusqu'au Xe s. de l'H.*). al-Juz' al-awwal: al-namādhij. Cairo, 1960.
- Shabbūḥ (Chabbouh), Ibrāhīm. *Al-Makḥṭūṭ* (= *Le manuscrit*). Tunis, al-Wikālah al-Qawmīyah li-Iḥyā' wa-Istighlāl al-Turāth al-Atharī wa-al-Ta'rīkhī, Alif, 1989.
- Tisserant, Eugenius. *Specimina codicum orientalium*. Bonn, 1914.
- Vajda, Georges. *Album de paléographie arabe*. Paris, 1958.
- Witkam, J.J. *Seven specimens of Arabic manuscripts*. Leiden, 1978.
- Wright, William. *Facsimiles of manuscripts and inscriptions. Oriental series*. London, 1875-83.
- al-Ziriklī, Khayr al-Dīn. *al-A'lām: qāmūs tarājīm ashhar al-rijāl wa-al-nisā' min al-ʿArab wa-al-musta'ribīn*. Vol.11, mustadrak 2: *al-Khuṭūṭ wa-al-ṣuwar*. Beirut, 1970.

VI. 2. Library catalogues with reproductions of specimens

- Arberry, A.J. *Chester Beatty Library. A handlist of the Arabic manuscripts*. Dublin, 1955-66.
- Gacek, Adam. *Arabic manuscripts in the libraries of McGill University: union catalogue*. Montreal, 1991.
- *Catalogue of Arabic manuscripts in the library of the Institute of Ismaili Studies*. London, 1984-85. 2 vols.
- Ḥusaynī, Aḥmad. *Fihrist-i nuskhah'hā-yi khaṭṭ-i Kitābkhānah-i ʿUmūmī-i Ḥaẓrat Āyat Allāh al-Uẓmā Najafī Mar'ashī...* Qum, 1395 [1975] – . [28 vols. to date.]
- Quiring-Zoeche, Rosemarie. *Arabische Handschriften*. Teil III. Stuttgart, 1994.
- Iskandar, Albert Zaki. *A catalogue of Arabic manuscripts on medicine and science in the Wellcome Historical Medical Library*. London, 1967.
- Löfgren, Oscar and Traini, Renato. *Catalogue of the Arabic manuscripts in the Biblioteca Ambrosiana*. Vicenza, 1975 – .
- Rasmussen, Stig T. (ed.). *Catalogue of Oriental manuscripts, xylographs etc. in Danish collections*. Vol. 5, pt. 1: *Catalogue of Arabic manuscripts. Codices Arabici additamenta & codices*

- Simonseniani Arabici* (= *al-Dhakhā'ir al-ʿArabīyah fī al-Maktabah al-Malakīyah*), by Ali Abd Alhussein Alhaidary and Stig T. Rasmussen. Copenhagen, 1995.
- Safadi, Yasin Hamid. *Select Arabic manuscripts. Descriptive and illustrated catalogue of a collection of Arabic manuscripts*. London, 1979.
- Schoeler, Gregor. *Arabische Handschriften*. Teil II. Stuttgart, 1990.
- Sellheim, Rudolf. *Materialien zur arabischen Literaturgeschichte*. Wiesbaden/ Stuttgart, 1976-87. 2 vols.
- Witkam, J.J. *Catalogue of Arabic manuscripts in the library of the University of Leiden and other collections in the Netherlands*. Leiden, 1983 – .

VI. 3. Studies (for other works see the sections on calligraphy, VII.2 and Qur'anic manuscripts, VIII.)

a) General

- Abbott, Nabia. "Arabic palaeography: the development of early Islamic scripts". *Ars Islamica*, 8 (1941): 65-104.
- Briquel-Chatonnet, Françoise. "De l'araméen à l'arabe: quelques réflexions sur la genèse de l'écriture arabe". *Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997: 135-149.
- Déroche, François. "Les études de paléographie des écritures livresques arabes: quelques observations". *Al-Qanṭara, revista de estudios árabes*, 19, fasc.2 (1998), 365-381.
- "Les manuscrits arabes datés du IIIe/IXe siècle". *Revue des études islamiques*, 55/57 (1987/89): 343-379.
- "La paléographie des écritures livresques dans le domaine arabe". *Gazette du livre médiéval*, 28 (1996), 1-8.
- Endress, Gerhard. "Die arabische Schrift". *Grundriss der arabischen Philologie*. Band I: *Sprachwissenschaft*, herausgegeben von W. Fischer. Wiesbaden, 1982: 165-197.
- Fleisch, H. "Ḥurūf al-ḥidjā". *EI*, new ed., 3: 596-600.
- Frye, Richard N. "An early Arabic script in eastern Iran". *Orientalia Suecana*, 3 (1954): 67-74.
- Gruendler, Beatrice. *The development of the Arabic scripts from the Nabatean era to the first Islamic century according to dated texts*. Atlanta, Ga., 1993.

- Ḥamad, Ghānim Qaddūrī. "Muwāzanah bayna rasm al-muṣḥaf wa-al-nuqūsh al-ʿArabīyah al-qadīmah". *Al-Mawrid*, 15, no.4 (1986): 27-44.
- Hanaway, William L. and Spooner, Brian. *Reading nastaʿliq: Persian and Urdu hands from 1500 to the present*. Costa Mesa, Ca., 1995.
- Healey, John F. "Nabataean to Arabic. Calligraphy and script development among the pre-Islamic Arabs". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 5 (1990-91): 41-52.
- Karabacek, Josef von. "Arabic palaeography". *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes*, 20 (1906):131-148.
- Mādun, Muḥammad ʿAlī. *Khaṭṭ al-jazm ibn khaṭṭ al-musnad*. Damascus, Ṭalās, 1989.
- Minovi, M. "The so-called Badī script". *Bulletin of the American Institute of Iranian Art and Archeology*, 5 (1937): 143-146.
- Muḥaffal, Muḥammad. "Fī uṣūl al-kitābah al-ʿArabīyah". *Dirāsāt taʾrīkhīyah* (Damascus), 6 (1981): 59-111.
- al-Naqshabandī, Usāmah Nāṣir. "Mabdaʾ zuḥūr al-ḥurūf al-ʿArabīyah wa-taṭawwuruhā fī ghāyat al-qarn al-awwal al-hijrī". *Al-Mawrid*, 15, no.4 (1986): 83-102.
- Orsatti, Paola. "Gli studi di paleografia araba oggi: problemi e metodi". *Scrittura e civiltà*, 14 (1990): 281-331.
- Rāḡib, Yūsuf. "L'écriture des papyrus arabes aux premiers siècles de l'Islam". *Revue du monde musulman et de la Méditerranée*, 58 (1991): 14-29.
- Rezvan, E. and Kondybaev, N.S. "New tool for analysis of handwritten script". *Manuscripta Orientalia*, 2, no. 3 (1996): 43-53.
- Robin, Christian. "Les écritures de l'Arabie avant l'Islam". *Revue du monde musulman et de la Méditerranée*, 61 (1991):127-137.
- Rosenthal, Franz. "Significant uses of Arabic writing". *Ars Orientalis*, 4 (1961): 15-23. [Reprinted in his *Four essays on art and literature in Islam*. Leiden, 1971: 50-62.]
- Schroeder, Eric. "What was the Badī script?". *Ars Islamica*, 4 (1937):232-248.
- "The so-called Badī script, a mistaken identification". *Bulletin of the American Institute of Iranian Art and Archaeology*, 5 (1937): 146-147.
- Şeşen, Ramazan. "Les caractéristiques de l'écriture de quatre manuscrits du IVe s. H/Xe s. AD". *Les manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche. Istanbul/Paris, 1989: 45-48.

- Shabbūh, Ibrāhīm. *Ba‘ḍ mulāḥazāt ‘alā khaṭṭ al-bardīyāt al-‘Arabīyah al-Miṣrīyah al-mubakkarah wa-madā ta’athihurihā bi-ḥarakāt iṣlāḥ al-kitābah*. Cairo, Maṭba‘at Dār al-Kutub, 1970.
- Silvestre de Sacy, A.I. “Nouveaux aperçus sur l’histoire de l’écriture chez les arabes du Hedjaz”. *Journal asiatique*, 10 (1827): 209-231.
- “Mémoire sur l’origine et les anciens monuments de la littérature parmi les arabes”. *Mémoires de littérature tirés des registres de l’Académie royale des Inscriptions et Belles-Lettres*, 1 (1808): 247-440. [1ère partie: ‘Histoire de l’écriture parmi les arabes’, reprinted in F. Déroche, *Sources de la transmission manuscrite du texte coranique* I, vol.1. Les, 1998: XXIX-XCII.]
- Sourdel-Thomine, J. “Les origines de l’écriture arabe: à propos d’une hypothèse récente”. *Revue des études islamiques*, 34 (1966): 151-157.
- al-Zarkān, Muḥammad ‘Alī. “Al-Kitābah bayna al-Suryānīyah wa-al-‘Arabīyah”. *Al-Lisān al-‘Arabī*, 40 (1995): 53-76.

b) Maghribi and African scripts

- Binsharīfah, Muḥammad. “Naẓrah ḥawla al-khaṭṭ al-Andalusī”. *Al-Makḥṭūṭ al-‘Arabī wa-‘ilm al-makḥṭūṭāt* (= *Le manuscrit arabe et la codicologie*). Rabat, 1994: 73-85.
- Bivar, A.D.H. “The Arabic calligraphy of West Africa”. *African languages review*, 7 (1968): 3-15.
- Boogert, N. van den. “Some notes on Maghribi script”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 4 (1989): 30-43.
- Déroche, François. “O. Houdas et les écritures maghrébines”. *Al-Makḥṭūṭ al-‘Arabī wa-‘ilm al-makḥṭūṭāt* (= *Le manuscrit arabe et la codicologie*). Rabat, 1994: 75-81.
- “Tradition et innovation dans la pratique de l’écriture au Maghreb pendant les IVe/Xe et Ve/Xie siècles”. *Numismatique, langues, écritures et arts du livre, spécificité des arts figurés: actes du VIIe Colloque international sur l’histoire et archéologie de l’Afrique du nord, réunis dans le cadre du 121e Congrès des sociétés historiques et scientifiques, Nice, 21 au 31 octobre 1996*, ed. Serge Lancel. Paris, 1999 : 233-247.
- Houdas, O. “Essai sur l’écriture maghrébine”. *Nouveaux mélanges orientaux*, (1886): 85-112.
- al-Manūnī, Muḥammad . “Lamḥah ‘an ta’rīkh al-khaṭṭ al-‘Arabī wa-al-

- zakhrafah fī al-Gharb al-Islāmī”. *Al-Majallah al-ta’rīkhīyah al-Maghribīyah*, 16, nos.53-54 (1989): 205-230.
- al-Nājī, al-Amjad. “Al-Khaṭṭ al-Maghribī wa-al-huwīyah al-mafqūdah”. *Al-Makḥṭūṭ al-‘Arabī wa-‘ilm al-makḥṭūṭāt* (= *Le manuscrit arabe et la codicologie*). Rabat, 1994: 87-97.
- Sukayrij, ‘Abd al-Karīm. “Al-Khaṭṭ al-Maghribī”. *Majallat al-thaqāfah al-Maghribīyah*, no.2 (1941): 67-72.
- “Al-Khaṭṭ al-‘Arabī al-Maghribī”. *Ta’rīkh al-wirāqah al-Maghribīyah. Šinā‘at al-makḥṭūṭ al-Maghribī min al-‘aṣr al-wasīṭ ilā al-fatrah al-mu‘āṣirah*, by Muḥammad al-Manūnī. Rabat, 1991: 320-325.

VII. THE ARTS OF THE BOOK

VII. 1. General

a) Bibliographies

- Creswell, K.A.C. *A bibliography of the architecture, arts and crafts of Islam to 1st Jan. 1960*. Cairo, 1978: 608-624 (bookbinding), 627-674 (calligraphy and palaeography), 979-1087 (painting). *Supplement Jan.1960 to Jan 1972*. Cairo, 1973: 199-214, 293-316. *Second supplement Jan.1972 to Dec. 1980* (with omissions from previous years), by J.D. Pearson, Cairo, 1984: 309-412, 455-498.
- Jachimowicz, E.M.F. “Illuminated Arabic manuscripts”. *Arab Islamic bibliography: the Middle East Library Committee guide*, ed. D. Grimwood-Jones, D. Hopwood, and J.D. Pearson. Hassocks, England, 1977: 164-186.

b) General studies and exhibition catalogues

- Arnold, T.W. and Grohmann, Adolf. *The Islamic book: a contribution to its art and history from the VIIth to the XIIIth century*. [Florence], 1929.
- The arts of Islam: catalogue of an exhibition at the Hayward Gallery*. London, 1976.
- Berthier, A. “L’art du livre ottoman”. *Arts et métiers du livre*, 163 (1990): 41-47.

- Blair, Sheila and Bloom, Jonathan M. "Islamic art: arts of the book, III. introduction". *The dictionary of art*, ed. J. Turner. New York, 1996: 16, 271-273.
- Bothmer, Hans-Caspar Graf von. "Islamische Buchkunst". *Das Buch im Orient: Handschriften und kostbare Drucke aus zwei Jahrtausenden. Ausstellung 16. Nov. 1982 – 5. Feb. 1983*. Wiesbaden, 1982: 109-220.
- Brend, Barbara. "The arts of the book". *The arts of Persia*, ed. R.W. Ferrier. New Haven/London, 1989: 232-242.
- Carboni, Stefano. "The Arabic manuscripts". *Pages of perfection. Islamic paintings and calligraphy from the Russian Academy of Sciences, St. Petersburg*. Lugano/Milan, 1995: 77-91.
- Denny, Walter B. "Dating Ottoman Turkish works in the saz style". *Muqarnas*, 1 (1983): 103-121.
- . *The image and the word: Islamic painting and calligraphy*. Springfield, Mass, Museum of Fine Arts, 1976.
- Dreaming of paradise. Islamic art from the collection of the Museum of Ethnology, Rotterdam*. [Rotterdam], 1993.
- Duda, D. *Islamische Handschriften*. Wien, 1992-1993. 2 vols.
- Fisher, Carol G. "Naḳḳāsh-khāna". *EI*, new ed., 7: 931-932.
- Gray, Basil (ed.). *The arts of the book in Central Asia, 14th-16th centuries*. Paris/ London, 1979.
- James, David. *The Arabic book (= Das arabische Buch). An exhibition of Arabic manuscripts from the Chester Beatty Library, Dublin at the Museum für Kunst und Gewerbe, Hamburg on the occasion of the Euro-Arab Dialogue, Cultural Symposium, April 1983*. Dublin, 1983.
- . *Islamic masterpieces of the Chester Beatty Library*. London, World of Islam Festival Trust, 1981.
- Losty, J. *The art of the book in India*. London, 1982.
- Lowry, Glen and Nemazee, Susan. *A jeweler's eye: Islamic arts of the book from the Vever Collection*. Washington, D.C. 1988.
- Orientalische Buchkunst in Gotha: Ausstellung zum 350 jährigen Jubiläum der Forschungs- und Landesbibliothek Gotha*. Gotha, 1997. [In particular: 'Die Buchkunst des Islams', 49-175.]
- Pages of perfection. Islamic paintings and calligraphy from the Russian Academy of Sciences, St. Petersburg*. Lugano/Milan, 1995.
- Piemontese, Angelo M. "Arte persiana del libro e scrittura araba". *Scrittura e civiltà*, 4 (1980): 103-156.

- Richard, Francis. *Splendeurs persanes: manuscrits du XIIe au XVIIIe siècle*. Paris, Bibliothèque nationale de France, 1997.
- Roxburgh, David J. "The study of painting and the arts of the book". *Muqarnas*, 17 (2000): 1-16.
- Rührdanz, K. "The arts of the book in Central Asia". *Uzbekistan: heirs to the silk road*, ed. J. Kalter and M. Pavaloi. London/New York, 1997: 101-115.
- Tanindi, Zeren. "Additions to illustrated manuscripts in Ottoman workshops". *Muqarnas*, 17 (2000): 147-161.
- . "Manuscript production in the Ottoman Palace workshop". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 5 (1990-91): 67-98.
- Taylor, Alice. *Book arts of Isfahan: diversity and identity in seventeenth-century Persia*. Malibu, Ca., J. Paul Getty Museum, 1995.
- Vernoit, Stephen. *Occidentalism: Islamic art in the 19th century*. London/Oxford, 1997 (*The Nasser D. Khalili Collection of Islamic Art, XXIII*).
- Welch, A. and Welch, S.C. *Arts of the Islamic book. The collection of Prince Sadruddin Agha Khan*. Ithaca/London, 1982.

c) Albums (muraqqa'āt)

- Derman, M. Uğur. "The murakka, an album of calligraphic collage". *İlgi*, 32 (1981): 40-43.
- . "The Turkish calligraphic art: the kır'a". *İlgi*, 30 (1980): 32-35.
- Mahdī'zādah, Muṣṭafā and Razzāqī, Ḥusayn. *Muntakhabī az muraqqa'āt-i Kitābkhānah-i Markazī-yi Astān-i Quds-i Razavī* (= *Selected calligraphy from the Central Library of Astane Qods Razavi*). [Mashhad], 1368 [1990].
- Mustafa İzzet. *Kazasker Mustafa İzzet Efendi'nin sülüs ve nesih meşk murakkai*. Istanbul, Kubbealtı Neşriyatı, 1996.
- Robinson, B.W. "Murakka". *EI*, new ed., 7: 602-603.
- Roxburgh, David J. "Catalogue of scripts by seven masters (H.2310): a Timurid calligraphy album at the Ottoman court". *Art turc* (= *Turkish art*): *10e Congrès international d'art turc*, ed. F. Déroche et al. Geneva, 1999: 587-597.
- . "'Our works point to us': album making, collecting, and art (1427-1565) under the Timurids and Safavids". Ph.D. diss., Univ. of Pennsylvania, 1996.

- Şevki Efendi, Mehmed. *Şevki Efendi'nin sülüs ve nesih meşk murakkai*. Istanbul, Kubbealtı Neşriyatı, 1996.
- The St. Petersburg muraqqa': album of Indian and Persian miniatures from the 16th through the 18th century and specimens of Persian calligraphy by Imâd al-Hasanî*. Lugano/Milan, 1996.
- Thackston, Wheeler M. "Album, 3. Islamic world". *The dictionary of art*, ed. J. Turner. New York, 1996: 1, 583-584.

VII. 2. Calligraphy (see also VIII. Qur'anic manuscripts)

a) Bibliographies and dictionaries

- Akgül, Medine and Yiğitbaş, Ayeşe Kızıltepe. *Uğur Derman bibliyografyası*. Istanbul, Türk Kütüphaneciler Derneği, 1996.
- ‘Awwād, Kūrķīs. "Al-Khaṭṭ al-‘Arabī fī āthār al-dārisīn qadīman wa-ḥadīthan". *Al-Mawrid*, 15 (1986): 377-412.
- al-Bahnassī, ‘Afīf . *Mu‘jam muṣṭalaḥāt al-khaṭṭ al-‘Arabī wa-al-khaṭṭātīn*. Beirut, Maktabat Lubnān, 1995.
- Gacek, Adam. "Al-Nuwayrī's classification of Arabic scripts". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 2 (1987): 126-130. [Includes an appendix: 'A select bibliography of classical and post-classical texts on penmanship'.]
- Shaykh Mūsā, Muḥammad Khayr. "Ḥarakat al-ta’līf fī al-kitābah wa-al-kuttāb wa-maṣādir naqd al-tarassul wa-al-kitābah (ḥattā al-qarn al-rābī ‘al-hijrī)". *Majallat Majma‘ al-Lughah al-‘Arabīyah bi-Dimashq*, 72, no.3 (1997): 481-526.
- al-Yūsuf, Khālīd Aḥmad and Sayyid, Amīn Sulaymān. "Marājī‘ al-khaṭṭ al-‘Arabī". *Al-Khaṭṭ al-‘Arabī min khilāl al-makhtūṭāt*. Riyad, 1406 [1986]: 241-254. [See also the English version: *Arabic calligraphy in manuscripts*, 259-267.]

b) Exhibition catalogues

- Derman, M. Uğur. *Letters in gold: Ottoman calligraphy from the Sakip Sabanci collection, Istanbul*. New York, Metropolitan Museum of Art, 1998.
- Grube, Ernst J. *Calligraphy and the decorative arts of Islam*. London, Bluett, 1976.
- Hoare, Oliver. *The calligrapher's craft. Summer exhibition, 1-27 June 1987, Ahuan Gallery of Islamic Art*. London, 1987.

Islamic calligraphy: sacred and secular writings (= *Calligraphie islamique*). Geneva, Musée d'art et d'histoire, 1988.

Musée de la calligraphie arabe. *Calligraphie arabe: oeuvres du Musée de Damas, [exposition], 25 mai – 19 juin 1977*. Paris, 1977.

Safwat, Nabil F., Fehérvári, Géza and Zakariya, Mohamed U. *The harmony of letters: Islamic calligraphy from the Tareq Rajab Museum*. Singapore, 1997.

c) Pre-20th century texts on calligraphy and penmanship

Abouricha, Nouredine. "Recherches autour l'opuscule la 'Ḥikmat al-ishrāq ilā kuttāb al-āfāq' de Murtaḍā al-Zabīdī". Doctoral thesis, EPHE (Paris), 2000.

Gacek, Adam. "Arabic scripts and their characteristics as seen through the eyes of Mamluk authors". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 4 (1989): 144-149.

———. "Al-Nuwayrī's classification of Arabic scripts". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 2 (1987): 126-130.

Hilmi Efendi, Mustafa Hakkāk-zāde. *Mizān al-khaṭṭ*. Istanbul, Osmanlı Yayınevi, 1986. [Facsimile edition of an album calligraphed by Ḥakkāk zādah in 1266/1850 and containing a number of texts in Arabic and Turkish, including *Ṭuhfat ūlī al-albāb* by Ibn al-Ṣā'igh, 3 ijāzāt and *Handasat al-khaṭṭ* by Shaykh Ḥamd Allāh.]

Ibn Muqlah, Muḥammad ibn 'Alī. "Risālah fī al-khaṭṭ wa-al-qalam". *Ibn Muqlah, khaṭṭāṭan wa-adībān wa-insānan*, by Hilāl Nājī. Baghdad, Dār al-Shu'ūn al-Thaqāfiyyah al-Āmmah, 1991: 113-126.

James, David. "The commentaries of Ibn al-Baṣṣ and Ibn al-Wahīd on Ibn al-Bawwāb's 'Ode on the art of calligraphy' (Rā'iyyah fī l-khaṭṭ)". *Back to the sources. Biblical and Near Eastern studies in honour of Dermot Ryan*, ed. K.J. Cathcart and J.F. Healey. Sandycove, 1989: 164-191.

al-Kātib, Ḥusayn ibn Yāsīn ibn Muḥammad. *Lamḥat al-mukhtaṭif fī ṣin'at al-khaṭṭ al-ṣalīf*, ed. Hayā Muḥammad Dawsarī. Kuwait, Mu'assasat al-Kuwayt lil-Taḳaddum al-ʿIlmī, Idārat al-Ta'līf wa-al-Tarjamah wa-al-Nashr, 1992.

Nājī, Hilāl. "Nuṣūṣ fī al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī". *Al-Mawrid*, 15, no.4 (1986): 157-270. [Contains five texts: *Waḍḍāḥat al-uṣūl fī al-khaṭṭ* by ʿAbd al-Qādir al-Ṣaydāwī, *Naẓm laʿālī al-simṭ* by Aḥmad al-

- Rifāʿī al-Qaṣṭālī, *Minhāj al-iṣābah* by Muḥammad al-Ziftāwī, *Biḍāʿat al-mujawwid* by Muḥammad al-Sinjārī and *Sharḥ al-manzūmah al-mustaṭābah fī ʿilm al-kitābah* by Ibn Baṣīṣ and Ibn al-Wahīd.]
- “Risālah fī ṣināʿat al-kitābah”, ed. ʿAbd al-Laṭīf al-Rāwī and ʿAbd al-Ilāh Nabhān. *Majallat Majmaʿ al-Lughah al-ʿArabīyah bi-Dimashq*, 62, no.4 (1987): 760-795; 63, no.1 (1988): 50-65.
- Rudolph, Ekkehard. “Der Wettsreit der Schriftarten – eine arabische Handschrift aus der Forschungsbibliothek Gotha”. *Der Islam*, 65, Heft 2 (1988): 301-316. [Contains a facsimile of *Ghāyat al-marām fī takhāṭub al-aqlām* by ʿAbd Allāh ibn Aḥmad al-Maqdisī.]
- Saʿd, Fārūq. *Risālah fī al-khaṭṭ wa-bary al-qalam li-Ibn al-Ṣāʿigh*. Beirut, Sharikat al-Maṭbūʿāt, 1997.
- al-Saʿdī al-Mawṣilī, Sāliḥ. “Urjūzah fī ʿilm rasm al-khaṭṭ”, ed. Zuhayr Zāhid and Hilāl Nājī. *Al-Mawrid*, 15, no.4 (1986): 345-376.
- al-Sāwirī, ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz. “Kitāb al-qalam li-Abī Muḥammad al-Sarrāj al-Baghdādī”. *Ālam al-kutub*, 15, no.1 (1994): 70-73.
- al-Zabīdī, Muḥammad Murtaḍā. *Hikmat al-ishrāq ilā kuttāb al-āfāq*, ed. Muḥammad Ṭalḥah Bilāl. Jeddah, Dār al-Madanī, 1990. [Contains (pp.113-138) a compilation by the editor entitled: *Tatimmah fī naqd al-athār al-maʿrūfah ʿan al-khaṭṭ wa-al-kitābah*.]

d) Calligraphers and calligraphers’ diplomas

- ʿAbbās, Ṣamyā Muḥammad. “Nisāʾ khaṭṭātāt”. *Al-Mawrid*, 15, no.4 (1986): 141-148.
- Abbott, Nabia. “The contribution of Ibn Muḥlah to the North-Arabic script”. *American journal of Semitic languages and literatures*, 56 (1939): 71-83.
- Albin, M.W. “Index of penmen in Nājī Zayn al-Dīn’s ‘Muṣawwar al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī’”. *MELA notes*, 13 (1978): 27-35.
- al-Atharī, Muḥammad Bahjah. *Tahqīqāt wa-taʿlīqāt ʿalā kitāb ʿal-Khaṭṭāt al-Baghdādī ʿAlī ibn Hilāl al-mashhūr bi-Ibn al-Bawwāb*. Baghdād, al-Majmaʿ al-ʿIlmī al-ʿIrāqī, 1958.
- al-Aʿzamī, Walīd. *Jamharat al-khaṭṭātīn al-Baghdādīyīn mundhu taʿsīs Baghdād ḥattā nihāyat al-qarn al-rābiʿ ʿashar al-hijrī*. Baghdad, Wizārat al-Thaqāfah wa-al-ʿIlām, Dār al-Shuʿūn al-Thaqāfīyah al-ʿĀmmah, 1989. 2 vols.

- ‘Azzāwī, ‘Abbās. “Khaṭṭ al-muṣḥaf al-sharīf wa-al-khaṭṭāt al-Shāh Maḥmūd al-Nīsābūrī”. *Sumer*, 23 (1967): 151-156, 5 illus.
- “Al-Khaṭṭ wa-mashāhīr al-khaṭṭātīn fī al-waṭan al-‘Arabī”, ed. Fāḍil ‘Abbās al-‘Azzāwī. *Sumer*, 38, nos.1-2 (1982): 284-302.
- “Mashāhīr al-khaṭṭātīn fī al-‘Irāq fī ‘ahd al-Mamālīk”. *Sumer*, 5 (1949): 85-91.
- “Mashāhīr al-khaṭṭ al-‘Arabī fī Turkiyā”. *Sumer*, 36, no.1-2 (1980): 334-352.
- “Nuṣūṣ ijāzāt al-khaṭṭātīn”. *Al-Mawrid*, 1, no.3-4 (1972): 180-186.
- al-Bahnassī, ‘Afīf. *Muḥjam muṣṭalahāt al-khaṭṭ al-‘Arabī wa-al-khaṭṭātīn*. Beirut, Maktabat Lubnān, 1995.
- Déroche, François. “The Ottoman roots of a Tunisian calligrapher’s ‘tour de force’”. *Sanatta etkilesim (= Interactions in art)*, ed. Z. Yasa Yaman. Ankara (forthcoming).
- Gacek, Adam. “The diploma of the Egyptian calligrapher Ḥasan al-Ruṣḥdī”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 4 (1989): 44-55.
- Hassan, Ahmed Moustafa M. “The scientific foundation of Arabic lettershapes according to the theory of ‘the proportioned script’ by Ibn Muqla (272-328 AH / 886-940 AD)”. Ph.D, London Institute – Central Saint Martin’s College of Art and Design, 1989.
- Huart, Cl. *Les calligraphes et les miniaturistes de l’Orient musulman*. Paris, 1908.
- Ibrāhīm, ‘Abd al-Laṭīf. “Ibn al-Ṣā’igh al-khaṭṭāt wa-madrasatuh”. *Majallat al-maktabah al-‘Arabīyah* (Cairo), 1, no.3 (1964): 80-93, 7 illus.
- al-Jubūrī, Maḥmūd Shukr. “Al-Khaṭṭāt Yāqūt al-Musta‘ṣimī”. *Al-Mawrid*, 15, no.4 (1896): 149-156.
- al-Kurdī, Muḥammad Ṭāhīr. *Ta’rīkh al-khaṭṭ al-‘Arabī wa-ādābuh*. Cairo, 1939. [Also published: Riyad, al-Jam’īyah al-‘Arabīyah al-Sa’ūdīyah lil-Thaqāfah wa-al-Funūn, 1982.]
- al-Munajjid, Ṣalāḥ al-Dīn. *Yāqūt al-Musta‘ṣimī*. Beirut, Dār al-Kitāb al-Jadīd, 1985.
- “Women’s roles in the art of Arabic calligraphy”. *The book in the Islamic world: the written word and communication in the Middle East*, ed. George N. Atiyeh. Albany, NY, 1995: 141-148.
- Nājī, Hilāl. *Ibn al-Bawwāb – ‘abqarī al-khaṭṭ al-‘Arabī ‘abra al-‘uṣūr: majmū‘ah naḥṣah min khuṭūṭ Ibn al-Bawwāb*. Beirut, Dār al-Gharb al-Islāmī, 1998.

- *Ibn Muqlah, khaṭṭātān wa-adīban wa-insānan*. Baghdad, Dār al-Shu'ūn al-Thaqāfīyah al-Āmmah, 1991.
- Porter, Yves. "Notes sur le 'Golestān-e honar' de Qāzi Aḥmad Qomī". *Studia Iranica*, 17 (1988): 207-223.
- Qāḍī Aḥmad. *Calligraphers and painters: a treatise by Qāḍī Aḥmad, son of Mīr-Munshī (circa A.H. 1015/A.D. 1606)*. Transl. by V. and T. Minorsky. Washington, D.C., 1959.
- al-Qaysī, Nūrī Ḥammūdī. "Madrasat al-khaṭṭ al-ʿIrāqīyah min Ibn Muqlah ilā Hāshim al-Baghdādī". *Al-Mawrid*, 15, no.4 (1986): 69-82.
- Rado, Şevket. *Türk hattatları XV. yüzyıldan günümüze kadar gelmiş ünlü hattatların hayatları ve yazılarından örnekler*. Istanbul, 1982.
- Rayef, Ahmad Maher. "Die ästhetischen Grundlagen der arabischen Schrift bei Ibn Muqlah". Diss. Köln, 1975.
- Richard, Francis. "Dīvānī ou Taʿlīq: un calligraphe au service de Mehmet II Sayyidī Mohammad Monṣī". *Les manuscrits du Moyen Orient*, ed. F. Déroche. Istanbul/ Paris, 1989: 89-93.
- Ribera y Tarragó, J. "Escuela valenciana de calígrafos árabes". *Disertaciones y opúsculos*, by J. Ribera y Tarragó. Madrid, 1928: 2, 304-306.
- Saʿīd, Khayr Allāh. *Khaṭṭātū Baghdād fī al-ʿaṣr al-ʿAbbāsī*. Damascus, Dār al-Numayr, 1996.
- Salmān, ʿĪsā. "Al-Shāh Maḥmūd al-Nīsābūrī: khaṭṭāt wa-madhhab". *Sumer*, 33, no.1 (1977): 104-111.
- Serin, Muhittin. *Hat sanatı ve meşhur hattatlar*. Istanbul, Kubbealtı Neşriyatı, 1999.
- *Hattat Aziz Efendi*. Istanbul, Kubbealtı Akademisi Kültür ve Sanʿat Vakfı, 1999.
- *Hattat Şeyh Hamdullah: hayâtı, talebeleri, eserleri*. Istanbul, Kubbealtı Akademisi Kültür ve Sanʿat Vakfı, 1992.
- Soucek, P.P. "Abdallah Şayrafi". *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, ed. E. Yarshater, 1: 203-205.
- Sourdel, D. "Ibn Muqla". *EI*, new ed., 3: 886-887.
- Sourdel-Thomine, J. "Ibn al-Bawwāb". *EI*, new ed., 3: 736-737.
- Tabrizi, Mohammad Ali Karimzadeh. *Ijzat nameh (= Icâzet name): the most unique and precious document in Ottoman calligraphy*. London, 1999.
- Ünver, A. Süheyl. *Al-Khaṭṭāt al-Baghdādī ʿAlī ibn Hilāl al-mashhūr bi-Ibn al-Bawwāb*. Transl. by Muḥammad Bahjah al-Atharī and ʿAzīz Shāmī. Baghdad, Maṭbaʿat al-Majmaʿ al-ʿIlmī al-ʿIrāqī, 1958.

Welch, A. "Patrons and calligraphers in Safavi Iran". *MELA notes*, 12 (1977): 10-15.

Zāyid, Aḥmad Ṣabrī. *Ta'riḫ al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī wa-a'lām al-khaṭṭātīn: muzawwad bi-al-ṣuwar wa-al-lawḥāt li-ashhar al-khaṭṭātīn*. Cairo, Dār al-Faḍīlah, [1999].

e) Studies and albums (by modern calligraphers) (see also VII.1.c)

al-ʿAbbāsī, Yaḥyá Sallūm. *Al-Khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī: ta'riḫuh wa-anwā'uh muzayyan bi-al-lawḥāt al-khaṭṭīyah wa-al-ṣuwar*. Baghdad, Maktabat al-Naḥḍah, 1984.

Acar, M. Şinasi. *Türk hat sanatı: araç, gereç ve formlar* (= *Turkish calligraphy: materials, tools and forms*. Istanbul, Antik A.Ş., 1999.[Text in Turkish and English.]

ʿAfīfī, Fawzī Sālim. *Jāmiʿ al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī*. Damascus/Cairo, Dār al-Kitāb al-ʿArabī, 1996.

Akimushkin, Oleg. "The calligraphy of the St. Petersburg Album". *The St. Petersburg muraqqaʿ. Album of Indian and Persian miniatures from the 16th through the 18th century and specimens of Persian calligraphy by ʿImād al-Hasanī*. Lugano/Milan, 1996: 39-46.

Āl Saʿīd, Shākir Ḥasan. "Al-Khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī jamālīyan wa-ḥaḍārīyan". *Al-Mawrid*, 15, no.4 (1986): 51-68.

Alani, Ghani. "Calligraphy: the writing of script". *Dreaming of paradise. Islamic art from the collection of the Museum of Ethnology, Rotterdam*. [Rotterdam], 1993: 41-61.

al-Ali, Salih. "Remarks on style". *Islamic calligraphy, sacred and secular writings*. Geneva, 1988: 30-39.

Alparslan, Ali. "L'art de la calligraphie en Turquie aux XVe et XVIe siècles". *Revue des études islamiques*, 35 (1967): 219-224.

——— "Ecoles calligraphiques turques". *Islam Tetkikleri Enstitüsü Dergisi*, 5, nos. 1-4 (1973): 265-278.

——— "The influence of the court and the courtly milieu on the development of Islamic calligraphy". *Actes du XXIXe Congrès international des orientalistes. Etudes arabes et islamiques. 1. Histoire et civilisation*. Paris, 1975 : 23-28.

Atanasiu, V. *De la fréquence des lettres et de son influence en calligraphie arabe*. Paris, 1999.

Aziza, Mohamed. *La calligraphie arabe*. Tunis, 1973.

al-Bahnassī, ʿAfīf. *Al-Khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī: uṣūluḥ, naḥḍatuh, intishāruḥ*. Damascus, Dār al-Fikr, 1984.

- al-Baghdādī, Hāshim Muḥammad. *Qawā'id al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī: majmū'ah khaṭṭīyah li-anwā' al-khuṭūṭ al-ʿArabīyah*. Al-Ṭab'ah al-muzayyadah. Baghdad, Maktabat al-Nahḍah, Beirut, Dār al-Qalam, 1980.
- Bhutta, Muhammad Iqbal. "Muslim calligraphy in the Subcontinent". *Journal of the Research Society of Pakistan*, 36, no.2 (1999): 43-67, 2 p. of illus.
- Bidīwī, Yūsuf 'Alī. *Al-Dirāsāt al-akādīmīyah fī ta'rīkh al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī wa-jamālīyātih wa-tiqnīyātih*. Damascus, Dār al-Wa'y, 1996.
- "Calligraphy". *A survey of Persian art from prehistoric times to the present*, ed. A.U. Pope and P. Ackerman. Ashiya/New York, 1977: 2, 1707-1742.
- Derman, M. Uğur. "A remarkable collection of mashq". *Art turc (= Turkish art): 10e Congrès international d'art turc*, ed. F. Déroche et al. Geneva, 1999: 253-259.
- . "The Turks and the art of calligraphy". *Islam sanatında Türkler (= The Turkish contribution to Islamic arts)*. Istanbul, 1976: 58-83, 235-236.
- Derman, M. Uğur and Çetin, Nihad M. *The art of calligraphy in the Islamic heritage*. Istanbul, IRCICA, 1998.
- Déroche, François. "Maîtres et disciples: la transmission de la culture calligraphique dans le monde ottoman". *Revue du monde musulman et de la Méditerranée*, 75-76 (1995): 81-90.
- Dhannūn, Yūsuf. "Qadīm wa-jadīd fī aṣl al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī wa-taṭawwuruh fī 'uṣūrih al-mukhtalifah". *Al-Mawrid*, 15, no.4 (1986): 7-26.
- Fazā'ilī, Ḥabīb Allāh. *Aṭlas-i khaṭṭ: taḥqīq dar khuṭūṭ-i Islāmī*. Isfahan, [1971].
- . *Ta'līm-i khaṭṭ*. Tehran, Surūsh, 1363 [1984 or 1985].
- Gacek, Adam. "Arabic calligraphy and the 'Herbal' of al-Ghāfiqī: a survey of Arabic manuscripts at McGill University". *Fontanus: from the collections of McGill University*, 2 (1989): 37-53.
- Ḥanash, Idhān Muḥammad. *Al-Khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī fī al-wathā'iḳ al-'Uthmānīyah*. Amman, Dār al-Manāhij, 1998.
- . *Al-Khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī wa-ishkālīyāt al-naqd al-fannī*. Amman, Dār al-Manāhij, 1998.
- Harātī, Muḥammad Maḥdī. *Tajallī-i hunar dar kitābat-i Bism Allāh (= Wudūḥ al-fann fī kitābat al-basmalah)*. Mashhad, 1367/ [1988].
- James, David. "Calligraphy, epigraphy and the art of the book".

- Louisiana revy*, 27, no.3 (March 1987): 20-23.
- "Islamic calligraphy, an outline". *Islamic calligraphy: sacred and secular writings*. Geneva, 1988: 12-19.
- al-Jubūrī, Kāmil Salmān. *Mawsū'at al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī*. Beirut, Dār wa-Maktabat al-Hilāl, 1999. 8 vols.
- *Uṣūl al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī: nashʾatuh, anwāʾuh, taṭawwuruh, namādhijuh*. Beirut, Dār wa-Maktabat al-Hilāl, 2000.
- al-Jubūrī, Yaḥyá Wahīb. *Al-Khaṭṭ wa-al-kitābah fī al-ḥaḍārah al-ʿArabīyah*. Beirut, Dār al-Gharb al-Islāmī, 1994.
- Khatibi, Abdelkabar and Sijelmassi, Mohammed. *The splendor of Islamic calligraphy*. London, 1976.
- Kühnel, Ernst. *Islamische Schriftkunst*. 3. Auflage. Graz, 1986.
- al-Kurdī, Muḥammad Ṭāhir. *Taʾrīkh al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī wa-ādābuh*. Cairo, 1939. [New ed.: Riyad, al-Jamʿīyah al-ʿArabīyah al-Saʿūdīyah lil-Thaqāfah wa-al-Funūn, 1982.]
- Lowry, Glenn D. "Introduction to Islamic calligraphy". *From concept to context. Approaches to Asian and Islamic calligraphy*, by Shen Fu, G. D. Lowry and A. Yonemura. Washington, 1986: 102-149.
- Lowry, Heath. "Calligraphy – Hüsn-i hat". *Tulips, arabesques & turbans: decorative arts from the Ottoman empire*, ed. Y. Petso-poulos. London, 1982: 169-191.
- al-Manūnī, Muḥammad. "Lamḥah ʿan taʾrīkh al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī: awwalan bi-al-Mashriq al-Islāmī". *Al-Manāhil*, 24 (1982): 238-266.
- Mitchell, T.F. *Writing Arabic: a practical introduction to ruqʿah script*. London, 1953.
- Naef, Silvia. *L'art de l'écriture arabe: passé et présent*. Geneva, 1992.
- Raby, Julian. "The Nayrizi tradition: Naskh in Safavid and Qajar Iran". *The art of the pen: calligraphy of the 14th to 20th centuries*, by Nabil F. Safwat. Oxford, 1996: 212-227.
- Rahman, Parez Islam Syed Mustafizur. *Islamic calligraphy in medieval India*. Dacca, 1979.
- "An introduction to Islamic calligraphy, techniques and terminology". *Dacca University Studies*, 22a (1974): 203-210.
- al-Rifāʿī, Bilāl ʿAbd al-Wahhāb. *Al-Khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī: taʾrīkhuh wa-ḥāḍiruh*. Damascus/ Beirut, Dār Ibn Kathīr, 1990.
- Rodari, Florian. "The imponderable, improbable writing". *Islamic calligraphy: sacred and secular writings*. Geneva, 1988: 40-47.
- Safadi, Yasin Hamid. *Islamic calligraphy*. London, 1978. [French

- translation, *Calligraphie islamique*, by Michel Garell, Paris, 1978.]
- Safwat, Nabil F. *The art of the pen: calligraphy of the 14th to 20th centuries*. London/ Oxford, 1996 (*The Nasser D. Khalili Collection of Islamic Art*, V).
- al-Samarra'i, Qāsim Aḥmad. "Ta'rīkh al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī wa-arqāmih: muqaddimah mūjazah". *Ālam al-kutub*, 16, no.6 (1995): 523-537.
- Schimmel, Annemarie. "The art of calligraphy". *The arts of Persia*, ed. R.W. Ferrier. New Haven/London, 1989: 306-314.
- *Calligraphy and Islamic culture*. New York, 1984.
- "Calligraphy and sufism in Ottoman Turkey". *The dervish lodge: architecture, art and sufism in Ottoman Turkey*, ed. R. Lifchez. Los Angeles/ Oxford, 1992: 242-252.
- *Islamic calligraphy*. Leiden, 1970.
- "Die Schriftarten und ihr kalligraphischer Gebrauch". *Grundriss der arabischen Philologie*. Band I: *Sprachwissenschaft*, herausgegeben von W. Fischer. Wiesbaden, 1982: 198-209.
- Schimmel, Annemarie, Déroche, François and Thackston, Wheeler M. "Islamic art, III, 2. Calligraphy". *The dictionary of art*, ed. J. Turner. New York, 1996: 16, 273-288.
- Schimmel, Annemarie and Rivolta, Barbara. "Islamic calligraphy". *The Metropolitan Museum of Art bulletin*, (Summer, 1992).
- Selim, George Dimitri. "Arabic calligraphy in the Library of Congress". *Quarterly journal of the Library of Congress*, 36 (1979): 140-177.
- Sharīfī, Muḥammad. "Al-Khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī fī al-ḥaḍārah al-Islāmīyah". *Al-Āthār al-Islāmīyah fī al-waṭan al-ʿArabī*. Tunis, al-Munazzamah al-ʿArabīyah lil-Tarbiyah wa-al-Thaqāfah wa-al-ʿUlūm, Idārat al-Thaqāfah, 1985: 172-193.
- Siddiqui, Atiq R. *The story of Islamic calligraphy*. Delhi, 1990.
- Soucek, Priscilla P. "The arts of calligraphy". *The arts of the book in Central Asia, 14th-16th centuries*, ed. Basil Gray. Paris/London, 1979: 7-33.
- Sourdel-Thomine, J., Alparslan, Ali and Chaghatai, M. Abdullah. "Khaṭṭ". *EI*, new ed., 4: 1113-1128.
- Ülker, Muammer. *Başlangıçtan günümüze Türk hat sanatı* (= *The art of Turkish calligraphy from the beginning up to present*). Ankara, 1987. [Text in Turkish, English and Arabic.]

- Welch, Anthony. *Calligraphy in the arts of the Muslim world*. Austin, 1979.
- Yaqub Ali, A.K.M. "Muslim calligraphy, its beginning and major styles". *Islamic studies*, 23, no.4 (1984): 373-379.
- Yūsufī, Ġolām-Ĥosayn. "Calligraphy". *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, ed. E. Yarshater, 4: 680-718.
- Yusuf, K. M. "Muslim calligraphy under the Mughals". *Indo-Iranica*, 10, no.1 (1957): 9-13.
- Zakariya, Mohamed U. *The calligraphy of Islam. Reflections on the state of the art*. Washington, D.C., 1979.
- "A compendium of Arabic scripts". *The art of the pen: calligraphy of the 14th to 20th centuries*, by Nabil F. Safwat. Oxford, 1996: 228-234.
- *Observations on Islamic calligraphy*. Washington, D.C., 1978.
- "Islamic calligraphy: a technical overview". *Brocade of the pen. The art of Islamic writing*, ed. Carol Garrett Fisher. Michigan, Kresge Art Museum, Michigan State University, 1991: 1-17.
- Zayn al-Dīn, Nājī. *Badā'ī' al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī*, ed. ʿAbd al-Razzāq ʿAbd al-Wāḥid. Baghdad, Wizārat al-ʿIlām, 1972.
- *Muṣawwar al-khaṭṭ al-ʿArabī*. Baghdad, Maktabat al-Nahḍah, Beirut, Dār al-Qalam, 1980/1400.
- Ziauddin, M. *Moslem calligraphy*. Calcutta, 1936.

VII. 3. Ornament and painted decoration

- Baer, E. *Islamic ornament*. Edinburgh, 1998.
- Akimushkin, Oleg F. "The art of illumination". *The arts of the book in Central Asia, 14th-16th centuries*, ed. Basil Gray. Paris/London, 1979: 35-67.
- Arberry, A. J. *The Koran illuminated: a handlist of the Korans in the Chester Beatty Library*. Dublin, 1967.
- Barrucand, Marianne. "Remarques sur le décor des manuscrits religieux hispano-maghrébins du moyen-âge". *Histoire et archéologie de l'Afrique du Nord: actes du Ve colloque international réuni dans le cadre du 115e Congrès national des sociétés savantes (Avignon, 9-13 avril 1990)*. Paris, 1992: 235-248.

- Ettinghausen, R. "Manuscript illumination". *A survey of Persian art from prehistoric times to the present*, ed. A.U. Pope and P. Ackerman. Ashiya/New York, 1977: 5, 1937-1974.
- Déroche, F. and Simpson, Marianna S. "Islamic art, III, 3. Painted decoration". *The dictionary of art*, ed. J. Turner. New York, 1996: 16, 288-293.
- Gacek, Adam. "Unwān: in manuscript production". *EI*, new ed., 10: 870-871.
- Kühnel, E. "Arabesque". *EI*, new ed., 1: 558-561.
- *The arabesque: meaning and transformation of an ornament*. Graz, n.d.
- Monneret de Villard, U. "Codici magrebini decorati della Biblioteca Vaticana". *Annali. Istituto Universitario Orientale di Napoli*, n.s., 3 (1949): 83-91.
- Polosin, Val. V. "'All is numbers'? An unknown numerical component in the design of medieval Arabic manuscripts". *Manuscripta Orientalia*, 5, no.1 (1999): 7-11.
- "Frontispieces on scale canvas in Arabic manuscripts". *Manuscripta Orientalia*, 2, no.1 (1996): 5-19.
- "To the method of describing illuminated Arabic manuscripts". *Manuscripta Orientalia*, 1, no.2 (1995): 16-21.
- Richard, Francis. "La signature discrète d'un doreur persan à la fin du XVe s. Mīr 'Azod al-Mozahheb". *Revue des études islamiques*, 61/62 (1993/94): 88-108.
- Sijelmassi, Mohamed. *Enluminures des manuscrits royaux au Maroc (Bibliothèque al-Hassania)*. Paris, 1987.
- Simpson, Marianna S. "Manuscript illumination, Islamic". *Dictionary of the Middle Ages*, ed. J. R. Strayer. New York, 1982-89: 8, 112-118.
- Tanindi, Zeren. "An illuminated manuscript of the wandering scholar Ibn al-Jazari and the wandering illuminators between Tabriz, Shiraz, Herat, Bursa, Edirne, Istanbul in the 15th century". *Art turc (= Turkish art): 10e Congrès international d'art turc*, ed. F. Déroche et al. Geneva, 1999: 647-655.
- Waley, Muhammad Isa. "Illumination and its functions in Islamic manuscripts". *Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997: 87-112.

VII. 4. Painted illustration

a) Drawing

Brend, Barbara. "Rasm". *EI*, new ed., 8:451-453.

Swietochowski, M.L. "Drawing". *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, ed. E. Yarshater, 7: 537-547.

b) Other studies

Barrucand, Marianne. "Héritage et emprunts culturels dans la miniature islamique du XIIIe au XVe siècle". *Revue des études islamiques*, 55/57, fasc.1 (1987-89): 239-253.

al-Bāshā, Ḥasan. *Funūn al-taṣwīr al-Islāmī fī Miṣr*. Cairo, al-Hay'ah al-Miṣrīyah al-ʿĀmmah lil-Kitāb, 1994.

Berthier, A. "Qalamus, pinceau, ciseaux. Ombres chinoises sur la miniature persane et turque". *Etudes orientales* (= *Dirāsāt Sharqīyah*), 11/12 (1991):116-125.

Blair, Sheila S. "The development of the illuminated book in Iran". *Muqarnas*, 10 (1993): 266-274.

Blair, Sheila S. et al. "Islamic art, III, 4. Painted book illustration". *The dictionary of art*, ed. J. Turner. New York, 1996: 16, 293-351.

Bloom, Jonathan M. "The introduction of paper to the Islamic world and the development of the illustrated manuscript". *Muqarnas*, 17 (2000): 17-23.

"Book painting". *A survey of Persian art from prehistoric times to the present*, ed. A.U. Pope and P. Ackerman. Ashiya/New York, 1977: 5: 1809-1927.

Brandenburg, Dietrich. *Islamic miniature painting in medical manuscripts*. 2nd ed. Basle, 1984.

Canby, Sheila R. *Princes, poets & paladins: Islamic and Indian paintings from the collection of Prince and Princess Sadruddin Aga Khan*. London, 1998.

Farghalī, Abū al-Ḥamd Maḥmūd. "Al-Khaṣā'iṣ al-fannīyah li-madrasat al-taṣwīr al-maḥallīyah fī Miṣr fī al-ʿaṣr al-ʿUthmānī 923-1220/1517-1805". *Al-Majallah al-ta'rīkhīyah al-Miṣrīyah*, 38 (1991-95): 185-231.

Grabar, Oleg. *La peinture persane, une introduction*. Paris, 1999.

Hoffman, Eva R. "The beginnings of the illustrated Arabic book: an

- intersection between art and scholarship". *Muqarnas*, 17 (2000): 37-52.
- "The emergence of illustration in Arabic manuscripts: classical legacy and Islamic transformation". Ph.D. diss., Harvard University, 1982.
- King, David. "Some illustrations in Islamic scientific manuscripts and their secrets". *The book in the Islamic world: the written word and communication in the Middle East*, ed. George N. Atiyeh. Albany, NY, 1995: 149-177.
- Milstein, Rachel. *Miniature painting in Ottoman Baghdad*. Costa Mesa, Ca., 1990.
- Papadopoulo, Alexandre. "Al-Taṣwīr fī al-makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah". Transl. by Nahād Takrālī. *Funūn ʿArabīyah*, 2, no.1 (1982): 12-20.
- Porter, Yves. "Arts du livre et illustrations". *Entre l'Iran et l'Occident: adaptation et assimilation des idées et techniques occidentales en Iran*, ed. Yann Richard. Paris, 1989: 157-169.
- *Painters, paintings, and books: an essay on Indo-Persian technical littérature, 12-19th centuries*. New Delhi, 1994.
- *Peinture et arts du livre: essai sur la littérature technique indo-persane*. Paris, 1992.
- Robinson, B.W. et al. *Islamic painting and the arts of the book*. London, 1976.
- Schmitz, Barbara. "Arabic illustrated manuscripts". *Islamic manuscripts in the New York Public Library*. New York, 1992: 1-50.
- *Islamic and Indian manuscripts and paintings in the Pierpont Morgan Library*. New York, 1997.
- Shams al-Dīn, ʿAlī Maḥmūd. "Fann tazwīq al-makḥṭūṭāt fī al-ʿuṣūr al-Islāmīyah mā bayna al-qarn al-thānī ʿashar wa-al-thāmin ʿashar". *Al-Waḥdah*, 3, nos.33-34 (1987): 169-184.
- Soucek, Priscilla P. "Persian artists in Mughal India: influences and transformations". *Muqarnas*, 4 (1987): 166-181.
- "Taṣwīr". *EI*, new ed., 10: 361-363.
- Wensinck, A.J. and Fahd, T. "Šūra". *EI*, new ed., 9: 889-892.

c) Descriptions of individual works

- Alikberov, A. and Rezvan, E. "ʿAjāʾib al-makhlūqāt by Zakariyā al-Qazwīnī (d.682/1283): 16th-century illuminated manuscript

- from the St. Petersburg Academic Collection". *Manuscripta Orientalia*, 1, no.1 (1995): 56-67.
- Alikberov, A. and Rezvan, E. "Ibn Abī Khazzām and his Kitāb al-makhzūn: the Mamlūk military manual". *Manuscripta Orientalia*, 1, no.1 (1995): 21-28.
- al-ʿArrīqī, Samīr Muqbil. "Al-Madrasah al-Yamanīyah fī fann tazwīq al-makhtūṭāt al-Islāmīyah". *Ālam al-makhtūṭāt wa-al-nawādir*, 2, no.2 (1997-8): 343-364.
- Barrucand, Marianne. "Le Kalīla wa Dimna de la Bibliothèque royale de Rabat: un manuscrit illustré Il-khānide". *Revue des études islamiques*, 54 (1986): 17-48.
- "Un manuscrit arabe illustré de Kalila wa Dimna du XIII^e siècle et sa copie ottomane". *Archéologie islamique*, 2 (1991): 81-95.
- Blair, Sheila S. *A compendium of chronicles. Rashid al-Din's illustrated history of the world*. London/Oxford, 1995 (*The Nasser D. Khalili Collection of Islamic Art*, XXVII).
- Carboni, Stefano. "Constellations, giants and angels from al-Qazwini manuscripts". *Islamic art in the Ashmolean Museum*, ed. James Allen. Oxford, 1995: 83-97 (*Oxford Studies in Islamic Art*, X, pt.1).
- "An illustrated copy of al-Qazwīnī's 'The Wonders of creation'". *Sotheby's art at auction*, 1990: 229-234.
- "The London Qazwīnī: an early 14th-century copy of the 'Ajā'ib al-makhlūqāt". *Islamic art*, 3 (1989): 15-31.
- Contadini, Anna. "The Kitāb manāfi' al-ḥayawān in the Escorial Library". *Islamic art*, 3 (1989): 33-57.
- Cowen, Jill Sanchia. *Kalila wa-Dimna: an animal allegory of the Mongol court*. New York, 1989.
- Grabar, Oleg. *The illustrations of the Maqamat*. Chicago, 1984.
- Grube, Ernst J. "Prolegomena for a corpus publication of illustrated Kalīlah wa Dimnah manuscripts". *Islamic art*, 4 (1991): 301-481.

VII. 5. Lacquer

- Diba, L. "Lacquer work". *The arts of Persia*, ed. R.W. Ferrier. New Haven/London, 1989: 243-253.
- Grube, Ernst J. "A lacquered panel painting from the collection of Lester Wolfe in the Museum of the University of Notre-Dame".

Orientalia Hispanica sive studia F.M. Pareja octogenario dicata. Leiden, 1974: 1, 376-397.

Khalili, Nasser D., Robinson, B.W. and Stanley, Tim. *Lacquer of the Islamic lands.* London/Oxford, 1996 (*The Nasser D. Khalili Collection of Islamic Art, XXII, pt.1-2*).

Lacquer: an international history and illustrated survey. New York, 1984.

Motamed, Said. "Lacquerwork from Iran". *Dreaming of paradise. Islamic art from the collection of the Museum of Ethnology, Rotterdam.* [Rotterdam], 1993: 173-186.

[Robinson, B.W.]. *An exhibition of 50 pieces of Persian, Indian and Turkish lacquer at Bernheimer Fine Arts Ltd. from 10 June to 27 June 1986.* London, 1986.

——— "Islamic art, VIII, 10. Lacquer". *The dictionary of art*, ed. J. Turner. New York, 1996: 16, 533-535.

——— "Lacquer in the University of Oxford". *Islamic art in the Ashmolean Museum*, ed. James Allen. Oxford, 1995: 45-61 (*Oxford Studies in Islamic Art, X, pt.2*).

——— "Persian lacquer in the Bern Historical Museum". *Iran*, 8 (1970): 47-50.

——— "Qajar lacquer". *Muqarnas*, 6 (1989): 131-146.

VII. 6. Papercuts

Schmitz, Barbara. "Cut-paper". *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, ed. E.Yarshater, 6: 475-478.

Thackston, Wheeler M. "Islamic art, III, 6. Papercuts". *The dictionary of art*, ed. J. Turner. New York, 1996: 16, 354-355.

VII. 7. Decorated paper (marbled paper, etc.)

Arndt, R. "Ebru, the cloud art". *Aramco world*, 24, no.3 (1973): 26-32.

Blair, Sheila S. "Color and gold: the decorated papers used in manuscripts in later Islamic times". *Muqarnas*, 17 (2000): 24-36.

Derman, M. Uğur. "Colouring and sizing of paper". *İlgi*, 25 (1977): 32-35.

Doizy, Marie-Ange. *De la dominoterie à la marbrure: histoire des*

techniques traditionnelles de la décoration du papier. Paris, 1996.

Kâgıtçı, M.A. "Ebrû : Turkish marbled papers". *Palette*, 30 (1968): 14-20, pl.

Porter, Yves. "Kāqaze-e abri: notes sur la technique de la marbrure". *Studia Iranica*, 17 (1988): 47-55.

Soucek, P.P. "Afšān". *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, ed. E. Yarshater, 1: 581-582.

Wolfe, Richard J. *Marbled paper: its history, techniques and patterns, with special reference to the relationship of marbling to book-binding in Europe and the Western World*. Philadelphia, 1990.

VII. 8. Bookbinding (for lacquer bindings see also VII. 5.)

a) Bibliography

Gratzl, Emil, Creswell, K.A.C. and Ettinghausen, R. "Bibliographie der islamischen Einbandkunst, 1871 bis 1956". *Ars Orientalis*, 2 (1957): 519-540.

b) Pre-18th century texts

Bosch, Gulnar K. "The staff of the scribes and the implements of the discerning, an excerpt". *Ars Orientalis*, 4 (1961): 1-13. [Translation of the chapter on bookbinding from *Umdat al-kuttāb* of Ibn Bādīs.]

Bosch, G., Carswell, J. and Petherbridge, G. *Islamic bindings and bookmaking. A catalogue of an exhibition*. Chicago, 1982. [Contains essays on Islamic bookmaking, its materials, techniques and structures based principally on the works of Ibn Bādīs and Aḥmad al-Sufyānī.]

Gacek, Adam. "Arabic bookmaking and terminology as portrayed by Bakr al-Ishbīlī in his 'Kitāb al-taysīr fī šinā'at al-tasfīr'". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 5 (1990-91): 106-113.

——— "Ibn Abī Ḥamīdah's didactic poem for bookbinders". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 6 (1991): 41-58. [Persian translation by Mahdī Arjumand, *Mīrās-i Islāmī-i Īrān*, 3 (1375/1996): 857-867.]

- “Instructions on the art of bookbinding attributed to the Rasulid ruler of Yemen al-Malik al-Muẓaffar”. *Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997: 57-63.
- Ibn Bādīs, al-Mu‘izz. “Umdat al-kuttāb wa-‘uddat dhawī al-albāb”, ed. ‘Abd al-Sattār al-Ḥalwajī and ‘Alī ‘Abd al-Muḥsin Zakī. *Majallat Ma’had al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah*, 17 (1971): 153-166. [Another edition by Najīb Māyil Haravī and ‘Iṣām Makkīyah, Mashhad, Majma‘ al-Buḥūth al-Islāmīyah, 1989.]
- al-Ishbīlī, Bakr ibn Ibrāhīm. “Kitāb al-taysīr fī ṣinā‘at al-tasfīr”, ed. ‘Abd Allāh Kannūn. *Revista del Instituto de Estudios Islámicos en Madrid* (= *Ṣaḥīfat Ma’had al-Dirāsāt al-Islāmīyah fī Madrid*), 7-8 (1959-60): 1-42 [Spanish resumé: 197-199.]
- Levey, Martin. *Mediaeval Arabic bookmaking and its relation to early chemistry and pharmacology*. Philadelphia, 1962. [Contains translations of *Umdat al-kuttāb* of Ibn Bādīs and *Ṣinā‘at tasfīr al-kutub wa-ḥall al-dhahab* of Aḥmad al-Sufyānī.]
- al-Malik al-Muẓaffar, Yūsuf ibn ‘Umar. *Al-Mukhtara‘ fī funūn min al-ṣuna‘*. Kuwait, Mu‘assasat al-Shirā‘ al-‘Arabī, 1989: 103-119.
- al-Sufyānī, Aḥmad ibn Muḥammad. *Art de la reliure et de la dorure* (= *Ṣinā‘at tasfīr al-kutub wa-ḥall al-dhahab*). *Texte arabe accompagné d’un index de termes techniques par P. Ricard*. 2nd ed. Paris, 1925. [Reprinted: Cairo, Maktabat al-Thaqāfah al-Dīnīyah, 1999.]

c) Other studies

- Ağa-Oğlu, Mehmet. *Persian bookbindings of the fifteenth century*. Ann Arbor, 1935.
- Aslanapa, Oktay. “The art of bookbinding”. *The arts of the book in Central Asia, 14th-16th centuries*, ed. Basil Gray. Paris/London, 1979: 59-91.
- Binmūsá, al-Sa‘īd. *Ta’rīkh tasfīr al-maṣāḥif al-sharīfah wa-al-kutub al-makḥṭūṭah bi-al-Maghrib min ‘ahd al-Muwaḥḥidīn ilá ‘ahd al-shurafā’ al-‘Alawīyīn*. Rabat, Sharikat Bābil, 1996.
- *Tasfīr wa-tadhīb al-kutub wa-tarmīm al-makḥṭūṭāt*. Rabat, Sharikat Bābil, 1994.
- Bosch, Gulnar K. “Islamic book-bindings: twelfth to seventeenth centuries”. Ph.D. diss., Univ. of Chicago, 1952.
- “Medieval Islamic bookbinding, doublures as a dating factor”. *Proceedings of the Twenty-sixth International Congress of Orientalists*. Poona, 1970: 4, 217-221.

- Bosch, Gulnar K. and Petherbridge, Guy. "Islamic art, III, 7. Binding". *The dictionary of art*, ed. J. Turner. New York, 1966: 16, 355-359.
- Bosch, Gulnar K., Carswell, J. and Petherbridge, G. *Islamic bindings and bookmaking. A catalogue of an exhibition*. Chicago, 1982. [Contains essays on Islamic bookmaking, its materials, techniques and structures based principally on the works of Ibn Bādīs and Aḥmad al-Sufyānī.]
- Chabrov, G.N.K. "K izucheniyu sredneaziatskogo knizhnogo perepleta". *Narody Azii i Afriki*, no.2 (1964): 136-141.
- Déroche, François. "Quelques reliures médiévales de provenance damscaine". *Revue des études islamiques*, 54 (1986): 85-99.
- "Un manuscrit coranique du IIIe/IXe siècle: contribution à l'histoire du livre islamique au Moyen-Age". *Revue des études islamiques*, 60 (1992): 585- 595.
- "Une reliure du Ve/XIe siècle". *Nouvelles des manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, IV/1 (1195): 2-8.
- Dolinskaya, V.G. "Kashmirskie knizhnyie pereplety iz sobraniya Instituta Vostokovedeniya AN UzSSR". *Narody Azii i Afriki*, no.6 (1964): 120-121.
- Dreibholtz, Ursula. "Some aspects of early Islamic bookbindings from the Great Mosque of Sana'a, Yemen". *Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997: 15-63.
- Ettinghausen, R. "The covers of the Morgan Manāfi' manuscript and other early Persian bookbindings". *Studies in art and literature for Belle da Costa Greene*, ed. D. Miner. Princeton, 1954: 459-473.
- "Near Eastern book covers and their influence on European bindings: a report on the exhibition 'History of bookbinding' at the Baltimore Museum of Art, 1957-58". *Ars Orientalis*, 3 (1959): 113-131.
- Fischer, Barbara. "Sewing and endband in the Islamic technique of binding". *Restaurator*, 7, iv (1986): 181-201.
- Gardner, K.B. "Three early Islamic bookbindings". *British Museum quarterly*, 26 (1962): 28-30.
- "A Persian bookbinding of the sixteenth century". *British Museum quarterly*, 29 (1964-65): 10-11.
- Gast, Monika. "A history of endbands based on a study by Karl Jäckel". *The new bookbinder*, 3 (1983): 42-58.
- Gratzl, Emil. "Book covers". *A survey of Persian art from prehistoric*

- times to the present*, ed. A.U. Pope and P. Ackerman. Ashiya/New York, 1977: 5, 1975-1994.
- *Islamische Bucheinbände des 14. bis 19. Jahrhunderts aus den Handschriften der Bayerischen Staatsbibliothek ausgewählt und beschrieben*. Leipzig, 1924.
- Haldane, Duncan. "Aghlifat al-makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah fī Maṭḥaf Fiktūriyā wa-Albirt". *Funūn ʿArabīyah*, 2, no.5 (1982): 60-65.
- "Bookbinding". *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, ed. E. Yarshater, 4: 363-365.
- *Islamic bookbindings in the Victoria and Albert Museum*. London, 1983.
- Ibrāhīm, ʿAbd al-Laṭīf. "Jildat muṣḥaf bi-Dār al-Kutub al-Miṣrīyah". *Majallat Kullīyat al-ʿĀdāb* (Cairo), 20, no.1 (1958): 91-106.
- "Al-Tajlīd fī Miṣr al-Islāmīyah: jildat muṣḥaf bi-Dār al-Kutub al-Miṣrīyah". *Dirāsāt fī al-kutub wa-al-maktabāt al-Islāmīyah*, by ʿAbd al-Laṭīf Ibrāhīm. Cairo, Maṭbaʿ Jāmiʿat al-Qāhirah, 1962: al-baḥṭh al-rābiʿ, 1-32.
- Levey, M., Krek, M. and Haddad, H. "Some notes on the chemical technology in an eleventh century work on bookbinding". *Isis*, 47 (1956): 239-243.
- al-Mahdī, Sihām Muḥammad. "Khaṣāʾiṣ tajlīd al-makḥṭūṭāt fī al-ʿaṣr al-Mamlūkī". *Dirāsāt al-makḥṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah bayna iʿtibārāt al-māddah wa-al-bashar. Aʿmāl al-Muʾtamar al-Thānī li-Muʾassasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, ed. Rashīd al-Inānī. London, 1997: 77-91.
- Marçais, Georges and Poinssot, Louis. *Objets kairouanais, IXe au XIIIe siècles*. Tunis, 1948: 1, 11-61 [la reliure à Kairouan].
- Muḥammad, Maḥmūd. "Al-Tajlīd". *Risālat al-maṭbaʿah*, 3, no.2 (1958): 37-39.
- Petersen, Theodore C. "Early Islamic bookbindings and their Coptic relations". *Ars Orientalis*, 1 (1954): 41-64.
- Pinder-Wilson, Ralph. "Stone-press moulds and leatherworking in Khurasan". *Science, tools & magic*. Part Two: *Mundane worlds*. London/Oxford, 1997: 338-355 (*The Nasser D. Khalili Collection of Islamic Art*, XII).
- Plomp, M. "Traditional bookbindings from Indonesia: materials and decoration". *Bijdragen tot de taal-, land- en volkenkunde*, 149 (1993): 571-592.
- Polosin, Val. V. "Muslim bindings with al-Khālidiānī double borders". *Manuscripta Orientalia*, 2, no. 2 (1996): 9-12.

- Raby, Julian and Tanindi, Zeren. *Turkish bookbinding in the 15th century. The foundation of an Ottoman court style*. London, 1993.
- Rammāḥ, Murād. "Tasāfir Maktabat al-Qayrawān al-ʿatīqah". *Dirāsāt al-makhtūṭāt al-Islāmīyah bayna iʿtibārāt al-māddah wa-al-bashar. Aʿmāl al-Muʿtamar al-Thānī li-Muʿassasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, ed. Rashīd al-ʿInānī. London, 1997: 135-150.
- Regemorter, Berthe van. *Some Oriental bindings in the Chester Beatty Library*. Dublin, 1961.
- Ricard, Prosper. "Reliures marocaines du XIII^e siècle: notes sur des spécimens d'époque et de tradition almohades". *Hespéris*, 17 (1933): 109-127.
- "Sur un type de reliure des temps almohades". *Ars Islamica*, 1 (1934): 74-79.
- Richard, Francis. "Trois reliures persanes laquées à décor animalier de la Bibliothèque nationale". *Revue française d'histoire du livre*, 36 (1982): 445-454.
- Sakisian, A. "La reliure turque du XVe au XIX^e siècle". *La revue de l'art ancien et moderne*, 51 (1927): 277-284; 52 (1927): 141-154, 286-298.
- "La reliure persane au XVe siècle sous les Timourides". *La revue de l'art ancien et moderne*, 66 (1934): 145-168.
- Sarre, F. *Islamic bookbindings*. Transl. by F.D. O'Byrne. London, Kegan Paul, [1923]. [Translation of the German *Islamische Bucheinbände*.]
- Shore, A.F. "Fragment of a decorated leather binding from Egypt". *British Museum quarterly*, 36 (1971): 19-23.
- Tanindi, Zeren. "15th-century Ottoman manuscripts and bindings in Bursa libraries". *Islamic art*, 4 (1991): 143-174.
- Vicat, Michèle. "Arts du livre: la reliure. Evolution de la reliure d'art depuis l'époque qājār jusqu'à nos jours". *Entre l'Iran et l'Occident. Adaptation et assimilation des idées et techniques occidentales en Iran*, ed. Yann Richard. Paris, 1989: 171-183.
- Weisweiler, Max. *Der islamische Bucheinband des Mittelalters*. Wiesbaden, 1962.

VIII. QUR'ANIC MANUSCRIPTS

VIII. 1. Exhibition catalogues

The Holy Quran in manuscript. A selection of fine and rare Holy Quran leaves and manuscripts exhibited by the National Bank of the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia (= Ma'rif al-Muṣḥaf al-Sharīf). Jeddah, 1991/1412.

James, David. *Masterpieces of the Holy Qur'anic manuscripts: selections from the Islamic world (= Badā'i' al-makḥūṭāt al-Qur'ānīyah. Mukhtārāt min al-'ālam al-Islāmī).* Kuwait, National Council for Culture, Arts and Letters, [1987].

——— *Qur'ans and bindings from the Chester Beatty Library: a facsimile exhibition.* London, 1980.

Kuwait National Museum. *Maṣāḥif Ṣan'ā' (19th March – 19th May 1985).* Kuwait, 1985.

Lings, Martin and Safadi, Yasin Hamid. *The Qur'ān: catalogue of an exhibition of Qur'an manuscripts at the British Library 3 April – 15 August 1976.* London, 1976.

[Rebhan, Helga and Riesterer, Winfried]. *Prachtkorane aus tausend Jahren: Handschriften aus dem Bestand der Bayerischen Staatsbibliothek München.* Munich, 1998.

Splendeur et majesté: Corans de la Bibliothèque nationale. Paris, IMA and BN, 1987.

Stoilova, A. and Ivanova, Z. *The Holy Qur'ān through the ages: a catalogue of the exhibition of manuscripts and printed editions preserved in the SS. Cyril and Methodius National Library.* Sofia, 1995.

Tādrus, Fawzī. *Dalīl ma'rif makḥūṭāt al-Qur'ān al-karīm.* Doha, Jāmi'at Qaṭar, 1991.

VIII. 2. Early Qur'ans and fragments

Abbott, Nabia. *The rise of the North Arabic script and its Qur'anic development. With a full description of the Qur'ān manuscripts in the Oriental Institute.* Chicago, 1939.

Aḥmad, 'Abd al-Rāziq Aḥmad. "Nash'at al-khaṭṭ al-'Arabī wa-taṭawwuruh 'alā al-maṣāḥif". *Maṣāḥif Ṣan'ā'.* Kuwait, 1985: 31-40.

- Arberry, A.J. "A Koran in 'Persian' kufic". *Oriental College magazine*, 40/3-4 (1964): 9-16.
- Berque, Jacques. "The Koranic text: from revelation to compilation". *The book in the Islamic world: the written word and communication in the Middle East*, ed. George N. Atiyeh. Albany, NY, 1995: 17-32.
- Bloom, Jonathan M. "The blue Koran: an early Fatimid Kufic manuscript from the Maghrib". *Les manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche. Istanbul/Paris, 1989: 95-99.
- "Al-Ma'mun's blue Koran?". *Revue des études islamiques*, 54 (1986): 59-65.
- "The early Fatimid blue Koran manuscript". *Graeco-Arabica*, 4 (1991): 171-178.
- Bothmer, H.-C. von. "Architekturbilder im Koran: eine Prachthandschrift der Umayyadenzeit aus dem Yemen". *Pantheon*, 45 (1987): 4-20.
- "Frühislamische Koran-Illuminationen: Meisterwerke aus dem Handschriftenfund der Grossen Moschee in Sanaa/Yemen". *Kunst und Antiquitäten*, 1 (1986): 22-33.
- "Masterworks of Islamic book art: Koranic calligraphy and illumination in the manuscripts found in the Great Mosque in Sanaa". *Yemen: 3000 years of art and civilization in Arabia Felix*, ed. Werner Daum. Innsbruck, 1988: 178-181, 185-187.
- "Meisterwerke islamischer Buchkunst: koranische Kalligraphie und Illuminationen im Handschriftenfund aus der Grossen Moschee in Sanaa". *Jemen: 3000 Jahre Kunst und Kultur des glücklichen Arabien*, ed. W. Davies. Innsbruck, 1987: 177-187.
- "Ein seltenes Beispiel für die ornamentale Vorwendung der Schrift in frühen Koranhandschriften: die Fragmentgruppe Inv. Nr.17-15.3 im 'Haus der Handschriften' in Sanaa". *Ars et ecclesia. Festschrift F.J. Ronig*, ed. H.W. Stork, Ch. Gerhard and A. Thomas. Trier, 1989: 45-67.
- Burton, J. "Muṣḥaf". *EI*, new ed., 7: 668-669.
- Colombo, Valentina. "Une hypothèse sur le retour de l'alif dans l'écriture ḥigāzī". *Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997: 151-159.
- Coomaraswamy, A.K. "Leaf of a Koran". *Bulletin of the Museum of Fine Arts, Boston*, 18 (1920): 52-53.

- Croisier, Faïka. "Un manuscrit coranique attribué au calife 'Uṭmān". *L'art de l'écriture arabe: passé et présent*, by Silvia Naef. Geneva, 1992: 68-73.
- Déroche, François. "A propos d'une série de manuscrits coraniques anciens". *Les manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche. Istanbul/Paris, 1989: 101-111.
- . *The Abbasid tradition: Qur'ans of the 8th to 10th centuries AD*. London/ Oxford, 1992. (*The Nasser D.Khalili Collection of Islamic Art, I*).
- . *Catalogue des manuscrits arabes. Les manuscrits du Coran*. Paris, Bibliothèque nationale, 1983-85: vol.1.
- . "Collections de manuscrits anciens du Coran à Istanbul, rapport préliminaire". *Etudes médiévales et patrimoine turc*, ed. J. Sourdel-Thomine. Paris, 1983: 145-165.
- . "Un critère de datation des écritures coraniques anciennes: le kâf final ou isolé". *Damaszener Mitteilungen*, 11 (1999): 87-94, pl. 15-16.
- . "Deux fragments coraniques maghrébins anciens au Musée des arts turc et islamique d'Istanbul". *Revue des études islamiques*, 59 (1991): 229-235.
- . "Les écritures coraniques anciennes, bilan et perspectives". *Revue des études islamiques*, 48 (1980): 207-224.
- . *Les manuscrits du Coran en caractères higâzî: position du problème et éléments préliminaires pour une enquête*. Lesa, Fondazione Ferni Noja Nosedà, 1996 (*Quinterni, I*).
- . "Note sur les fragments coraniques anciens de Katta Langar (Ouzbékistan)". *Cahiers d'Asie centrale*, 7 (1999): 65-73, pl. 7 and 8.
- . "The origins of Islamic calligraphy". *Islamic calligraphy: sacred and secular writings*. Geneva, 1988: 20-29.
- . "A Qur'an from Umayyad times". *Manuscripts of the Middle East* (forthcoming).
- . "The Qur'ān of Amājūr". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 5 (1990): 59-66.
- Déroche, François and Nosedà, S. Noja. *Le manuscrit arabe 328 (a) de la Bibliothèque nationale de France*. Lesa, 1998 (*Sources de la transmission manuscrite du texte coranique. I: Les manuscrits de style ḥigāzî*).
- Dreibholz, Ursula. "Der Fund von Sanaa: frühislamische Hand-

- schriften auf Pergament". *Pergament: Geschichte, Struktur, Restaurierung, Herstellung*, herausgegeben von Peter Rück. Sigmaringen, 1991: 299-313.
- Dutton, Yasin. "Red dots, green dots, yellow dots and blue: some reflections on the vocalization of early Qur'anic manuscripts – Part 1". *Journal of Qur'anic studies*, 1, issue 1 (1999): 115-140.
- Gacek, Adam. "Early Qur'anic fragments". *Fontanus: from the collections of McGill University*, 3 (1990): 45-64.
- Grohmann, Adolf. "The problem of dating early Qur'āns". *Der Islam*, 33 (1958): 213-231.
- Jenkins, Marilyn. "A vocabulary of Umayyad ornament: new foundations for the study of early Qur'an manuscripts". *Maṣāḥif Ṣan'ā'*. Kuwait, 1985: 19-23.
- al-Jubūrī, Kāmil Salmān. *Wathā'iq nādirah min al-khaṭṭ al-'Arabī*. Beirut, Dār wa-Maktabat al-Hilāl, 1998. [Contains reproductions from Qur'āns attributed to the early caliphs and imams.]
- Kanū, 'Abd al-Laṭīf Jāsim. "Ma'a al-Qur'ān: dirāsah fī kitābat al-muṣḥaf al-sharīf, hal al-maṣāḥif al-atharīyah allatī 'uthira 'alayhā hiya maṣāḥif al-Khalīfah 'Uthmān? Maṣāḥif bi-al-Baḥrayn ta'ūd ilā al-qarn al-awwal al-hijrī". *Al-Wathīqah*, 4 (1983): 102-149.
- Karabacek, J. von. *Ein Koranfragment des IX. Jahrhunderts*. Vienna, 1913 (*Zur orientalischen Altertumskunde*, 6).
- Lamare, A. "Le muṣḥaf de la mosquée de Cordoue". *Journal asiatique*, 230 (1938): 551-575.
- Levi della Vida, G. *Frammenti coranici in carattere cufico nella Biblioteca Vaticana*. Vatican City, 1947.
- Loebenstein, Helene. *Koranfragmente auf Pergament aus der Papyrussammlung der Österreichischen Nationalbibliothek*. Wien, 1982. 2 vols.
- McAllister, H.E. "Acquisitions of leaves from early Korans". *Bulletin of the Metropolitan Museum of Art*, 36 (1941): 165-168.
- . "Leaves from three early Korans". *Bulletin of the Metropolitan Museum of Art*, 32 (1937): 264-265.
- Milo, Thomas. "The Koran fragments from the Lodewijk Houthakker collection". *MELA notes*, no.62 (1995): 15-34.
- Mingana, A. and Lewis, A. *Leaves from three ancient Qur'āns possibly pre-'Othmanic, with a list of their variants*. Cambridge, 1914.
- Munīf, 'Abd Allāh ibn Muḥammad ibn 'Abd Allāh. *Dirāsah fannīyah li-muṣḥaf mubakkir ya'ūd lil-qarn al-thālith al-hijrī / al-tāsi' al-*

- milādī maktūb bi-khaṭṭ al-Jalīl aw al-Jalīl al-Shāmī, mahfūz fī Maktabat al-Malik Fahd al-Waṭanīyah*. Riyad, 1998.
- al-Naqshabandī, Nāṣir. "Al-Maṣāḥif al-karīma fī ṣadr al-Islām". *Sumer*, 12 (1956): 33-37.
- Ory, Solange. "Un nouveau type de muṣḥaf, inventaire de Corans en rouleau de provenance damasquine conservés à Istanbul". *Revue des études islamique*, 33 (1965): 87-149.
- Puin, Gerd-R. "Methods of research on Qur'anic manuscripts, a few ideas". *Maṣāḥif Ṣan'ā'*. Kuwait, 1985: 9-17.
- . "Observations on early Qur'an manuscripts in San'ā'". *The Qur'an as text*, ed. Stefan Wild. Leiden, 1996: 107-111.
- Rezvan, Efim A. "The first Qur'ans". *Pages of perfection. Islamic paintings and calligraphy from the Russian Academy of Sciences, St. Petersburg*. Lugano/Milan, 1995: 108-117.
- . "Yet another 'Uthmānic Qur'ān' (On the history of Manuscript E20 from the St. Petersburg Branch of the Institute of Oriental Studies)". *Manuscripta Orientalia*, 6, no.1 (2000): 49-68.
- Rezvan, Efim A. and Kondybaev, N.S. "The ENTRAP software: tests results". *Manuscripta Orientalia*, 5, no.2 (1999): 58-64. [Computer analysis of an early fragment of the Qur'an.]
- Saint Laurent, Beatrice. "The identification of a magnificent Koran manuscript". *Les manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche. Istanbul/Paris, 1989: 115-124.
- Shānehchī Kāzīm Mudīr. "Some old manuscripts of the Holy Qur'ān". Transl. by Mujāhid Ḥusayn. *Al-Tawḥīd*, 8, no.4 (May-July 1991): 15-34.
- Tabbaa, Yasser. "The transformation of Arabic writing: Part 1, Qur'anic calligraphy". *Ars Orientalis*, 21 (1991): 119-148.
- . "The transformation of Arabic writing. Part 2: the public text". *Ars Orientalis*, 24 (1994): 119-147.
- Whelan, Estelle. "Forgotten witness: evidence for the early codification of the Qur'ān". *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, 118, no.1 (1998): 1-14.
- . "Writing the word of God: some early Qur'an manuscripts and their milieu, pt.1". *Ars Orientalis*, 20 (1990): 113-147.

VIII. 3. Later Qur'ans

- Abbott, Nabia. "Arabic-Persian Koran of the late 15th or early 16th century". *Ars Islamica*, 6 (1939): 91-94.

- “An Arabic-Persian wooden Kur’anic manuscript from the Royal Library of Shah Husain Safawi I, 1105-35 H.”. *Ars Islamica*, 5 (1938): 89-94.
- “Maghribi Koran manuscripts of the seventeenth and the eighteenth centuries (in possession of Dr. and Mrs. Paul Hudson, Ohio State University)”. *American Journal of Semitic languages and literatures*, 55 (1938): 61-65.
- Arberry, A. J. *The Koran illuminated: a handlist of the Korans in the Chester Beatty Library*. Dublin, 1967.
- ‘Aṭīyah, Jūrj. “Al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah wa-al-Islāmīyah fī Maktabat al-Kūnghris al-Amrīkīyah: Muṣḥaf al-Shaykh Ḥamd Allāh al-Amāsī”. *Al-Makḥṭūṭ al-‘Arabī wa-‘ilm al-makḥṭūṭāt* (= *Le manuscrit arabe et la codicologie*). Rabat, 1994: 45-56.
- Bayani, Manijeh, Contadini, Anna and Stanley, Tim. *The decorated word: Qur’ans of the 17th to 19th centuries*. London/Oxford, 1999. (*The Nasser D. Khalili Collection of Islamic Art, IV, pt.1*).
- Bivar, A.D.H. “A dated Kuran from Bornu”. *Nigeria magazine*, (1960): 199-205.
- Brockett, A.A. “Aspects of the physical transmission of the Qur’ān in the 19th-century Sudan: script, decoration, binding and paper”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 2 (1987): 45-67.
- “St. Andrews University Oriental manuscript no.16: fragment of a Qur’ān on paper in Maghribi script, probably Spanish...”. *Codices Manuscripti*, 10 (1984): 41-51.
- Dandel, E. “A propos d’un Coran almohade copié en soixante volumes”. *Numismatique, langues, écritures et arts du livre, spécificité des arts figurés: actes du VIIe Colloque international sur l’histoire et archéologie de l’Afrique du nord, réunis dans le cadre du 121e Congrès des sociétés historiques et scientifiques, Nice, 21 au 31 octobre 1996*, ed. Serge Lancel. Paris, 1999: 249-265.
- Derman, Uğur. “Une sourate coranique calligraphiée au XVIe s. en caractères coufiques lacqués”. *Les manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche. Istanbul/ Paris, 1989: 113.
- Déroche, François. *Catalogue des manuscrits arabes. Les manuscrits du Coran*. Paris, Bibliothèque nationale, 1983-85: vol.2.
- “Coran, couleur et calligraphie”. *I primi sessanta anni di scuola: studi dedicati dagli amici a S. Noja Nosseda nello 65° compleanno, 7 Iuglio 1996*. Lesa (forthcoming).

- “La fonction et l’histoire des Corans : quelques observations”. *Revue de l’histoire des religions* (forthcoming).
- “Les manuscrits du Coran”. *Arts et métiers du livre*, no.217 (1999-2000): 52-54.
- Déroche, François and Gladiss, Almut von. *Buchkunst zur Ehre Allāhs: der Prachtkoran im Museum für Islamische Kunst*. Berlin, 1999.
- Digby, S. “A Qur’an from the East African coast”. *Art and archeology research papers*, 7 (1975): 49-55.
- Ettinghausen, R. “A signed and dated Seljuq Qur’an”. *Bulletin of the American Institute of Persian Art and Archeology*, 4 (1935): 92-102. [Reprinted in his *Islamic art and archeology: collected papers*, ed. M. Rosen-Ayalon. Berlin, 1984: 510-20.]
- Gacek, Adam. “A collection of Qur’anic codices”. *Fontanus: from the collections of McGill University*, 4 (1991): 35-53.
- Gottheil, Richard. “An illustrated copy of the Koran”. *Revue des études islamiques*, 5 (1931): 21-24, 4 pl.
- Gray, Basil. “The monumental Qur’ans of the Il-khanid and Mamluk ateliers of the first quarter of the fourteenth century (eighth century H.)”. *Rivista degli studi orientali*, 59, fasc.1-4 (1985): 135-146.
- Ḥabash al-Bayātī, Ḥasan Qāsim. *Riḥlat al-Muṣḥaf al-Sharīf min al-jarīd ilā al-tajlīd*. Beirut, Dār al-Qalam, 1993.
- İhsanoğlu, Ekmeleddin. “A study on the manuscript translations of the Holy Qur’ān”. *The significance of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Inaugural Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation (30th November – 1st December 1991)*, ed. John Cooper. London, 1992: 79-105.
- Iqbal, M. “Some specimens of the calligraphy of the Qur’an from the Library of Meshed”. *Woolner commemorative volume*. Lahore, 1940: 109-112.
- James, David. *After Timur: Qur’ans of the 15th and 16th centuries A.D.* London/ Oxford, 1992. (*The Nasser D. Khalili Collection of Islamic Art, III*).
- *The master scribes: Qur’ans of the 11th to 14th centuries A.D.* London/ Oxford, 1992. (*The Nasser D. Khalili Collection of Islamic Art, II*).
- *Qur’ans of the Mamluks*. London, 1988.
- “Some observations on the calligrapher and illuminators of the Koran of Rukn al-Dīn Baybars al-Jāshnagīr”. *Muqarnas*, 2 (1984): 147-157.

- Janér, Florencio. "El-Koran: código árabe llamado de Muley Cidan, rey de Marruecos, conservado en la Biblioteca del Escorial". *Museo Español de Antigüedades*, 3 (1874): 409-431.
- Lévi-Provençal, E. "Note sur un Qor'ān royal du XIV^e siècle". *Hespéris*, 1 (1921): 83-86.
- Lings, Martin. "Andalusian Qorans". *British Museum quarterly*, 24 (1961): 94-96, pl. 29-32.
- . *The Qur'anic art of calligraphy and illumination*. London, 1976.
- al-Manūnī, Muḥammad. "Markaz al-Muṣḥaf al-sharīf bi-al-Maghrib". *Da'wat al-ḥaqq*, 11, no.3 (1968): 71-77.
- . "Ta'rīkh al-Muṣḥaf al-sharīf bi-al-Maghrib". *Majallat Ma'had al-Makhṭūṭāt al-'Arabīyah*, 15, no.1 (1969): 3-47.
- Marzūq, Muḥammad 'Abd al-'Azīz. "Al-Muṣḥaf al-sharīf: dirāsah fannīyah". *Majallat al-Majma' al-Ilmī al-'Irāqī*, 20 (1970): 88-137.
- . *Al-Muṣḥaf al-sharīf: dirāsah ta'rīkhīyah wa-fannīyah*. Cairo, al-Hay'ah al-'Āmmah lil-Kitāb, 1975.
- Mingana, A. "Notes upon some of the Kuranic manuscripts in the John Rylands Library". *Bulletin of the John Rylands University Library of Manchester*, 2 (1914-15): 240-250.
- Monneret de Villard, Ugo. "Codici magrebini decorati della Biblioteca Vaticana". *Annali. Istituto Universitario Orientale di Napoli*, n.s., 3 (1949): 83-91.
- Muḥriz, Jamāl Muḥammad. "Muṣḥaf mudhahhab min al-'aṣr al-Gharnāṭī". *Revista del Instituto Egipcio de Estudios Islámicos en Madrid*, 3 (1955): 141-147.
- Ory, Solange. "Du Coran récité au Coran calligraphié". *Arabica*, 47, fasc. 3-4 (2000): 366-380.
- Rice, D.S. *The unique Ibn al-Bawwāb manuscript in the Chester Beatty Library, Dublin*. Dublin, 1955.
- Rosen-Ayalon, Myriam. "Some comments on a Maghribī Qur'ān". *Jerusalem studies in Arabic and Islam*, 19 (1995): 73-80.
- Shāfī'ī, Farīd. "Zakhārīf muṣḥaf bi-Dār al-Kutub al-Miṣrīyah". *Majallat Kullīyat al-Ādāb* (Cairo), 17, no.1 (1955): 43-48.
- Sharīfī, Muḥammad ibn Sa'īd. *Khuṭūṭ al-maṣāḥif 'inda al-mashāriqah wa-al-maghāribah min al-qarn al-rābi' ilā al-'āshir al-hijrī*. Algiers, al-Sharikah al-Waṭanīyah, 1982.
- Sims, Eleanor. "An illuminated manuscript copied by Shaykh Hamdullah in the Library of Congress in Washington, DC". 9th

- International Congress of Turkish Art, Istanbul, 1991*. Ankara, 1995: 3, 203-212.
- [Stanley, Tim]. *The Qur'an and calligraphy. A selection of fine manuscript material*. London, [1995]. [Bernard Quaritch, catalogue 1213.]
- Witkam, Jan Just. "Manuscripts & manuscripts: [6] Qur'an fragments from Ḍawrān (Yemen)". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 4 (1989): 155-174.
- Wright, E. "An Indian Qur'an and its 14th century model". *Oriental art*, (Winter 1996/97): 8-12.
- Zahradeen, Muhammad Sani. "Islamic calligraphy in West Africa, the Qur'ans of Northern Nigeria". *Dirasat Islamiyyah* (Kano), (1979/80 – 1980/81): 1-18.

VIII. 4. Facsimile editions

- Corán de Muley Zaydán: historia de un manuscrito árabe de la Real Biblioteca de El Escorial*, estudio crítico de José Manuel Ruiz Asencio. Madrid, 1996.
- Déroche, François and Nosedá, S. Noja. *Le manuscrit arabe 328 (a) de la Bibliothèque nationale de France*. Lesa, 1998. (*Sources de la transmission manuscrite du texte coranique. I: Les manuscrits de style ḥiǧāzī*).
- The Holy Qur'an manuscripted in 927/16th century by Muhammed bin Na'im al-Tab'i 'Ruzbihan'*. Dublin, Chester Beatty Library, 1991.
- The Holy Qur'an manuscripted in 953/1546 by Ahmed Karahisari for Sultan Süleyman the Magnificent*. Rome, Fideurart Edizioni d'arte, [198?].
- [*Kur'an-i Karim*]. Ankara, Kültür Bakanlığı, 1991. [Attributed to Ḥamd Allāh al-Amāsī.]
- [*Muṣḥaf sharīf*]. Tunis, 1983. [Calligraphed by al-Shaykh al-Ḥājj Zuhayr Bāsh Mamlūk, d.1305/1885.]
- The unique Ibn al-Bawwab manuscript: complete facsimile edition of the earliest surviving naskhi Qur'an*, Chester Beatty Library, Dublin, Manuscript K.16. Graz: Akademische Druck-u. Verlagsanstalt, 1983. 2 vols. [Text of commentary by D.S. Rice, in English and Arabic.]

IX. TEXTUAL CRITICISM AND EDITING

IX. 1. General studies

- ‘Abd al-Tawwāb, Ramaḍān. *Manāhij taḥqīq al-turāth bayna al-quḍamā’ wa-al-muḥdathīn*. Cairo, Maktabat Khānjī, 1985.
- “Min tajribatī fī taḥqīq nisbat al-kitāb wa-tawthīq ‘unwānih”. *Majallat Maḥad al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah*, 34 (1990): 7-24.
- Akimushkin, O.F. “Textological studies and the ‘critical text’ problem”. *Manuscripta Orientalia*, 1, no.2 (1995): 22-28.
- ‘Alī, ‘Abd al-Wahhāb Muḥammad. “Amālī Muṣṭafā Jawād fī fann taḥqīq al-nuṣūṣ”. *Al-Mawrid*, 6, no.1 (1977): 117-138.
- al-Anṣārī, Muḥammad Riḍā. *Fawā'id wa-hafawāt taḥqīqīyah*. Qum, Maktabat Āyat Allāh al-‘Uzmā al-Mar‘ashī al-Najafī al-‘Āmmah, 1214 A.H.
- al-‘Awnī, Hātim ibn ‘Ārif. *Al-‘Unwān al-ṣaḥīḥ lil-kitāb*. Mecca, Dār ‘Ālam al-Fawā'id, 1414 A.H.
- al-‘Azzām, Muḥammad ibn ‘Abd Allāh. “Namaṭ min al-taḥqīq”. *Ālam al-kutub*, 26, no.1 (1995): 3-18.
- Ben Murad, Ibrahim. “Le terme scientifique dans le patrimoine arabe manuscrit: problématiques du passé et perspectives de l’avenir”. *Editing Islamic manuscripts on science. Proceedings of the Fourth Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation, 29th-30th November 1997*, ed. Yusuf Ibish. London, 1420/ 1999: 193-222.
- Binbīn, Aḥmad Shawqī. “Ilm al-makḥṭūṭāt wa-al-taḥqīq al-‘ilmī”. *Majallat Majma’ al-Lughah al-‘Arabīyah bi-Dimashq*, 68, no.2 (1993): 236-250. [See also the same article in *al-Makḥṭūṭ al-‘Arabī wa-ilm al-makḥṭūṭāt* (= *Le manuscrit arabe et la codicologie*). Rabat, 1994: 33-43.]
- Blachère, Régis and Sauvaget, J. *Règles pour éditions et traductions de textes arabes*. Paris, 1953. [Translated into Arabic by Maḥmūd al-Muqḍād under the title: *Qawā'id taḥqīq al-makḥṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah wa-tarjamatuhā: wajhat naẓar al-isti'rāb al-Faransī*. Damascus, Dār al-Fikr, 1988.]
- Carter, M.G. “Arabic literature”. *Scholarly editing: a guide to research*, ed. D.C. Greetham. New York, 1995: 546-574.
- Dallal, Ahmad. “Between reproduction and recovery: notes on editing classical Arabic manuscripts on astronomy”. *Editing Islamic manuscripts on science. Proceedings of the Fourth Conference*

- of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation, 29th-30th November 1997*, ed. Yusuf Ibish. London, 1420/1999: 59-73.
- al-Dannā, Muḥammad Khalīfah. *Qirāʿat al-nuṣūṣ al-turāthīyah, ishkalīyāt wa-ḍawābiṭ*. Tripoli (Libya), Manshūrāt Kullīyat al-Daʿwah al-Islāmīyah wa-Lajnat al-Hifāẓ 'alā al-Turāth al-Islāmī, 1994.
- Dayyāb, 'Abd al-Majīd. *Tahqīq al-turāth al-'Arabī*. Cairo, 1983.
- al-Ḥafyān, Fayṣal (ed.). *Al-Turāth al-'ilmī al-'Arabī: manāhij taḥqīqih wa-ishkalāt nashrih*. Cairo, Ma'had al-Makhtūṭāt al-'Arabīyah, 2000.
- al-Ḥalwajī, 'Abd al-Sattār. "Turāthunā al-makhtūṭ: dirāsah fī ta'rīkh al-nash'ah wa-al-taṭawwur". *Al-Dārah*, 4 (1975): 169-173.
- Ḥallāq, Ḥassān. *Muqaddimah fī manāhij al-baḥth al-ta'rīkhī wa-al-ūlūm al-musā'idah wa-tahqīq al-makhtūṭāt bayna al-naẓariyah wa-al-taṭbīq*. Beirut, Dār al-Nahḍah al-'Arabīyah, 1986.
- al-Jubūrī, Yaḥyá Wahīd. *Manhaj al-baḥth wa-tahqīq al-nuṣūṣ* (= *Research methods and transcript analysis*). Beirut, Dār al-Gharb al-Islāmī, 1993.
- Karbāj, Jūrj Mīkhā'il. "Al-Turāth al-'Arabī: al-makhtūṭ bayna māḍīh wa-ḥāḍirih". *Al-Turāth al-'Arabī*, 5 (1985): 124-131.
- al-Kharrāt, Aḥmad Muḥammad. *Muḥāḍarat fī tahqīq al-nuṣūṣ*. Jedda, Dār al-Manārah, 1988.
- Maas, Paul. "Naqd al-naṣṣ". *Al-Naqd al-ta'rīkhī*. Transl. by 'Abd al-Raḥmān Badawī. Cairo, Dār al-Nahḍah, 1963: 253-278. [Translation of his *Textkritik*, Leipzig, 1950.]
- Madelung, Wilferd F. "Manuscripts in historical research and text edition". *The significance of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Inaugural Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation (30th November – 1st December 1991)*, ed. John Cooper. London, 1992: 1-6.
- . "Al-Makhtūṭāt fī al-abḥāth al-ta'rīkhīyah". *Aḥammīyat al-makhtūṭāt al-Islāmīyah. A'māl al-Mu'tamar al-Ifitāḥī li-Mu'asasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*. London, 1992: 43-49.
- al-Manūnī, Muḥammad. "Qawā'id taḥqīq al-nuṣūṣ wa-ikhrājihā: naṣṣ mawḍūʿī". *Al-Maṣādir al-'Arabīyah li-ta'rīkh al-Maghrib: al-fatrah al-mu'āṣirah 1790-1930*, by Muḥammad al-Manūnī. Rabat, 1989: 2, 335-348.
- al-Mawālīdī, Muṣṭafá. "Ṭarīqah jadīdah fī ta'sīl al-nusakh al-khaṭṭīyah (asās qawā'id namūdhan)". *Majallat Ma'had al-Makhtūṭāt al-'Arabīyah*, 36 (1992): 169-201.

- Molina, Luis. "Consideraciones sobre la edición de manuscritos árabes". *Al-Qanṭara, revista de estudios árabes*, 19, fasc.2 (1998): 393-416.
- Mu'assasat Āl al-Bayt li-Iḥyā' al-Turāth. *Manhaj taḥqīq al-makḥṭūṭāt*. Qum, 1408 A.H.
- Mahdi, Muhsin. "From the manuscript age to the age of printed books". *The book in the Islamic world: the written word and communication in the Middle East*, ed. George N. Atiyeh. Albany, N.Y., 1995: 1-15.
- al-Munajjid, Ṣalāḥ al-Dīn. "Régles pour l'édition des textes arabes". *Mélanges. Institut dominicain d'études orientales du Caire (MIDEO)*, 3 (1956): 359-374.
- Nājī, Hilāl. "Min qawā'id al-taḥqīq al-'ilmī: tawthīq 'unwān al-makḥṭūṭ wa-mu'allifih". *Al-Mawrid*, 21, no.1 (1993): 41-49.
- . "Muwaḍḍiḥat al-ṭarīq ilā ṣuwā manāḥij al-taḥqīq". *Al-Mawrid*, 15, no.3 (1986): 169-182.
- Rashed, Roshdi. "Conceptual tradition and textual tradition: Arabic manuscripts on science". *Editing Islamic manuscripts on science. Proceedings of the Fourth Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation, 29th-30th November 1997*, ed. Yusuf Ibish. London, 1420/1999: 15-57.
- al-Rifā'i, Usāmah Ṭāhā. "Kayfa tuḥaqqiq naṣṣan makḥṭūṭan?". *Ḥawlīyat Kullīyat al-Ādāb wa-al-'Ulūm al-Insānīyah* (al-Dār al-Bayḍā'), 5 (1988): 21-48.
- Sa'd, Fahmī et al. *Taḥqīq al-makḥṭūṭāt bayna al-naẓariyah wa-al-taṭbīq*. Beirut, Ālam al-Kutub, 1993.
- Sa'idān, Aḥmad Salīm. "Ma'a taḥqīq kutub al-turāth". *Majallat Majma' al-Lughah al-'Arabīyah al-Urdunī*, 13-14 (1981): 193-205.
- . "Al-Turāth al-'Arabī li-madhā nuḥaqqiquh wa-kayfa?". *Majallat Majma' al-Lughah al-'Arabīyah al-Urdunī*, 23-24 (1984): 7-19.
- al-Samarrā'i, Ibrāhīm. "Ma'a taḥqīq kutub al-turāth". *Majallat Majma' al-Lughah al-'Arabīyah al-Urdunī*, 11-12 (1981): 92-115.
- Samsó, Julio. "Andalusī and Maghribī astronomical sources: what has been done and what remains to be done". *Editing Islamic manuscripts on science. Proceedings of the Fourth Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation, 29th-30th November 1997*, ed. Yusuf Ibish. London, 1420/1999: 75-104.

- Sarḥān, Muḥyī Hilāl. *Taḥqīq makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿulūm al-sharʿīyah*. Baghdad, Maṭbaʿat al-Irshād, 1984.
- Shabbūh, Ibrāhīm (ed.). *Taḥqīq makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿulūm fī al-turāth al-Islāmī: abḥāth al-Muʿtamar al-Rābiʿ li-Muʿassasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī*, 29-30 Nov. 1997. London, 1999.
- Shāfiʿī, Ḥasan. “Baʿḍ ṣuʿūbāt taḥqīq al-makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah”. *Ḥawliyyāt Kulliyat Dār al-ʿUlūm* (Cairo), 10 (1980): 231-258.
- Shākīr, Aḥmad. *Taṣḥīḥ al-kutub wa-ṣunʿ al-fahāris al-muʿjamah wa-kayfiyyat ḍabṭ al-kitāb wa-sabq al-Muslimīn wa-al-Ifranji fī dhālik*. Beirut, Dār al-Jīl, 1995.
- al-Ṭanāḥī, Maḥmūd Muḥammad. *Madkhal ilā taʾrīkh nashr al-turāth al-ʿArabī maʿa muḥāḍarah ʿan taṣḥīḥ wa-taḥrīf*. Cairo, Maktabat Khānjī, 1984.
- al-Tūnjī, Muḥammad. “Al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah bayna yaday al-taḥqīq”. *Al-Turāth al-ʿArabī*, 3 (1982): 197-208.
- al-ʿUmarī, Akram Ḍiyāʾ. *Dirāsāt taʾrīkhīyah: maʿa taʾlīqah fī manhaj al-baḥth wa-taḥqīq al-makḥṭūṭāt*. Medina, al-Jāmiʿah al-Islāmīyah, 1983.
- . *Manāḥij al-baḥth wa-taḥqīq al-turāth*. Medina, Maktabat al-ʿUlūm wa-al-Hikam, 1995.
- ʿUsaylān, ʿAbd Allāh ibn ʿAbd al-Raḥīm. *Taḥqīq al-makḥṭūṭāt bayna al-wāqīʿ wa-al-naḥj al-amthal*. Riyadh, Maktabat al-Malik Fahd al-Waṭaniyah, 1415/1994.
- Witkam, Jan Just. “Establishing the stemma, fact or fiction?”. *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 3 (1988): 88-101.
- Yūsuf, Irshīd. *Al-Kitāb al-Islāmī al-makḥṭūṭ: tadwīnan wa-taḥqīqan*. Amman, Maṭābiʿ al-Muʿassasah al-Ṣuḥufīyah al-Urdūnīyah, 1993 (?).

IX. 2. Some specific cases

- Bellosta, Hélène. “The specific case of geometrical manuscripts using the example of manuscript B.N. 2457 (Paris)”. *Editing Islamic manuscripts on science. Proceedings of the Fourth Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation, 29th-30th November 1997*, ed. Yusuf Ibish. London, 1420/1999: 181-191.
- Crozet, Pascal. “A propos des figures dans les manuscrits arabes de géométrie: l'exemple de Siğzī”. *Editing Islamic manuscripts on science. Proceedings of the Fourth Conference of al-Furqān*

- Islamic Heritage Foundation*, 29th-30th November 1997, ed. Yusuf Ibish. London, 1420/1999: 131-163.
- Gutas, Dimitri. "Editing Arabic philosophical texts". *Orientalistische Literaturzeitung*, 75 (1980): 214-222.
- Hartmann, Angelika. "Sur l'édition d'un texte arabe médiéval: le 'Rašf an-našā'iḥ al-īmānīya wa-kašf al-faḍā'iḥ al-yūnānīya' de 'Umar as-Suhrawardī, composé à Bagdād en 621/1224". *Der Islam*, 62 (1985): 71-97.
- Humbert, Geneviève. "Remarques sur les éditions du 'Kitāb' de Sībawayhi et leur base manuscrite". *Studies in the history of Arabic grammar II*, ed. K. Versteegh and M. G. Carter. Amsterdam/Philadelphia, 1990: 179-194.
- Mahdi, Muhsin. "Al-Farabi's 'Imperfect state'". *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, 110, no.4 (1990): 691-726.
- Masoumi Hamedani, Hossein. "Remarks on the manuscript tradition of some optical works of Ibn al-Haytham". *Editing Islamic manuscripts on science. Proceedings of the Fourth Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation*, 29th-30th November 1997, ed. Yusuf Ibish. London, 1420/1999: 165-180.
- Morelon, Régis. "Le corpus des manuscrits arabes des oeuvres d'astronomie de Thābit b. Qurra". *Editing Islamic manuscripts on science. Proceedings of the Fourth Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation*, 29th-30th November 1997, ed. Yusuf Ibish. London, 1420/1999: 115-130.
- Pingree, David. "A preliminary assessment of the problems of editing the Zīj al-Sanjarī of al-Khāzinī". *Editing Islamic manuscripts on science. Proceedings of the Fourth Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation*, 29th-30th November 1997, ed. Yusuf Ibish. London, 1420/1999: 105-113.
- Raven, Wim. "The manuscripts and editions of Ibn Dāwūd's 'Kitāb al-zahra'". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 4 (1989): 133-137.
- Rezvan, Efim A. "The Qur'ān: between textus receptus and critical edition". *Les problèmes posés par l'édition critique des textes anciens et médiévaux*, ed. J. Hamesse. Louvain-La-Neuve, 1992: 291-310.
- Scattolin, Giuseppe. "The oldest text of Ibn Fāriḍ's Dīwān? A manuscript of Yusufāğa Kütüphanesi of Konya". *Quaderni di studi arabi*, 16 (1998): 143-163.
- al-Wafā'i, Muḥammad Zāfir. "The editing and publication of the

Islamic medicine series: 'Ilm al-kīhālāh". *Editing Islamic manuscripts on science. Proceedings of the Fourth Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation, 29th-30th November 1997*, ed. Yusuf Ibish. London, 1420/1999: 223-241.

X. CATALOGUING

‘Abd al-Hādī, Fathī. “Taṣnīf al-makḥṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah”. *Fann fahrasat al-makḥṭūṭāt: madkhal wa-qaḍāyā*, ed. Fayṣal al-Ḥafyān. Cairo, Ma’had al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah, 1999: 155-173.

Abū Haybah, ‘Izzat Yāsīn. *Al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah: fahārisuhā wa-fahrasatuhā fī Jumhurīyat Miṣr al-‘Arabīyah*. Cairo, al-Hay’ah al-Miṣrīyah al-‘Āmmah lil-Kitāb, 1989.

Binbīn, Aḥmad Shawqī. “Alāqat al-fahrasah bi-‘ilm al-makḥṭūṭāt”. *Fann fahrasat al-makḥṭūṭāt: madkhal wa-qaḍāyā*, ed. Fayṣal al-Ḥafyān. Cairo, Ma’had al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah, 1999: 33-44.

——— “Fahrasat al-makḥṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah fī al-Maghrib”. *Al-Lisān al-‘Arabī*, 45 (1998): 165-192.

——— “Taqnīyāt fahrasat al-makḥṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah”. *Al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah fī al-Gharb al-Islāmī: waḍ‘īyat al-majmū‘āt wa-āfāq al-baḥṭh* (= *Manuscripts arabes en occident musulman*). Casablanca, Mu’assasat al-Malik ‘Abd al-‘Azīz, 1990: 227-237.

Gacek, Adam. “Some remarks on the cataloguing of Arabic manuscripts”. *British Society for Middle Eastern Studies bulletin*, 10 (1983): 173-179.

Guesdon, M.-G. “The Bibliothèque nationale de France and the UNESCO’s MEDLIB project: a seminar on Arabic manuscripts computerised cataloguing”. *Manuscripta Orientalia*, 5, no.3 (1999): 59-61.

al-Ḥafyān, Fayṣal (ed.). *Al-Tajārib al-‘Arabīyah fī fahrasat al-makḥṭūṭāt*. Cairo, Ma’had al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah, 1998.

al-Ḥalwajī, ‘Abd al-Sattār. “Fann al-fahrasah: al-muṣṭalaḥ wa-al-ḥudūd”. *Fann fahrasat al-makḥṭūṭāt: madkhal wa-qaḍāyā*, ed. Fayṣal al-Ḥafyān. Cairo, Ma’had al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah, 1999: 19-31.

——— “Fahāris al-makḥṭūṭāt”. *Al-Ḥalqah al-dirāsīyah lil-khadamāt al-maktabīyah wa-al-wirāqah* (...). Damascus, Maṭba‘at Jāmi‘at Dimashq, 1392/1972: 284-300.

Jamāl, ‘Ādil Sulaymān. “Juhūd al-mustashriqīn wa-manāhijuhum fī

- fahrasat al-makḥṭūṭāt". *Fann fahrasat al-makḥṭūṭāt: madkhal wa-qaḍāyā*, ed. Fayṣal al-Ḥafyān. Cairo, Ma'had al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah, 1999: 235-302.
- al-Mashūkhī, ʿĀbid Sulaymān. *Fahrasat al-makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah. al-Zarqāʾ* (Jordan), Maktabat al-Manār, 1989.
- al-Samarrāʾī, Qāsim. "Mushkilāt fahrasat al-makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah". *Al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah fī al-Gharb al-Islāmī: waḍʿiyat al-majmūʿāt wa-āfāq al-baḥṭh* (= *Manuscripts arabes en occident musulman*). Casablanca, Mu'assasat al-Malik ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz, 1990: 215-226.
- Sayyid, Ayman Fuʾād. "Al-Waṣf al-māddī lil-makḥṭūṭāt". *Fann fahrasat al-makḥṭūṭāt: madkhal wa-qaḍāyā*, ed. Fayṣal al-Ḥafyān. Cairo, Ma'had al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah, 1999: 55-64.
- Sellheim, Rudolf. "The cataloguing of Arabic manuscripts as a literary problem". *Oriens*, 23-24 (1974): 306-311.
- al-Shanī, ʾIṣām Muḥammad. "Awwal al-makḥṭūṭah wa-ākhiruhā". *Fann fahrasat al-makḥṭūṭāt: madkhal wa-qaḍāyā*, ed. Fayṣal al-Ḥafyān. Cairo, Ma'had al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah, 1999: 137-154.
- . "Al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah, amākinuhā, al-istighlāl bihā, fahrasatuhā wa-taṣnīfuhā wa-mushkilātuhā". *Al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah fī al-Gharb al-Islāmī: waḍʿiyat al-majmūʿāt wa-āfāq al-baḥṭh* (= *Manuscripts arabes en occident musulman*). Casablanca, Mu'assasat al-Malik ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz, 1990: 201-213.
- al-Ṭanāḥī, Maḥmūd Muḥammad. "Thaqāfat al-mufahris". *Fann fahrasat al-makḥṭūṭāt: madkhal wa-qaḍāyā*, ed. Fayṣal al-Ḥafyān. Cairo, Ma'had al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah, 1999: 189-234.
- Ṭashkandī, ʿAbbās. "Fahāris al-makḥṭūṭāt, dirāsah taḥlīlīyah". *Al-Dārah*, 4, no.2 (1400/1979): 219-242.
- Torres Santo Domingo, Nuria. "Reflexiones sobre catálogos y catalogación de manuscritos árabes". *Al-Qanṭara, revista de estudios árabes*, 19, fasc.2 (1998): 343-364.
- Voorhoeve, P. "Het Beschrijven van oosterse Handschriften". *Bibliotheekleven*, 41 (1965):321-334.
- Witkam, Jan Just. "Aims and methods of cataloguing manuscripts of the Middle East". *Les manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche. Istanbul/Paris, 1989: 1-5.
- Zaydān, Yūsuf. "Mushkilāt tawṭḥīq al-ʿunwān wa-al-muʿallif". *Fann*

fahrasat al-makhṭūṭāt: madkhal wa-qaḍāyā, ed. Fayṣal al-Hafyān. Cairo, Ma'had al-Makhṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah, 1999: 117-135.

XI. PRESERVATION AND CONSERVATION

- ʿAtīqī, Maḥdī. "Problems relating to the treatment of Islamic manuscripts: paper". *The conservation and preservation of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Third Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation 18th-19th November 1995*, ed. Yusuf Ibish and George Atiyeh. London, 1996: 151-156.
- Bedar, Abid Reza. "The preservation of Islamic manuscripts in India". *The conservation and preservation of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Third Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation 18th-19th November 1995*, ed. Yusuf Ibish and George Atiyeh. London, 1996: 15-19.
- Bencherifa, Mohamed. "The restoration of manuscripts in Morocco". *The conservation and preservation of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Third Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation 18th-19th November 1995*, ed. Yusuf Ibish and George Atiyeh. London, 1996: 21-27.
- Bish, Tony. "Conservation at the Khālīdī Library in the old city of Jerusalem". *The conservation and preservation of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Third Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation 18th-19th November 1995*, ed. Yusuf Ibish and George Atiyeh. London, 1996: 49-52.
- Bull, W. "Rebinding Islamic manuscripts: a new direction". *Book-binder*, 1 (1987): 21-38.
- Bürgel, Johann Christoph. "Von Buchern und Termiten". *Festschrift Ewald Wagner zum 65. Geburtstag*, herausgegeben von W. Heinrichs and G. Schoeler. Beirut/ Stuttgart, 1994: 2, 337-349.
- Clare, Julian and Marsh, Frederick. "A dry repair method for Islamic illuminated manuscript leaves". *The paper conservator*, 4 (1979): 3-9.
- De Torres, Amparo R. "Preventive conservation: global trends". *The conservation and preservation of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Third Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation 18th-19th November 1995*, ed. Yusuf Ibish and George Atiyeh. London, 1996: 185-194.

- Dreibholtz, Ursula. "Conservation of the manuscripts". *Maṣāḥif Ṣan'ā'*. Kuwait, 1985: 24-30.
- . "Treatment of early Islamic manuscript fragments on parchment. A case history: the find of Sana'a, Yemen". *The conservation and preservation of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Third Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation 18th-19th November 1995*, ed. Yusuf Ibish and George Atiyeh. London, 1996: 131-145.
- Gacek, Adam. "The use of 'kabīkaj' in Arabic manuscripts". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 2 (1987): 49-53. [Persian translation by Nūsh Āfrīn Anṣārī (Muḥaqqiq), *Kitābdārī*, 14 (1989): 5-12; Turkish translation by A. Yaycioğlu, *Kebikeç*, 5 (1997): 5-8.]
- Hegazi, Mahmoud F. "Conservation and preservation policy at the National Library of Egypt (Dār al-Kutub)". *The conservation and preservation of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Third Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation 18th-19th November 1995*, ed. Yusuf Ibish and George Atiyeh. London, 1996: 7-14.
- Iskander, Nasry. "The conservation and preservation of Islamic books, papers, manuscripts, papyri, and parchments". *The conservation and preservation of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Third Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation 18th-19th November 1995*, ed. Yusuf Ibish and George Atiyeh. London, 1996: 119-130.
- Jacobs, David. "A simple book support for Islamic manuscripts". *British Library conservation news*, 33 (1991): 3, 8.
- Jacobs, David and Rodgers, Barbara. "Developments in the conservation of Oriental (Islamic) manuscripts at the India Office Library, London". *Restaurator*, 11, ii (1990): 110-138.
- Jacobs, David and Rodgers, Barbara. "Developments in Islamic bindings and conservation in the Oriental and India Office Collections of the British Library". *The conservation and preservation of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Third Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation 18th-19th November 1995*, ed. Yusuf Ibish and George Atiyeh. London, 1996: 81-92.
- Jarjis, Raik. "Ion-beam codicology, its potential in developing scientific conservation of Islamic manuscripts". *The conservation and preservation of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Third Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation 18th-19th*

- November 1995*, ed. Yusuf Ibish and George Atiyeh. London, 1996: 93-117.
- Mintzer, Frederick C. et al. "Towards on-line worldwide access to Vatican Library materials". *The conservation and preservation of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Third Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation 18th-19th November 1995*, ed. Yusuf Ibish and George Atiyeh. London, 1996: 53-79.
- al-Naqshabandī, Usāmah Nāṣir. "Khazn wa-ṣiyānat al-makhṭūṭāt". *Sumer*, 31 (1975): 311-319.
- Pollock, James. "Kabi:kaj to book pouches: library preservation, magic and technique in Syria of the 1880's and the 1980's West". *MELA notes*, 44 (1988): 8-10.
- al-Rammāh, Murād. "The ancient library of Kairouan and its methods of conservation". *The conservation and preservation of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Third Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation 18th-19th November 1995*, ed. Yusuf Ibish and George Atiyeh. London, 1996: 29-47.
- Richard, F. and Aubry, T. "Un cas intéressant de restauration d'un Coran indien de la fin du XVI^e siècle (BnF, manuscrit arabe 7260)". *La conservation: une science en évolution: bilan et perspectives. [Actes des troisièmes journées internationales d'études de l'ARSAC, Paris, 21 au 25 avril 1997]*. Paris, ARSAC, 1997:109-115.
- Schwartz, Werner. "Preserving manuscript works in the original or by reformatting? The usefulness of an international database". *The conservation and preservation of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Third Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation 18th-19th November 1995*, ed. Yusuf Ibish and George Atiyeh. London, 1996: 175-183.
- Seibert, Ann. "New trends in preventive conservation: what can be done about climate, emergencies, and pests?". *The conservation and preservation of Islamic manuscripts. Proceedings of the Third Conference of al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation 18th-19th November 1995*, ed. Yusuf Ibish and George Atiyeh. London, 1996: 157-174.
- Shāhīn, 'Abd al-Mu'izz. *Al-Usus al-ilmīyah li-ḥifāẓ wa-ṣiyānat al-raqq wa-al-bardī wa-taḥqīqatuhā 'alā ba'd qīṭa' al-mustakhrajah min al-ḥafā'ir al-atharīyah*. Cairo, 1981.
- . *Al-Usus al-ilmīyah li-al-ḥifāẓ wa-tarmīm wa-ṣiyānat al-kutub*

wa-al-makhṭūṭāt wa-al-wathā'iq al-ta'rīkhiyah. Cairo, al-Hay'ah al-Miṣrīyah al-ʿĀmmah lil-Kitāb, 1990.

Ṣināʿat al-makhṭūṭ al-ʿArabī al-Islāmī min al-tarmīm ilā al-tajlīd: al-dawrah al-tadribīyah al-dawlīyah al-ūlā, Dubayy, al-Imārāt al-ʿArabīyah al-Muttaḥidah, min 26 Dhū al-Ḥijjah 1417 h. ilā 9 Muḥarram 1418 h. al-muwāfiq 3 Māyū 1997 m. ilā 15 Māyū 1997 m. Dubai, Markaz al-Jumʿah al-Majīd lil-Thaqāfah wa-al-Turāth, [1997].

Ṣiyānah wa-ḥifẓ al-makhṭūṭāt al-Islāmīyah. Aʿmāl al-Muʿtamar al-Thālith li-Muʿassasat al-Furqān lil-Turāth al-Islāmī, 18-19 Nov. 1995, ed. Ibrāhīm Shabbūh. London, 1998.

XII. CATALOGUES OF MANUSCRIPTS, COLLECTIONS, ETC.

XII. 1. Bibliographies and bio-bibliographies of the Arabic heritage

[Gacek, Adam]. "Manuscripts". *Introductory guide to Middle Eastern and Islamic studies*, ed. Paul Auchterlonie. Oxford, Middle East Libraries Committee, 1990: 25-29.

Monzawī, Aḥmad and Monzawī, ʿAlī-Naqī. "Bibliographies and catalogues". *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, ed. E. Yarshater, 4: 214-235.

Pearson, J.D. "Bibliography". *EI*, new ed., 1: 1197-1199.

Pellat, Ch. "Fahrāsa". *EI*, new ed., 2: 743-744.

Sayyid, Ayman Fuʿād. "Maṣādir maʿrifat al-turāth al-ʿArabī". *Al-Mawrid*, 6, no.1 (1977): 7-12.

Witkam, Jan Just. "Lists of books in Arabic manuscripts". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 5 (1990-91): 123-136.

XII. 2. Lists of dated manuscripts

ʿAwwād, Kūrķīs. *Aqdam al-makhṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah fī maktabāt al-ʿālam al-maktūbah mundhu ṣadr al-Islām ḥattā sanah 500*. Baghdad, Wizārat al-Thaqāfah wa-al-ʿIlām, 1982.

Déroche, François. "Les manuscrits arabes datés du IIIe/IXe siècle". *Revue des études islamiques*, 55/57 (1987/89): 343-379.

Vajda, Georges. "Les manuscrits arabes datés de la Bibliothèque nationale de Paris". *Bulletin d'information de l'Institut de recherche et d'histoire des textes*, 7 (1958): 47-69.

XII. 3. Catalogues of catalogues

- ‘Awwād, Kūrķīs. *Fahāris al-makhtūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah fī al-‘ālam*. Kuwait, Ma’had al-Makhtūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah, 1984. 2 vols.
- Bakkār, Yūsuf Ḥusayn. “Fahāris al-makhtūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah fī al-‘ālam lil-Ustādh Kūrķīs ‘Awwād: mulāḥazāt wa-idāfāt”. *Majallat Ma’had al-Makhtūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah*, 29, no.1 (1985): 323-352.
- “Fahāris al-makhtūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah fī al-‘ālam: idāfāt ukhrā”. *Majallat Ma’had al-Makhtūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah*, 30, no.1 (1986): 345-380.
- Ḥujjātī, Muḥammad Bāqir. *Kashshāf al-fahāris wa-waṣṣāf al-makhtūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah fī maktabāt Fāris* (= *Fihrist-i mawzū‘ī-i nuskhah’ḥā-yi khaṭṭī-i ‘Arabī-i kitābkhānah’ḥā-yi Jumhūrī-i Islāmī-i Īrān va tarīkh-i ‘ulūm va tarājīm-i dānishmandān-i Islāmī*). Tehran, 1991.
- .
- al-Majma‘ al-Malakī li-Buḥūth al-Ḥaḍārah al-Islāmīyah (Royal Academy for Islamic Civilization Research). *Dalīl fahāris al-makhtūṭāt fī al-Majma‘ al-Malakī li-Buḥūth al-Ḥaḍārah al-Islāmīyah*. Amman, 1986.
- *Dalīl fahāris al-makhtūṭāt fī al-Majma‘ al-Malakī li-Buḥūth al-Ḥaḍārah al-Islāmīyah: al-mulḥaq al-awwal*. Amman, 1987.
- *Dalīl fahāris al-makhtūṭāt fī al-Majma‘ al-Malakī li-Buḥūth al-Ḥaḍārah al-Islāmīyah: al-mulḥaq al-thānī*. Amman, 1991.
- Mikhailova, I.B. and Khalidov, A.B. *Bibliografiia arabskikh rukopisei*. Moscow, 1982.
- Roper, Geoffrey (ed.). *World survey of Islamic manuscripts*. London, 1992-1994. 4 vols.
- (ed.). *Al-Makhtūṭāt al-Islāmīyah fī al-‘ālam*. Transl. by ‘Abd al-Sattār al-Ḥalwajī. London, al-Furqān Islamic Heritage Foundation, 1997.
- al-Shāhīn (Şahin), Shāmīl. *Fihris al-fahāris al-maṭbū‘ah lil-makhtūṭāt al-‘Arabīyah fī Turķiyā, 1262/1845 – 1413/1992* (= *Türkiye’de Arapça yazmalara dair basılmış fihristlerin fihristi*). Istanbul, 1993.

XII. 4. Descriptions of collections and catalogues

- Bayraktar, Nimet and Lugal, Mihin. *Bibliography on manuscript libraries in Turkey and the publications on the manuscripts located in these libraries*, ed. Ekmeleddin Ihsan İhsanoğlu.

- Istanbul, Research Centre for Islamic History, Art and Culture, 1995.
- Benjelloun-Laroui, Latifa. *Les bibliothèques au Maroc*. Paris, 1990.
- Berthier, A. "Manuscripts orientaux et connaissance de l'Orient: éléments pour une enquête culturelle". *Moyen-Orient et Océan Indien*, XVIe-XIXe s., 2, no.2 (1985): 79-108.
- Dodkhudoeva, Larisa and Dodkhudoeva, Lola. "Manuscripts orientaux du Tadjikistan: la collection Semenov." *Cahiers de l'Asie centrale*, 7 (1999): 39-55.
- Jones, Robert. "Piracy, war, and the acquisition of Arabic manuscripts in Renaissance Europe". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 2 (1987): 96-110.
- Khan, Geoffrey A. "The Arabic fragments in the Cambridge Genizah collections". *Manuscripts of the Middle East*, 1 (1986): 54-60.
- al-Manūnī, Muḥammad. "Adillat al-makḥṭūṭāt wa-marākizuhā bi-al-Maghrib wa-al-bilād al-ʿArabīyah". *Majallat Dār al-Ḥadīth al-Ḥasanīyah*, 8 (1990): 11-46.
- al-Makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah fī al-Gharb al-Islāmī: waḍʿiyat al-majmūʿāt wa-āfāq al-baḥṭh* (= *Manuscripts arabes en occident musulman*). Casablanca, Muʾassasat al-Malik ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz, 1990.
- Martel-Thoumian, Bernadette. "Achats et legs de manuscrits historiques à la bibliothèque Zāhiriyya de Damas (1943-1972)". *Scribes et manuscrits du Moyen-Orient*, ed. F. Déroche and F. Richard. Paris, 1997: 363-375.
- Muminov, Ashirbek. "Fonds nationaux et collections privées de manuscrits en écriture arabe de l'Ouzbékistan". *Cahiers de l'Asie centrale*, 7 (1999): 17-38.
- Sāʿatī, Yaḥyá Maḥmūd. *Waḍʿiyat al-makḥṭūṭāt fī al-Mamlakah al-ʿArabīyah al-Saʿūdīyah ilá ʿām 1408 h.* Riyad, Maktabat al-Malik Fahd al-Waṭanīyah, 1993.
- al-Shaybānī, Muḥammad ibn Ibrāhīm. *Awḍāʿ al-makḥṭūṭāt al-ʿArabīyah fī al-Kuwayt mundhu al-nashʾah ḥattá ʿām 1418 h./1997 m.* Kuwait, Markaz al-Makḥṭūṭāt wa-al-Turāth wa-al-Wathāʾiq, 1999.

XII. 5. Catalogues of edited manuscripts

- ʿAbd al-Raḥmān, ʿAbd al-Jabbār. *Dhakhṣīr al-turāth al-ʿArabī al-Islāmī* (= *Printed Arabic manuscripts: a comprehensive bibliography of*

all printed works written by Arab authors from the advent of Islam to the end of the 12th century A.H./17th century A.D.). Basra, 1981-83. 2 vols.

Āl Salmān, Mashhūr Ḥasan Maḥmūd. *Al-Ishārāt ilā asmā' al-rasā'il al-mūda'ah fī buṭūn al-mujalladāt wa-al-majallāt*. Riyad, Dār al-Ṣumay'ī, 1994.

al-Dakhī, 'Abd al-Wahhāb. *Al-Ishām al-Tūnisī fī taḥqīq al-turāth al-makhṭū': fihris taḥlīlī bi-al-manshūrāt al-muḥaqqaqah fī Tūnis wa-al-ṣādirah khilāl al-fatrah 1860-1988*. Tunis, al-Mu'assasah al-Waṭanīyah lil-Tarjamah wa-al-Taḥqīq wa-al-Dirāsāt, 1990.

al-Munajjid, Ṣalāḥ al-Dīn. *Muṣjam al-makhṭū'āt al-maṭbū'ah (1954-1980)*. Beirut, Dār al-Kitāb al-Jadīd, 1978-82. 5 vols.

Ṣāliḥīyah, Muḥammad 'Īsā. *Al-Muṣjam al-shāmil lil-turāth al-'Arabī al-maṭbū'*. Cairo, Ma'had al-Makhṭū'āt al-'Arabīyah, 1992-1995. 5 vols.

HANDBUCH DER ORIENTALISTIK

Abt. I: DER NAHE UND MITTLERE OSTEN

ISSN 0169-9423

Band 12

JAYYUSI, S. K. (ed.). *The Legacy of Muslim Spain*. Chief consultant to the editor, M. Marín. 2nd ed. 1994. ISBN 90 04 09599 3

Band 13

HUNWICK, J. O. and O'FAHEY, R. S. (eds.). *Arabic Literature of Africa*. Editorial Consultant: Albrecht Hofheinz.

Volume I. *The Writings of Eastern Sudanic Africa to c. 1900*. Compiled by R. S. O'Fahey, with the assistance of M. I. Abu Salim, A. Hofheinz, Y. M. Ibrahim, B. Radtke and K. S. Vikør. 1994. ISBN 90 04 09450 4

Volume II. *The Writings of Central Sudanic Africa*. Compiled by John O. Hunwick, with the assistance of Razaq Abubakre, Hamidu Bobboyi, Roman Loimeier, Stefan Reichmuth and Muhammad Sani Umar. 1995. ISBN 90 04 10494 1

Band 14

Decker, W. und Herb, M. *Bildatlas zum Sport im alten Ägypten. Corpus der bildlichen Quellen zu Leibesübungen, Spiel, Jagd, Tanz und verwandten Themen*. Bd.1: Text. Bd. 2: Abbildungen. 1994. ISBN 90 04 09974 3 (Set)

Band 15

Haas, V. *Geschichte der hethitischen Religion*. 1994. ISBN 90 04 09799 6

Band 16

Neusner, J. (ed.). *Judaism in Late Antiquity*. Part One: The Literary and Archaeological Sources. 1994. ISBN 90 04 10129 2

Band 17

Neusner, J. (ed.). *Judaism in Late Antiquity*. Part Two: Historical Syntheses. 1994. ISBN 90 04 09799 6

Band 18

Orel, V. E. and Stolbova, O. V. (eds.). *Hamito-Semitic Etymological Dictionary*. Materials for a Reconstruction. 1994. ISBN 90 04 10051 2

Band 19

al-Zwaini, L. and Peters, R. *A Bibliography of Islamic Law, 1980-1993*. 1994. ISBN 90 04 10009 1

Band 20

Krings, V. (éd.). *La civilisation phénicienne et punique*. Manuel de recherche. 1995. ISBN 90 04 10068 7

Band 21

Hofijzer, J. and Jongeling, K. *Dictionary of the North-West Semitic Inscriptions*. With appendices by R.C. Steiner, A. Mosak Moshavi and B. Porten. 1995. 2 Parts.

ISBN Set (2 Parts) 90 04 09821 6 Part One: ' - L. ISBN 90 04 09817 8 Part Two: M - T. ISBN 90 04 9820 8.

Band 22

Lagarde, M. *Index du Grand Commentaire de Faḥr al-Dīn al-Rāzī*. 1996. ISBN 90 04 10362 7

Band 23

Kinberg, N. *A Lexicon of al-Farrā's Terminology in his Qur'ān Commentary*. With Full Definitions, English Summaries and Extensive Citations. 1996. ISBN 90 04 10421 6

Band 24

Fährnich, H. und Sardshweladse, S. *Etymologisches Wörterbuch der Kartwel-Sprachen*. 1995. ISBN 90 04 10444 5

Band 25

Rainey, A.F. *Canaanite in the Amarna Tablets*. A Linguistic Analysis of the Mixed Dialect used by Scribes from Canaan. 1996. ISBN Set (4 Volumes) 90 04 10503 4

Volume I. Orthography, Phonology. Morphosyntactic Analysis of the Pronouns, Nouns, Numerals. ISBN 90 04 10521 2 Volume II. Morphosyntactic Analysis of the Verbal System. ISBN 90 04 10522 0 Volume III. Morphosyntactic Analysis of the Particles and Adverbs. ISBN 90 04 10523 9 Volume IV. References and Index of Texts Cited. ISBN 90 04 10524 7

Band 26

Halm, H. *The Empire of the Mahdi. The Rise of the Fatimids*. Translated from the German by M. Bonner. 1996. ISBN 90 04 10056 3

Band 27

Strijp, R. *Cultural Anthropology of the Middle East*. A Bibliography. Vol. 2: 1988-1992. 1997. ISBN 90 04 010745 2

Band 28

Sivan, D. *A Grammar of the Ugaritic Language*. 1997. ISBN 90 04 10614 6

Band 29

Corriente, F. *A Dictionary of Andalusí Arabic*. 1997. ISBN 90 04 09846 1

Band 30

Sharon, M. *Corpus Inscriptionum Arabicarum Palaestinae (CIAP)*. Vol. 1: A. 1997. ISBN 90 04 010745 2 Vol.1: B. 1999. ISBN 90 04 110836

Band 31

Török, L. *The Kingdom of Kush*. Handbook of the Napatan-Meroitic Civilization. 1997. ISBN 90 04 010448 8

Band 32

Muraoka, T. and Porten, B. *A Grammar of Egyptian Aramaic*. 1998. ISBN 90 04 10499 2

Band 33

Gessel, B.H.L. van. *Onomasticon of the Hittite Pantheon*. 1998. ISBN Set (2 parts) 90 04 10809 2

Band 34

Klengel, H. *Geschichte des hethitischen Reiches* 1998. ISBN 90 04 10201 9

Band 35

Hachlili, R. *Ancient Jewish Art and Archaeology in the Diaspora* 1998. ISBN 90 04 10878 5

Band 36

Westendorf, W. *Handbuch der altägyptischen Medizin*. 1999. ISBN Set (2 Bände) 90 04 10319 8

Band 37

Civil, M. *Mesopotamian Lexicography*. 1999. ISBN 90 04 11007 0

Band 38

Siegelová, J. and Souček, V. *Systematische Bibliographie der Hethitologie*. 1999. ISBN Set (3 Bände) 90 04 11205 7

Band 39

Watson, W.G.E. and Wyatt, N. *Handbook of Ugaritic Studies*. 1999. ISBN 90 04 10988 9

Band 40

Neusner, J. *Judaism in Late Antiquity, III,1*. 1999. ISBN 90 04 11186 7

Band 41

Neusner, J. *Judaism in Late Antiquity, III,2*. 1999. ISBN 90 04 11282 0

Band 42

Drijvers, H.J.W. and Healey, J.F. *The Old Syriac Inscriptions of Edessa and Osroene*. 1999. ISBN 90 04 11284 7

Band 43

Daiber, H. *Bibliography of Philosophical Thought in Islam*. 2 Volumes. ISBN Set (2 Volumes) 90 04 11347 9
Volume I. Alphabetical List of Publications 1999. ISBN 90 04 09648 5
Volume II. Index of Names, Terms and Topics. 1999. ISBN 90 04 11348 7

Band 44

Hunger, H. and Pingree, D. *Astral Sciences in Mesopotamia*. 1999. ISBN 90 04 10127 6

Band 45

Neusner, J. *The Mishnah. Religious Perspectives* 1999. ISBN 90 04 11492 0

Band 46

Neusner, J. *The Mishnah. Social Perspectives* 1999. ISBN 90 04 11491 2

Band 47

Khan, G. *A Grammar of Neo-Aramaic*. 1999. ISBN 90 04 11510 2

Band 48

Takács, G. *Etymological Dictionary of Egyptian*. Vol. 1. 1999. ISBN 90 04 11538 2

Band 49

Avery-Peck, A.J. and Neusner, J. *Judaism in Late Antiquity IV*. 2000. ISBN 90 04 11262 6

Band 50

Tal, A. *A Dictionary of Samaritan Aramaic*. (2 Volumes) 2000. ISBN 90 04 11858 6 (dl. 1)
ISBN 90 04 11859 4 (dl. 2) ISBN 90 04 11645 1 (set)

Band 51

Holes, C. *Dialect, Culture, and Society in Eastern Arabia*. Vol. 1 : Glossary 2001.
ISBN 90 04 10763 0

Band 52

Jong, R.E. de. *A Grammar of the Bedouin Dialects of the Northern Sinai Littoral*. Bridging the Linguistic Gap between the Eastern and Western Arab World. 2000. ISBN 90 04 11868 3

Band 53

Avery-Peck, A.J. and Neusner, J. *Judaism in Late Antiquity III*,3. Where we stand: Issues and Debates in Ancient Judaism. 2000. ISBN 90 04 11892 6

Band 54

Krahmalkov, Ch. R. *A Phoenician-Punic Grammar*. 2001. ISBN 90 04 11771 7

Band 55

Avery-Peck, A.J. and Neusner, J. *Judaism in Late Antiquity III*,4. Where we stand: Issues and Debates in Ancient Judaism.. *The Special Problem of the Synagogue*. 2001.
ISBN 90 04 12000 9.

Band 56

Avery-Peck, A.J., Neusner, J., and Chilton, B. *Judaism in Late Antiquity V*,1. The Judaism of Qumran: A Systemic Reading of the Dead Sea Scrolls. *Theory of Israel*. 2001.
ISBN 90 04 12001 7

Band 57

Avery-Peck, A.J., Neusner, J., and Chilton, B. *Judaism in Late Antiquity V*,2. The Judaism of Qumran: A Systemic Reading of the Dead Sea Scrolls. *World View, Comparing Judaisms*. 2001. ISBN 90 04 12003 3

Band 58

Gacek, A. *The Arabic manuscript tradition*. A Glossary of Technical Terms and Bibliography. 2001. ISBN 90 04 12061 0

Band 60

Marzolph, U. *Narrative illustration in Persian lithographed books*. 2001.
ISBN 90 04 12100 5